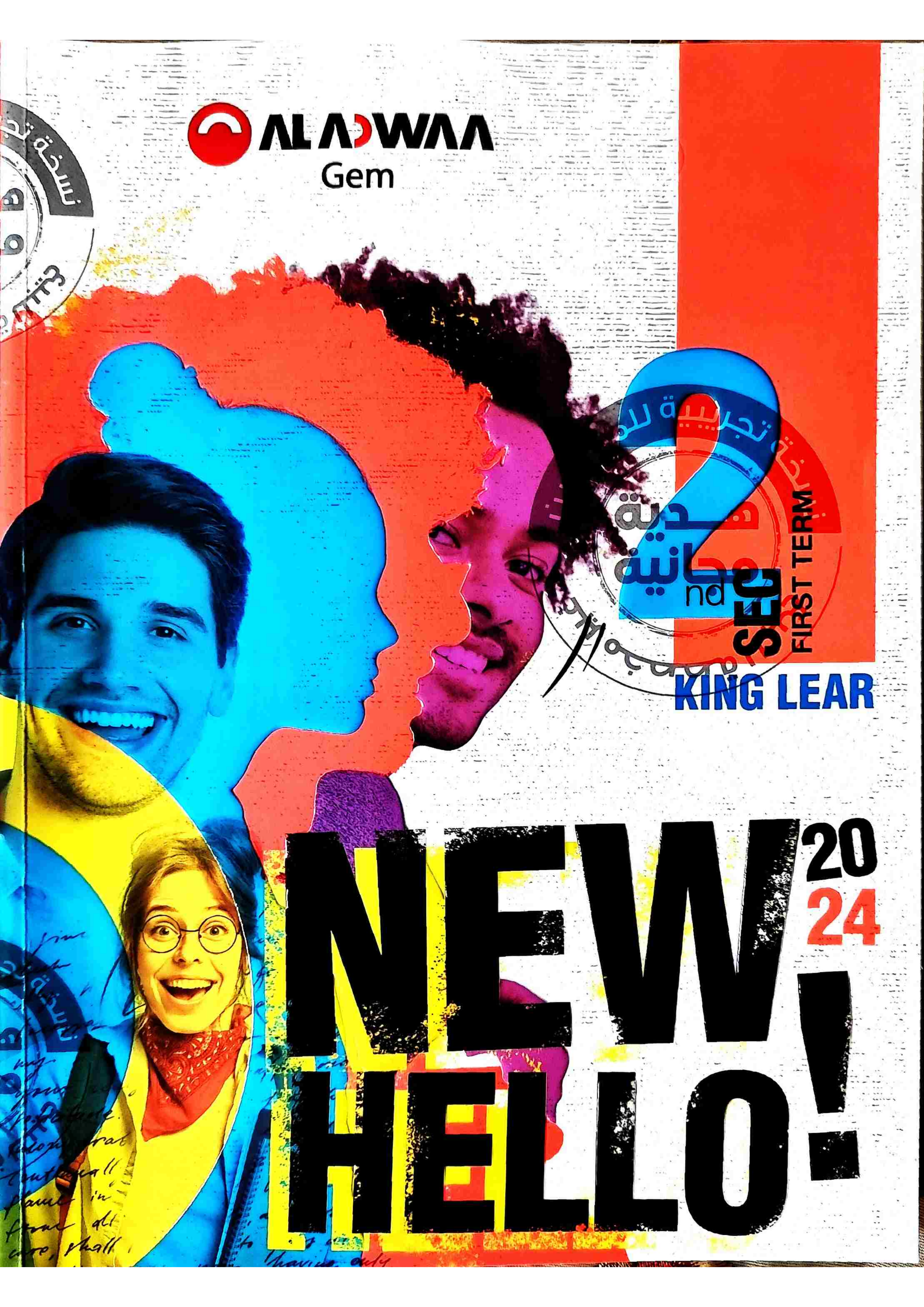


AL ADWAA
Gem
2nd SEC
FIRST TERM
KING LEAR
NEW HELLO!
2024



Gem

New Hello!
&
King Lear

الصف الثانى الثانوى

الفصل الدراسى الأول

By

Mohamed Abdel Aal
Emad Fawzy
Ayman M. Ebrahim
Ahmed Fadel

11

راجع إجاباتك

نزل إجابات الكتاب بصيغة PDF













Contents

Staying healthy

Unit 1

Objectives



Reading : A poster about how to perform first aid
Writing : A persuasive email to a friend
Listening : A news report about medical support for athletes; An explanation of the immune system
Speaking : Suggesting solutions to problems; Persuading
Language : Present and past necessity and lack of necessity
Life Skills : Resilience







Part (1)

Lessons 1 & 2



Key Vocabulary

CPR (cardiopulmonary resuscitation)	عملية إنعاش رئوى قلبى	react (v) (ed)	يتفاعل/يقوم برد فعل
infection (n)	عدوى	severe (adj)	شديد/خطير
perform (v) (ed)	يقوم بـ/يؤدى	technique (n)	طريقة/أسلوب/تقنية

You can study the new vocabulary by putting each word in a sentence.





لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

allow (v) (ed)	يسمح	chest (n)	صدر
ambulance (n)	عربة الإسعاف	collaboration (n)	تعاون/اشتراك
area (n)	منطقة	competition (n)	مسابقة/منافسة
athlete (n)	لاعب رياضى (شخص)	damage (v) (d)	يفسد/يتلف
athletic (adj)	رياضى/متعلق بألعاب القوى	detail (n)	تفصيل
awake (adj)	مستيقظ/واعٍ	disease (n)	مرض
bacteria (n)	بكتيريا	educate (v) (d)	يعلم/يدرس
base (n)	أساس/قاعدة (أسفل الشىء)	else (adv)	آخر
bleed (v)	ينزف	emergency services (n)	خدمات الطوارئ
bone (n)	عَظم/عظمة	examination (n)	فحص/اختبار
breathing (n)	التنفس	executive director (n)	مدير تنفيذى
call (v) (ed)	يتصل/ينادى	expert (n)	خبير
championship (n)	بطولة	first aid (n)	إسعافات أولية
check (v) (ed)	يفحص/يراجع	flat (adj)	مسطح/مستوٍ

Word	Meaning
fortunately (adv)	لحسن الحظ
handball (n)	كرة اليد
heart centre (n)	مركز القلب
immediately (adv)	فورًا
injury (n)	إصابة
instructions (n)	تعليمات
lock (v) (ed)	يغلق/يحبس
major (adj)	رئيسى
normal (adj)	طبيعى
pioneer (n)	رائد
place (v) (d) (n)	يضع/مكان
press (v) (ed)	يضغط
regular (adj)	منتظم
repeat (v) (ed)	يكرر
respond (v) (ed)	يستجيب
responsibility (n)	مسئولية
rise (v)	يرتفع
sign (n)	علامة
skill (n)	مهارة
sudden (adj)	مفاجئ
surface (n)	سطح (الجزء الأعلى من الشيء)
survive (v) (d)	ينجو/يبقى على قيد الحياة
technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
train (v) (ed)	يدرب/يتدرب
trophy (n)	كأس/جائزة

Workbook Vocabulary

Word	Meaning
act (v) (ed)	يتصرف/يمثل
bandage (n)	ضمادة (للجرح)
blood (n)	دم
encourage (v) (d)	يشجع
gloves (n)	قفازات
guide (v) (d)	يوجه/يرشد
kit (n)	عدة/طقم أدوات
label (n)	ملصق
muscle (n)	عضلة
operation (n)	عملية جراحية
performance (n)	أداء
prohibition (n)	منع/حظر
pump (v) (ed)	يضخ
regularly (adv)	بانتظام
tight (adj)	محكم/مشدود/ضيق
wrap (v) (ped)	يلف/يغلف

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Doctors say that white blood cells help defend the body against ....
a) injection
b) infection
c) operation
d) reflection

2 Raw meat and poultry الدواجن may contain harmful ...., therefore they must be cooked to a high temperature.
a) plants
b) pains
c) organs
d) bacteria

3 It is believed that cycle helmets may reduce head .... by up to 80 percent.
a) treatment
b) break
c) injury
d) drug

4 Luckily, the young doctor had his medical .... with him when the accident happened.
a) devices
b) techniques
c) kits
d) jokes

5 After putting out the fire, some victims suffered from .... difficulties and eye irritation.
a) disease
b) temperature
c) breathing
d) depression

6 Most people feel proud when .... from their country do well in the Olympics.
a) graduates
b) athletes
c) pioneers
d) reporters

7 Children under five are vaccinated against the .... childhood diseases such as smallpox and polio.
a) normal
b) unimportant
c) major
d) minor

8 A/An .... is someone who is important in the early development of something, and whose work or ideas are later developed by other people.
a) employee
b) director
c) assistant
d) pioneer

9 There was a .... silence as the headmaster into the class.
a) sudden
b) regular
c) exciting
d) available

10 The director insisted that all staff must .... on the new security system.
a) gain
b) train
c) entertain
d) complain

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

do an action	يقوم بالتصرف	make sure	يتأكد
perform/do CPR	يجرى عملية إنعاش رئوى قلبى	perform a play	يمثل مسرحية
do sport	يمارس رياضة	stay healthy	يبقى بصحة جيدة
have/get an infection	يصاب بعدوى	take up a new sport	يهتم بـ / يبدأ رياضة جديدة
care about	يهتم بـ	look at	ينظر إلى/يفحص
come off	يسقط/يخرج من مكانه	reply to	يرد على/يستجيب لـ
disagree about	لا يوافق (يعترض) على	rise up	يرتفع لأعلى
lock ... together	يغلق ... معًا	wrap ... around	يلف ... حول
respond to	يستجيب لـ	react with	يتصرف بـ/يتفاعل مع

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
bleed	ينزف	bleeding	نزيف	----------------------	
breathe	يتنفس	breath breathing	نفس تنفس	breathy	لاهث/مصحوب بأنفاس مسموعة
collaborate	يتعاون/يشارك	collaboration	تعاون/اشتراك	collaborative	تعاونى
guide	يوجه/يرشد	guidance guide	توجيه/إرشاد مرشد	guiding	إرشادى/توجيهى
infect	يعدى	infection	عدوى	infected infectious	مصاب بعدوى مُعدٍ
injure	يصيب/يجرح	injury	إصابة/جرح	injured	مصاب/مجروح
operate	يقوم بعملية/يشغل	operation	عملية جراحية	operative	جراحى/مشغل
perform	يؤدى	performance/performer	أداء/مؤدٍّ	performing	مؤدٍّ
react	يقوم برد فعل	reaction	رد فعل	reactive	ذو رد فعل

- The team **performed** very well.
- The **performance** of the team was very good.
- The **performing** team was so professional.
- Most **performers** feel nervous before they go on stage.



Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
collaboration	تعاون/اشتراك	participation/partnership	isolation/disunion عزلة/عدم اتحاد
examination	فحص/اختبار	observation/checking	disregard/negligence إهمال
flat	مسطح/مستوٍ	straight/plane	rough/uneven خشن/غير مستقيم
guide	يوجه/يرشد	advise/direct	misguide/mislead يسيء التوجيه
infection	عدوى	contagion	sterility/sanitation تعقيم/الصحة العامة
injury	إصابة	wound/harm	remedy/cure علاج
perform	يقوم بـ/يؤدي	act/carry out	halt/fail يتوقف/يفشل
press	يضغط	squeeze/compress	release/extend يطلق/يمد
react	يتفاعل/يقوم برد فعل	proceed/respond	cease/halt يتوقف
severe	شديد/خطير	acute/extreme	gentle/mild بسيط/لطيف/معتدل
skill	مهارة	proficiency/craft	incompetence/inability عدم كفاءة/عدم قدرة

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 He suffered a severe head injury. The synonym of the word "severe" is "..................".
a) acute b) easy c) simple d) strange

2 A young man pulled the child out of the swimming pool and .... CPR for him saving his life.
a) trained b) made c) performed d) applied

3 Did you .... any new sports when you started high school this year?
a) make b) do c) give d) design

4 I .... a bad infection in my eye and my doctor said it was due to my lens.
a) made b) did c) devised d) got

5 The call centre in the company can respond .... all customer complaints within 2 days.
a) in b) to c) on d) at

6 The farmland near the Nile is very flat. The adjective "flat" is the opposite of "..................".
a) smooth b) fertile c) rough d) barren

7 The boy thankfully gave his mother her birthday present which he wrapped .... fine golden paper.
a) about b) for c) of d) with

8 Doctors warn us that the COVID-19 infection is very strong. The noun "infection" is similar in meaning to ....
a) hygiene b) sterility c) contagion d) sanitation

9 The paramedics reacted very quickly to the emergency calls after the earthquake. The noun from the verb "react" is "..................".

a) reacts b) reacted c) reactive d) reaction

10 The nurse pressed on the wound trying to stop the bleeding. The verb "press" is the antonym of "..................".

a) compress b) release c) squeeze d) treat

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات الآتية واستخداماتها.

Notes on Vocabulary

1

operation

١- عملية جراحية

٢- عملية إنجاز (عمل/نشاط) لشركة أو منظمة

- The famous surgeon has done this operation hundreds of times.
- Connecting the water supply to some villages isn't a simple operation.

process

١- عملية طبيعية أو صناعية لحدوث أو إنتاج شيء

٢- عملية إجرائية (سلسلة من الخطوات لإتمام شيء)

- Birth and ageing may be man's most important natural processes.
- Getting a visa can be a complex process.

2

another آخر (للمفرد)

another + مسافات/كميات/أموال/أوقات

- There's another news programme at ten o'clock.
- I want to stay in Paris for another 3 days.
- I lent my friend another ten pounds.

other + اسم أخرى (للجمع/اسم لا يُعد)

the other الآخر (بمعنى أن هناك اثنين فقط)

- I suggested a camping holiday, but Omar had other ideas.
- You gave me only one pen, where is the other (one)?

others الآخرون (يأتي بعدها فعل)

One boy fell off his chair and the others laughed.

else

١- آخر/أيضًا تستخدم بعد كلمات تبدأ بـ some - any - every - no ولا يأتي بعدها اسم

٢- آخر/أيضًا (تستخدم بعد أدوات الاستفهام)

- There's something else I'd like to talk about as well.
- I'll give you the report, but don't tell anybody else.
- He is awake now, like everyone else.
- Who else was at the party yesterday?
- What else would you like to buy?

athlete
رياضى (شخص يمارس رياضة وخاصة ألعاب القوى)

- Athletes are all happy to take part in the Olympic Games.

athletic (3)
رياضى (صفة لوصف شخص أو شىء رياضى)

- He can play any sport, he's naturally athletic.
- School athletic competitions are encouraged to help students live healthily.

athletics
ألعاب القوى (مجموعة من الألعاب تشمل الجرى والقفز والرمى) تعامل معاملة المفرد

- Athletics is considered the most important competitions in the Olympic Games.

sign
١- لافتة (ورقية/معدنية) لمعلومة/تحذير/تعليمات
٢- إشارة إلى (حدث يدل على حقيقة)

- You must take care of traffic signs while driving on the road.
- Do you see any signs of improvement in the patient's condition?

signal (4)
١- إشارة (تليفون/إذاعة/تليفزيون)
٢- إشـارة (ضوئية/صوتيـة) كدليل أو إعطاء إذن لشىء

- The satellite is used for transmitting signals around the world.
- The siren صفارة الإنذار was a signal for everyone to leave the building.

landmark
علامة بارزة (تميز مكانا) مثل برج أو مبنى

- The Eiffel Tower is probably the most famous landmark in Paris.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I didn't have to renew my passport as it is still valid for .... two years.
a) another b) other c) others d) the other

2 The assistant hung a .... on the door of the shop that said it would reopen at 10 p.m.
a) signal b) mark c) sign d) message

3 We love to watch the Olympic competitions – especially the ....
a) athlete b) athletic c) authentic d) athletics

4 The child's parents must give their consent before she has the ....
a) process b) operation c) option d) task

5 I couldn't make any calls during the safari trip as the .... was very bad in the area.
a) signal b) mark c) sign d) message

Practice 

Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 In some parts of Africa there is a .... food shortage because of droughts.
a) gentle b) severe c) simple d) normal

2 In hospitals, some tests are now .... on all people who offer to become blood donors.
a) performed b) designed c) made d) reacted

3 Firefighters must be trained well to .... quickly when they hear the alarm.
a) call b) react c) reflect d) allow

4 All surgeons of the department will be trained in all the new surgical .... in heart surgery.
a) objective b) reaction c) technique d) examination

5 When I reached the hospital, my nose was .... and the doctor plugged it with cotton wool.
a) breathing b) wrapping c) treating d) bleeding

6 You must make sure you understand the safety .... before you use the cutting machine.
a) constructions b) instructions c) licences d) techniques

7 Several people ignored the "No Smoking" .... and the police fined يغرم them.
a) mark b) signal c) message d) sign

8 I had an appointment at the dentist's for a routine .... on Monday afternoon.
a) examination b) reaction c) intention d) collaboration

9 The present my sister got for her birthday was beautifully .... in gold paper.
a) wrapped b) locked c) dumped d) removed

10 By midday, the sun had .... high in the sky and it was very hot.
a) risen b) increased c) decreased d) raised

11 Most schools don't .... students to use their mobile phones in the classroom.
a) cause b) prohibit c) allow d) educate

12 An .... is a person with a high level of knowledge or skill in a particular subject or activity.
a) export b) explorer c) employer d) expert

13 Anything you share on your Facebook page is shown shortly afterwards to everyone ....
a) other b) else c) another d) others

14 The new director has full .... for financial matters of the company.
a) ability b) potential c) responsibility d) ambition

15 My friend was given .... by a doctor, which I think saved his life.
a) VCR b) PCR c) CPR d) MRI

16 The audience was clearly delighted with the .... of the actors.

a) perform b) performance c) performer d) performative

17 I'm busy now; I'll phone you again later. The word "later" is an antonym of the word "..................".

a) immediately b) regularly c) gradually d) latter

18 Factories and building companies must provide safety equipment and .... sure it is used carefully.

a) do b) make c) design d) devise

19 Husbands and wives usually disagree .... the best way to spend their money.

a) about b) to c) with d) for

20 The young actress usually replies immediately .... comments on her posts.

a) at b) for c) about d) to

21 Many young women stop .... sports when they get married.

a) going b) letting c) doing d) making

22 To .... healthy, you should exercise at least three times a week.

a) make b) avoid c) stay d) move

23 The officer died of his gunshot wounds. The word "wound" can be replaced by the word "..................".

a) bruise b) injury c) scare d) trial

24 The medical company announced that the research for the new vaccine was done in .... with the University of Oxford.

a) collaborate b) collaboration c) collaborative d) elaboration

25 During pandemics, governments have to force people to stay home to stop the spread of the disease ....

a) infect b) infected c) infectious d) infection

26 How did the manager .... to the suggestion you had made? *(Longman)*

a) retrain b) refresh c) react d) recycle

27 You should learn how to .... CPR. *(Longman)*

a) reform b) perform c) take d) make

28 We should do sports to .... in good health. *(Longman)*

a) stay b) leave c) make d) remind

29 Please, ... sure you turn off the gas before you leave the house. *(Longman)*

a) give b) take c) do d) make

30 Follow the rules of cleanliness to avoid being .... with COVID-19. *(Longman)*

a) infected b) protected c) injected d) rejected



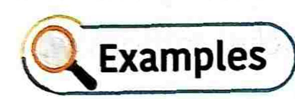
Present, past and future necessity and lack of necessity

التعبير عن الضرورة وعدم الضرورة فى المضارع والماضى والمستقبل



1 Necessity الضرورة

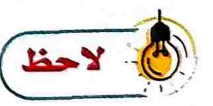
Present المضارع		Past الماضى		Future المستقبل	
must + inf.	It is necessary for ... to + inf.	had to + inf.	It was necessary for ... to + inf.	will have to + inf.	It will be necessary for ... to + inf.
have/has to + inf.					
have/has got to + inf.		no past			
need/needs to + inf.		needed to + inf.		will need to + inf.	



Examples

It is necessary for us to wear heavy clothes in cold weather.
= We must/have to/have got to/need to wear heavy clothes in cold weather.
It was necessary for him to fix the roof after the rain yesterday.
= He had to/needed to fix the roof after the rain yesterday.
It will be necessary for her to book the concert tickets tomorrow.
= She will have to/will need to book the concert tickets tomorrow.

must - have to/has to الفرق بين



- كلاهما يفيد الضرورة والاضطرار لفعل شىء ولكن الاختلاف فيمن يفرض الضرورة.
  - تفيد must الضرورة الشخصية (ظروف شخصية تضطره لذلك) والشخص يكون موافقًا لهذه الضرورة وراضيًا عنها.
  - وتفيد have to ضرورة مفروضة من الخارج ليس لك اختيار فى فعلها ولا رأى فيها.

- I must call Omar tonight as I promised to phone him.
- I have to wear a uniform at school.

- يمكن استخدام المضارع must/have to للتعبير عن المستقبل.

They must/have to attend the last session next Friday to get the course certificate.

• ولبيان الفرق الكامل بينهم يجب دراسة الجدول الآتى:

	must	have/has to
1	يعتقد المتحدث أنه ضرورى (شعور داخلى) . These pants don't fit me anymore. I must lose weight.	شخص آخر يعتقد أنه ضرورى (مفروض من الخارج). My doctor told me I'm overweight and I have to go on a diet.
2	تستخدم فى المضارع لوصف ضرورة عامة ودائمة أو ضرورة فى المستقبل القريب، وعندما تكون الأوامر رسمية أو عامة فى مستندات أو إشعارات. When you drive, you must wear a seat belt. Passengers must keep their bags with them at all times.	تستخدم للتعبير عن الضرورة، ويمكن استخدامها فى الماضى والمضارع والمستقبل. She has to take two trains and a bus to get to work every day. I had to visit my uncle yesterday. I will have to book the ticket tomorrow.
3	لا تتغير «must» مع الفاعل مفرد أو جمع فى الجملة الخبرية أو الاستفهام. I/He/They must be healthy. Must I go to the party? I don't really want to. Must he make so much noise? It's really annoying.	تستخدم مثل أى فعل عادى فى التصريف مع استخدام has للفاعل المفرد أو للضمائر He/She/It وفى السؤال do/does You have to fill in this form to apply for the job. He has to fill in this form to apply for the job. Does he have to wear a suit to work? Do I have to bring some forms of ID?
4	فى النفى نضيف not المختصرة ثم المصدر. They mustn't use their mobile phones during lessons. We mustn't stand up while the plane is taking off.	فى النفى نضيف doesn't/don't ثم have to ثم المصدر. She doesn't have to come to the meeting if she doesn't want to. We don't have to read all these books.

5

تستخدم don't/doesn't have to للشيء غير الضرورى وأن الشخص لديه اختيار وغير مضطر لفعله.

He doesn't have to work on Fridays so he can do what he wants.

You don't have to pay to visit the Pyramids in Egypt. It's free.

تستخدم mustn't في النفي للمنع والحظر (قوانين) والنصيحة القوية.

When the traffic light is red, you mustn't go.

I mustn't drink any more coffee, otherwise, I won't sleep tonight.

6

تستخدم had to للحديث عن الضرورة في الماضي.

Did you have to pay a fine when the police stopped you?

Did he have to get up early yesterday?

The doctor told her she had to lose weight.

لا تستخدم must في الماضي.

Present simple = must/ have to

Future simple = must/ will have to

Past simple = had to

Present perfect = have/has had to

have got to

- تستخدم have got to بنفس معنى have to

I've got to work tomorrow. OR I have to work tomorrow.

When has Hala got to go? OR When does Hala have to go?

2 Lack of Necessity عدم الضرورة

Present المضارع		Past الماضي		Future المستقبل	
don't have to	It isn't necessary for ... to	didn't have to لم يكن ضروريًا فعل شيء فلم نفعله	It wasn't necessary for ... to	won't have to/ won't need to	It won't be necessary for ... to
doesn't have to		needn't have + P.P. لم يكن ضروريًا فعل شيء ولكن تم فعله			
needn't (بدون to)					
don't/doesn't need to		didn't need to			



It isn't necessary for her to go to school by bus.
= She doesn't have to go to school by bus.
= She doesn't need to go to school by bus.
= She needn't go to school by bus.
It wasn't necessary for them to get up early as it was a holiday.
= They didn't have/need to get up early as it was a holiday.

لم يكن واجبًا فلم يستيقظوا

= They needn't have got up early as it was a holiday.

لم يكن واجبًا ولكنهم استيقظوا

It won't be necessary for him to walk with a crutch عكاز again.
= He won't have/need to walk with a crutch again.

3 Prohibition

التحذير/المنع

It's banned ممنوع / forbidden محرم / prohibited محظور to park here.

=

mustn't
can't

=

Parking is banned / forbidden / prohibited / not allowed here.

Examples

You mustn't/can't smoke in hospitals.
It's forbidden/prohibited to smoke in hospitals.

Practice



Practise more

Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Students .... eat or drink during the class. It's not allowed.

a) mustn't b) had to
c) must d) don't have to

2 My mother .... yesterday. My father ordered food from the restaurant.

a) have to cook b) must cook
c) needn't cook d) didn't have to cook

3 My grandfather .... wear a uniform at school. They could wear what they wanted.

a) doesn't have to b) needn't
c) has to d) didn't have to

4 I .... take this book back to the library or I'll pay a fine.

a) mustn't b) have got to c) can't d) need

5 This kitchen equipment wasn't necessary, you .... it. You are wasteful.

a) had to buy b) needn't have bought
c) didn't have to buy d) don't need to buy

6 You .... eat so many sweets. They are bad for you.

a) need to b) have to
c) didn't have to d) mustn't

7 Tomorrow is my day off. I .... get up early.

a) mustn't b) had to c) must d) won't have to

8 My brother .... finish his graduation project yesterday.

a) must b) had to
c) has to d) doesn't have to

9 Children under 5 .... pay for the ticket. It's free.

a) don't have b) had to c) needn't d) will have to

10 It rained heavily yesterday, so I .... water the flowers.

a) didn't have to b) have to c) mustn't d) had to

11 We .... visit our grandmother. She has been ill lately.

a) didn't have to b) needn't
c) must d) don't have to

12 Does he .... arrive at work very early?

a) had to b) has to c) have to d) must

13 The school bus broke down, so the pupils .... walk to school.

a) had to b) ought c) must d) would

14 We .... talk to each other because it was an exam.

a) shouldn't
b) mustn't
c) don't have to
d) weren't allowed to

15 I really .... phone Aya. I promised I'd phone her as soon as I reached home.

a) must
b) has to
c) need
d) needn't

16 It was late but the pupils .... stay at school for an additional lesson.

a) might b) must c) had to d) needed

17 She .... home yesterday because her mother was sick.

a) must
b) had to stay
c) needn't have stayed
d) didn't have to stay

18 You .... phone me at work. We aren't allowed to make personal calls.

a) needn't b) have to c) need to d) mustn't

19 My father will give me a lift to school, I .... walk to it.

a) mustn't
b) have to
c) won't have to
d) didn't have to

20 We .... give him our answer today or we will lose the contract.

a) needn't b) have to c) shouldn't d) don't have to

21 Sorry, I have no time to discuss anything now. I .... be at a meeting at 10 o'clock.

a) may b) don't have to c) must d) could

22 It's a smoke-free area. You .... smoke here.

a) mustn't b) may c) don't have to d) can

23 .... shout at your boss yesterday.

a) You can't
b) It wasn't necessary for you to
c) You mustn't
d) You needn't

24 You .... make me another cup of coffee. I've just had one.

a) don't have
b) needn't
c) can't
d) have to

25 Since his mother was ill, he .... prepare the dinner for the family.

a) must b) was obliged to c) didn't have to d) has to

26 She .... cook food today. There is enough food in the fridge.

a) needn't to b) mustn't c) doesn't have to d) has to

27 You mustn't park here. It means that ....

a) it is necessary to park here
b) it isn't necessary to park here
c) it's against the law to park here
d) parking isn't forbidden here

28 What .... to know is the address of Reda's house.

a) I will need b) I needed c) will I need d) is needed

29 Which of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect?

a) Yasser needs to go to the dentist now. His tooth is really hurting.
b) Yasser had to go to the dentist now. His tooth is really hurting.
c) Yasser has got to go to the dentist now. His tooth is really hurting.
d) Yasser has to go to the dentist now. His tooth is really hurting.

30 Necessity is expressed in one of the following sentences.

a) Osama didn't have to find another job.
b) Osama has got to find another job.
c) Osama doesn't have to find another job.
d) Osama needn't find another job.

31 You .... pass a driving test to drive a car in Egypt. *(Longman)*

a) mustn't b) needn't c) have to d) need

32 Mona is really economical; she .... more bread; she actually had a lot in the fridge. *(Longman)*

a) needn't buy b) didn't have to buy c) mustn't d) had to buy

33 I really .... buy my mother a present on her birthday. One should be grateful! *(Longman)*

a) needn't b) have to c) mustn't d) must

34 You .... take this medicine; you are quite well now. *(Longman)*

a) aren't allowed b) ought c) needn't d) don't have

35 It is .... to follow traffic rules. *(Longman)*

a) necessarily b) necessity c) a must d) an option

Test yourself



Part 1
(Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 The students .... the experiment well, so the teacher gave them a good mark.
a) made b) ignored c) performed d) ruined

2 Some of the passengers suffered .... injuries after the bus accident and needed to have operations.
a) severe b) gentle c) light d) reactive

3 Lifeguards are trained on .... CPR as they save people from drowning.
a) inventing b) making c) doing d) designing

4 The doctors said that the boy was .... and didn't need medicine.
a) average b) hurt c) common d) normal

5 We went to a special course to learn how to give first .... to accident victims.
a) help b) aid c) drug d) operation

6 My father has a large carpentry .... and he always fixes things at our house.
a) tool b) device c) kit d) trauma

7 Children are advised to visit a dentist .... to keep their teeth healthy.
a) gradually b) scarcely c) rarely d) regularly

8 We'll have to wait for .... three weeks for the results.
a) another b) other c) others d) else

9 Mohamed Salah became the first Egyptian footballer to win a major European ....
a) match b) trophy c) reward d) present

10 Khaled decided to .... up a new sport at the sports centre.
a) practise b) do c) give d) take

11 The young doctor really has amazing skills. The word "skill" can be the opposite to the word "..................".
a) routing b) system c) space d) incompetence

12 The food safety organisations cannot .... all the food that is sold. We should help them.
a) produce b) check c) damage d) save

13 The .... who took part in the Olympics were tested for drugs.
a) athletic b) athletics c) athletes d) reporters

14 The government insists on .... an action to prevent people from polluting the Nile.
a) doing b) encouraging c) avoiding d) making

15 All people who work in .... services should know how to do first aid.
a) entertainment b) deficiency c) communication d) emergency

Language

16 The room looks tidy. I .... clean it.
a) mustn't b) can't c) didn't have to d) don't have to

17 Ghada .... go to the office. She can do her work from home.
a) doesn't have b) needn't c) has to d) mustn't

18 The employees .... wear formal clothing, but they should look smart.
a) mustn't b) shouldn't c) don't have to d) can't

19 You .... drive a car without fastening the seat belt. It's against the law.
a) mustn't b) needn't c) don't have to d) aren't allowed

20 According to the company regulations لوائح/قوانين, I .... arrive at work at 8 sharp.
a) need b) can't c) mustn't d) have to

21 I have an important exam tomorrow. I .... study hard for it.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) must d) had to

22 Does he .... type these letters now?
a) has to b) had to c) must d) have to

23 When a police officer asks to see your driver's license, you .... show it to him/her.
a) didn't have to b) have got to c) has to d) mustn't

24 The students .... all those notes. All the information was typed for them.
a) needn't have written b) must write
c) have to write d) had to write

25 It's a/an .... to keep the environment clean.
a) necessary b) must c) prohibition d) unnecessary

26 You .... worry; you still have a lot of time to answer the other questions.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) should d) need

27 **A:** Must we finish this exercise today? **B:** No, you ....
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) haven't got d) didn't need

28 I .... my room yesterday; my sister had already tidied it.
a) don't have to tidy b) didn't have to tidy
c) had to tidy d) must have tidied

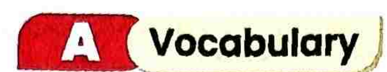
29 We were travelling around Egypt. We .... our passports.
a) didn't have to take b) had to take
c) shouldn't take d) needn't take

30 Sara .... her sunglasses because it was cloudy. She wished she hadn't taken it.
a) had to take b) needn't have taken
c) mustn't take d) didn't need to take




Watch a video

Part (2)
Lessons 3 & 4




لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك


Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

boost (v) (ed)	يدفع/يعزز/يحمس	Olympic (adj)	أوليمبى
brain (n)	المخ	ordinary (adj)	عادى
brilliant (adj)	بارع/رائع	organ (n)	عضو فى الجسم
cell (n)	خلية	perfect (adj)	كامل/ممتاز
champion (n)	بطل رياضى	persuasive (adj)	مقنع
cough (n) (v) (ed)	سعال/كحة/يسعل/يكح	protect (v) (ed)	يحمى
course (n)	مقرر (منهج) تعليمى	reason (n)	سبب
cover (v) (ed)	يغطى	regularly (adv)	بانتظام
explanation (n)	شرح/تفسير	separate (adj) (v) (d)	منفصل/يفصل
immune system (n)	الجهاز المناعى	situation (n)	موقف
improve (v) (d)	يحسن	spend (v)	يقضى
join (v) (ed)	ينضم إلى/يلتحق بـ	video games (n)	ألعاب الفيديو
lung (n)	الرئة	virus (n)	فيروس
mistake (n)	خطأ		

You can study the new vocabulary by putting each word in a sentence.

It is my mistake to give him much money without watching his behaviour.


Workbook Vocabulary

add (v) (ed)	يضيف	persuade (v) (d)	يقنع
advertisement (n)	إعلان	pleasure (n)	سعادة/سرور
behave (v) (d)	يتصرف	remind (v) (ed)	يُذكر
diet (n)	نظام غذائي	simple (adj)	بسيط
flu (n)	الإنفلونزا	support (n) (v) (ed)	دعم/يدعم/يساند
label (n) (v) (led)	ملصق/يضع ملصقًا	toy (n)	لعبة (طفل)
microscope (n)	مجهر (ميكروسكوب)	unfortunately (adv)	لسوء الحظ

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The Ministry is trying to .... local and foreign businesses to invest in the tourism industry.
a) persuade b) attack c) order d) discourage

2 I asked my brother to .... me to buy some batteries for the TV remote control.
a) remember b) memorise c) remind d) forget

3 Ahmed's visits gave his grandparents a lot of ....
a) sorrow b) pleasure c) frustration d) concentration

4 Cairo University runs language .... for all levels, from beginners to professional ones.
a) games b) trips c) matches d) courses

5 The new players' skillful performance should .... the team's result this season.
a) join b) add c) boost d) discourage

6 Iron is important because we need it to form new blood .... that carry oxygen around the body.
a) beings b) cells c) bones d) races

7 Young children usually get a lot of .... on visiting zoos and theme parks.
a) virus b) bacteria c) tissue d) soil

8 During the operation, the doctors were trying to preserve blood flow to the brain and the other body ....
a) members b) devices c) limbs d) organs

9 To increase your efficiency at work, it is important to keep work and family life ....
a) joint b) strange c) demolished d) separate

10 The meal which we had at the new restaurant was delicious and absolutely ....
a) terrible b) perfect c) strange d) awful

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

at any time	فى أى وقت	have the flu	يصاب بالإنفلونزا
do the course	يدرس منهجًا تعليميًا	in the first place	فى المقام الأول
find it hard to	يجد من الصعب أن	make notes	يدون ملاحظات
get better	يتحسن	sound perfect	يبدو رائعًا (ممتازًا)
complete ... with	يكمل ... بـ	stay up	يسهر
great at	رائع (عظيم) فى	look forward to	يتطلع إلى
interested in	مهتم بـ	think of/about	يفكر فى
get ill	يصاب بمرض	worried about	قلق بشأن

Special Collocations

become an expert	يصبح خبيرًا	stay calm	يبقى هادئًا
do first aid	يقوم بالإسعافات الأولية	think fast	يفكر بسرعة
make a mistake	يرتكب خطأ	take a first aid course	يحصل على دورة فى الإسعافات الأولية

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
add	يضيف	addition additive	إضافة مادة مضافة	additional	إضافى
behave	يتصرف	behaviour	سلوك/تصرف	behavioural	سلوكى
explain	يشرح/يفسر	explanation	شرح/تفسير	explanatory	تفسيرى
immunise	يحصن/يوفر مناعة	immunity	مناعة	immune	منيع/مناعى
improve	يحسن	improvement	تحسن	improved	متحسن
persuade	يقنع	persuasion	إقناع	persuasive	مقنع
support	يدعم/يساند	support supporter	دعم/مساندة داعم	supporting supportive	داعم/مساند داعم

- He is adding a spoon of sugar to the cake mixture.
- This addition is very important to the recipe.
- The additional amount of sugar is enough.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
behave	يتصرف	act/react	misbehave/act up يسىء التصرف
boost	يدفع/يعزز/يحمس	push/improve/support	hinder/discourage يعوق/يحبط
brilliant	بارع/رائع	excellent/magnificent	ordinary/common عادى
improve	يحسن/يتحسن	advance/enhance	decline/deteriorate يتدهور
persuasive	مقنع	convincing	discouraging/unconvincing مثبط/غير مقنع
pleasure	سعادة/سرور	enjoyment/delight	sadness/sorrow حزن/أسى
separate	منفصل	isolated/disconnected	connected/combined متصل
simple	بسيط	plain/easy	complicated معقد
support	دعم	assistance/aid	hindrance/discouragement إعاقة/تثبيط
unfortunately	لسوء الحظ	unluckily/sadly	fortunately لحسن الحظ

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Father smiled with pleasure when mother walked in. The antonym of the word "pleasure" is "..................".
a) enjoyment b) happiness c) sadness d) delight

2 My little daughter .... ill after eating a bad meal at the restaurant.
a) cured b) did c) made d) got

3 I lay awake in bed for hours thinking .... the trip I am going on the next day.
a) of b) at c) in d) for

4 I think that going to the beach is a brilliant idea. The adjective "brilliant" is similar in meaning to ....
a) excellent b) ordinary c) common d) doubtful

5 My wife and I have separate bank accounts. The synonym of the word "separate" is "..................".
a) connected b) contacted c) isolated d) combined

6 My elder brother has been very interested .... photography since he was at school.
a) at b) on c) for d) in

7 Mohamed Salah always gets the support of the Egyptian fans. The noun "support" is similar in meaning to ....

a) assistance b) discouragement c) depression d) oppression

8 Mum told my little brother to behave well in the party. The adjective from the verb "behave" is ....

a) behaves b) behaved c) behaviour d) behavioural

9 Mohamed joined a new language course and was able to .... the course in a short time.

a) make b) do c) give d) reply

10 A healthy lifestyle helps to boost your immune system. The verb "boost" is the opposite of ....

a) push b) aid c) hinder d) relieve

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات الآتية واستخداماتها.

Notes on Vocabulary

1

advertisment
إعلان عن منتج أو افتتاح مكان تجارى أو وظيفة

The organisers of the concert had taken out a full page advertisement in the newspaper.

announcement
إعلان عن/إذاعة خبر/تصريح

The minister وزير made an important announcement at a news conference.

2

boost
يعزز/يزيد (الأرباح أو المبيعات عندما تكون أقل من المطلوب)

Oil exports boosted the economy.

raise
يزيد/يرفع (الأسعار/المعايير/المستويات)

The bank has raised interest rates for the third time this year.

increase
يزيد/يزداد (عددًا أو كمية أو درجة)

We need to increase the number of police officers on the streets.

expand
يوسع/يتسع/يتمدد

Metals expand when they are heated.

3

organ
عضو من أعضاء الجسم

The brain organises the work of other organs in your body.

member
عضو/فرد فى مجموعة كنادٍ أو فريق

To achieve success, everyone must work as a member of a team.

spend ينفق (مالًا) على	The young boy spends all his pocket money on buying new video games.
spend يقضى الوقت فى شيء أو أداء شيء	- Father doesn't have much free time as he spends his time in his office. - Mrs Reda spent all the day preparing for her daughter's birthday party. لاحظ: يأتى (verb + ing) بعد spend.

4

champion بطل رياضى	Hedaya Malak is an Egyptian champion who won an Olympic medal in Taekwondo.
hero بطل فى المجتمع أو فى قصة أو فيلم أو مسرحية	The young actor was chosen as the hero of the new series about space.

5

two-day course منهج تعليمى لمدة يومين	لاحظ: استخدام كلمة (two-day) فى صيغة المفرد فى مثل هذه التعبيرات أى اتباعها باسم (course) وإذا أردنا الجمع نجمع ما بعدها من أسماء. two-way streets شوارع كل منها ذو اتجاهين ten-minute breaks فسح/استراحات كل استراحة منها عشر دقائق

6

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The coach insists that every team .... must attend early-morning training.
a) part b) individual c) member d) organ

2 My grandfather used to spend most of the afternoon .... to songs by Om Kolthoum.
a) listen b) listened c) listens d) listening

3 My brother is doing a .... course on web designing at the university centre.
a) two-week b) two-weeks c) two-week's d) two weeks'

4 The real .... of the war were the young men who fought on the front lines.
a) champions b) heroes c) actors d) organs

5 The businessman took a loan from the bank to .... his factory building another section.
a) raise b) decrease c) increase d) expand

Practice 

Vocabulary
General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 It is a fact that a healthy person's red .... count is close to 1,000.
a) organ b) molecule c) cell d) atom

2 Symptoms of the COVid-19 illness include a high temperature and a persistent dry ....
a) coughing b) training c) smiling d) smelling

3 Lawyers should be able to provide all the legal .... their clients need.
a) support b) risk c) neglect d) disagreement

4 The police officers found no .... evidence of illegal activity in the fire.
a) affecting b) defective c) persuasive d) moving

5 Experts say that a healthy .... includes fresh vegetables and fruit.
a) order b) right c) fight d) diet

6 Some people suggested that animals .... differently before the last earthquake.
a) treated b) behaved c) punished d) rewarded

7 My colleague .... me that we had in fact met before, at a conference in Cairo.
a) reminded b) remembered c) mentioned d) applauded

8 By law, an employer can't fire someone without a valid .... for doing so.
a) reason b) result c) research d) cause

9 The economists say that money is needed to .... the tourism industry in Egypt.
a) decrease b) prove c) raise d) boost

10 It would be difficult to .... Nagy to leave his present job for a new one.
a) persuade b) make c) let d) employ

11 Luckily I was able to correct the .... I made in the report before my boss saw it.
a) achievement b) course c) favour d) mistake

12 All Egyptian squash champions are sorry that their game is not included in the .... Games.
a) Athletic b) Olympic c) Advanced d) Competitive

13 The doctor said that my health can .... if I change to a less stressful job.
a) increase b) improve c) rise d) train

14 The .... system is the system by which your body protects itself against disease.
a) digestive b) immune c) respiratory d) nerve

15 The young actors have been very busy since the .... of their wedding.
a) announcement b) advertisement
c) summary d) option

16 Students who aren't hard workers are always worried .... exams.
a) about b) for c) with d) in

17 Mona read the whole research and .... notes of the main points.
a) did b) made c) performed d) acted

18 Please, read the .... notes at the front of the book. They will help you a lot.
a) explain b) unexplained c) explanatory d) explains

19 The manager wouldn't give you the job in the first .... if he didn't think you could do it.
a) place b) location c) position d) area

20 He can only walk with the assistance of crutches عكاز. The word "assistance" is similar in meaning to the word "....................".
a) export b) import c) report d) support

21 You shouldn't try to .... first aid to anyone unless you are trained well.
a) make b) devise c) do d) explore

22 The air hostess asked the passengers not to leave their seats and .... calm.
a) behave b) remind c) move d) stay

23 We have made an important .... to our fashion collection recently.
a) add b) addition c) additional d) added

24 The high cost of the drug can hinder its use. The word "hinder" can be the opposite of the word "....................".
a) add b) join c) boost d) separate

25 My parents refused to let me go out because my reasons were not persuasive to them. The synonym of the word "persuasive" is "....................".
a) convincing b) argumentative c) tricky d) discouraging

26 The immune system sends .... to find the virus that attacks your body. *(Longman)*
a) seals b) sales c) soils d) cells

27 Athletes must understand the importance of .... their hearts regularly. *(Longman)*
a) changing b) shaking c) sharing d) checking

28 I'm going to take a five-.................... course on how to cook Spanish dishes. *(Longman)*
a) day b) days' c) days d) day's

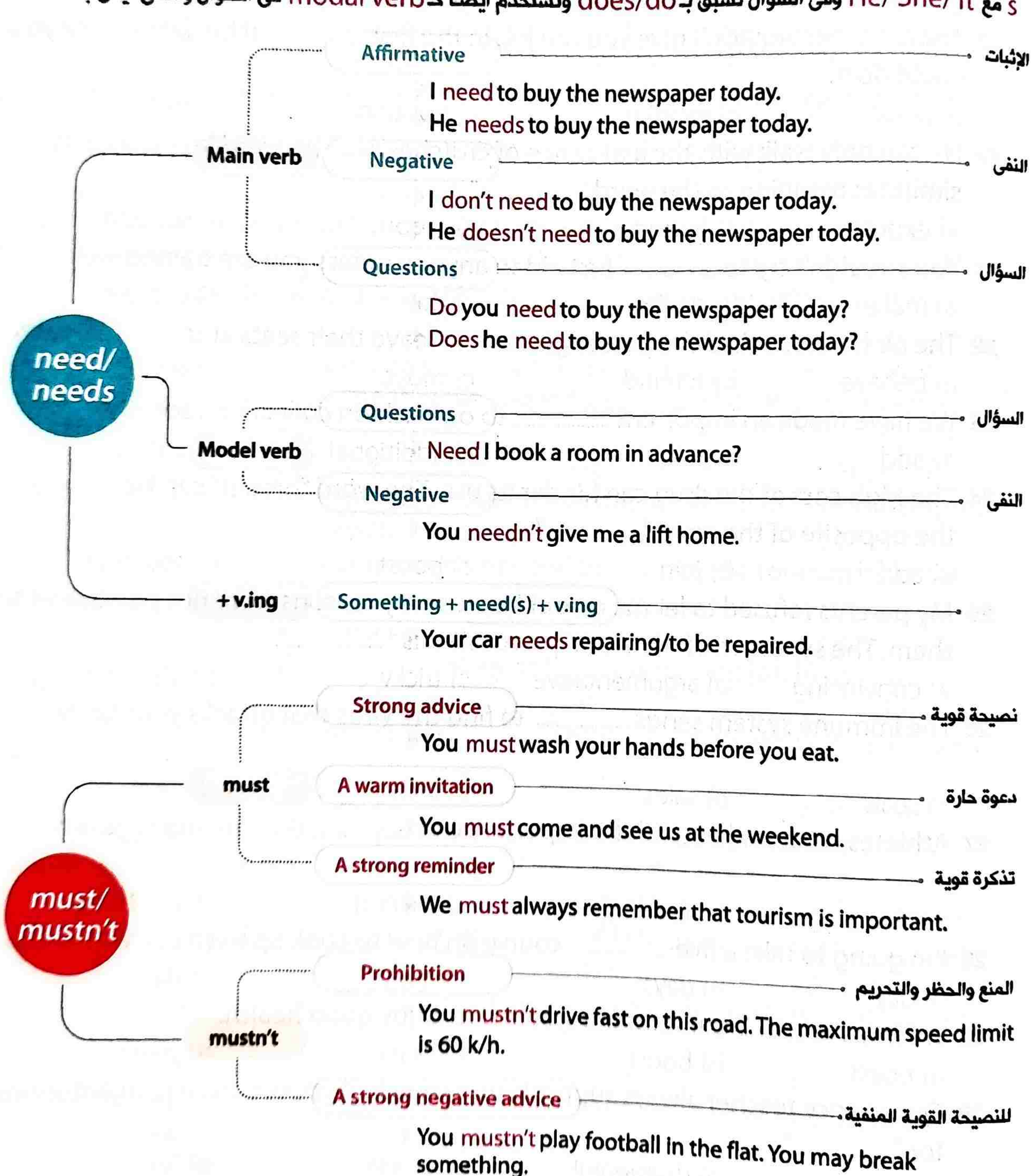
29 We must .... our immune systems to enjoy good health. *(Longman)*
a) boast b) boost c) burst d) paste

30 Our science teacher always supports us so much. "Support" here is an antonym for "....................". *(Longman)*
a) assist b) disappoint c) assess d) let

B Language

Necessity/lack of necessity/prohibition (Extra points)

- نستخدم need للضرورة وهى أكثر أدبًا من must أو have to وتُستخدم كفعل أساسى، ويأتى بعدها to ثم المصدر وتأخذ s مع He/ She/ It وفى السؤال تسبق بـ does/do وتستخدم أيضًا كـ modal verb فى السؤال والنفى ليس بعدها to.



Must and have to are equal متساويان

You can use must or have to to give your own opinion (to say what you think is necessary, or to recommend someone to do something):

نستخدم must أو have to لإبداء الرأى وما نراه ضروريًا أو نوصى شخصًا بفعل شىء.

It's later than I thought. I must go. / I have to go.

I haven't spoken to Noha for ages. I must phone her. / I have to phone her.

(I say this is necessary).

Samir is a really nice person. You must meet him. You have to meet him.

(I recommend this).

It's a must = It's a necessity = It's necessary = It's a necessary thing

عندما نستخدم must كاسم يأتى قبلها a وبعدها to.

It's a must to economise on water.

وعندما نخصص الضرورة نستخدم for وبعدها الشخص وما ينطبق على must ينطبق على الباقين.

It's a must for him to save a lot of money to buy another flat.

Summary

Lack of necessity عدم الضرورة

Present مضارع
- don't/doesn't have to + inf.
- don't/doesn't need to + inf.
- needn't + inf.
- It isn't necessary to + inf.

Past ماضٍ
- didn't have/ need to + P.P.
- needn't have + inf.
- It wasn't necessary for ... to + inf.

Future مستقبل
- won't have/need to + inf.
- It won't be necessary for ... to + inf.

Necessity الضرورة

Present مضارع
- must + inf.
- have/has to + inf.
- need/needs to + inf.
- It's necessary for ... to + inf.

Past ماضٍ
- had to + inf.
- needed to + inf.
- It was necessary for ... to + inf.

Future مستقبل
- will have to + inf.
- will need to + inf.
- It will be necessary for ... to + inf.



Practice  Practise more

Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I can go with you to the cinema tonight as I .... hand over the homework tomorrow.
a) have to b) should c) don't need to d) had to

2 You .... be late. It's the most important meeting of the year.
a) mustn't b) have to c) don't have to d) must

3 If you want to be a professional player, you .... practise every day.
a) mustn't b) don't have to c) had to d) have to

4 You .... buy that book. You can borrow mine.
a) mustn't b) needn't c) shouldn't d) can't

5 You .... speak so loudly on your mobile phone. It's very annoying.
a) needn't b) should c) don't have to d) mustn't

6 My car didn't start yesterday, so I .... get a bus.
a) have to b) had to c) need to d) must

7 We .... leave now as somebody else needs this room.
a) have got to b) needn't c) don't have to d) can't

8 In some countries, children .... wear school uniforms.
a) has to b) mustn't
c) don't need to d) doesn't need to

9 We .... get ready now. The train leaves in five minutes.
a) needn't b) need to c) don't need to d) shouldn't

10 There's no hurry. You .... finish that report until Friday of next week.
a) must b) have to c) don't have to d) mustn't

11 You .... walk up the hill because there's a bus.
a) don't have to b) must c) mustn't d) have to

12 Athletes .... get a special heart examination; it is safer to do this.
a) mustn't b) must c) don't have to d) didn't have to

13 As you've already phoned Mona, I .... her myself.
a) didn't have to phone b) needn't phone
c) mustn't have phoned d) had to phone

14 Yesterday, I .... work for 12 hours to finish the task.

a) had to b) have to c) will have to d) must

15 You .... drive fast in the city centre. It's very dangerous.

a) must b) mustn't c) don't have to d) have to

16 We .... buy souvenirs for our friends while we're here.

a) mustn't b) had to c) must d) didn't have to

17 **A:** Does Ahmed .... study very much tonight? **B:** No, he doesn't.

a) have to b) must c) has to d) allow to

18 If you take a sick leave إجازة مرضية for three days, you .... bring in a doctor's note or you won't get paid.

a) have to b) can c) should d) are allowed to

19 The sign says, "No parking". That means you ....

a) shouldn't have to leave your car here b) mustn't to leave your car here

c) cannot leave your car here d) cannot be leaving your car here

20 Do you know if we .... have visas to visit Jordan?

a) don't need b) needn't c) have to d) need

21 .... immigrate and leave your family alone without a breadwinner عائل?

a) Need you b) Need you to c) You needn't d) You need to

22 It's .... for every student to study hard and get high marks.

a) optional b) forbidden c) necessity d) a must

23 "It isn't necessary for us to leave soon." This means that we .... soon.

a) didn't need to leave b) needn't have left

c) needn't to leave d) needn't leave

24 You cannot wash these curtains. They ....

a) mustn't be dry-cleaned b) must have been dry-cleaned

c) have to be dry-cleaned d) have been dry-cleaned

25 .... to see a doctor. You're perfectly healthy.

a) You mustn't b) It isn't necessary

c) You needn't d) You have

26 You have to see the headteacher at 3 o'clock. It has the same meaning as "................".

a) You could see the headteacher at 3 o'clock

b) It's necessary for you to see the headteacher at 3 o'clock

c) You needn't have seen the headteacher at 3 o'clock

d) You aren't allowed to see the headteacher at 3 o'clock

27 One of the following options makes the sentence express a lack of necessity.

You .... go there with me. I can handle it; it's not difficult.

a) must
b) mustn't
c) needn't
d) had better

28 One of the following answers is incorrect.

He didn't go to the park with us yesterday because he .... a report.

a) needn't have written
b) was obliged to write
c) had to write
d) needed to write

29 Strong necessity is expressed in one of the following sentences.

a) We can't go away! We must help him!
b) You are allowed to borrow more than two books at a time.
c) She needn't buy more oil. There is enough.
d) They didn't have to buy another flat. Theirs was large.

30 You're not supposed to park your car here. ....

a) It's a public parking only
b) It is necessary
c) It is forbidden
d) It is permitted

31 I .... install a new antivirus; I need to protect my computer. *(Longman)*

a) must
b) didn't have to
c) had to
d) shouldn't

32 You .... try my sister's cake now. It's really delicious! *(Longman)*

a) needn't
b) need
c) mustn't
d) must

33 Unfortunately, my friend broke his leg and .... to hospital where he received proper treatment. *(Longman)*

a) had to go
b) should have gone
c) has to go
d) didn't have to go

34 You .... take photos here; it's a military area. *(Longman)*

a) must
b) mustn't
c) needn't
d) shouldn't

35 **A:** .... cancel your trip to Dahab? **B:** Yes, unfortunately, my father was ill. *(Longman)*

a) Must you
b) Did you have to
c) Do you have to
d) Will you have to

Test yourself



Part 2 (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 My sister couldn't go out with us as she .... the flu and was staying in bed.
a) did b) had c) made d) felt

2 The surgeon performed an emergency operation because he/she knew how serious the .... was.
a) location b) occasion c) site d) situation

3 It is hoped that the wounded soldier will .... better soon.
a) get b) go c) carry d) fall

4 Working in this luxurious hotel really sounds .... for a fresh graduate.
a) worse b) terrible c) perfect d) vague

5 The liver الكبد is an extremely complex .... which needs special care.
a) member b) organ c) individual d) place

6 Karam Gaber is a former Olympic wrestling .... who won a gold medal in 2004.
a) hero b) partner c) trainee d) champion

7 I'm taking a .... in graphic design because I have a good job opportunity.
a) system b) syllabus c) course d) centre

8 The receptionist asked me to complete the form .... my personal data.
a) over b) with c) on d) in

9 The company needs to find ways to .... the level of confidence of its staff.
a) boost b) defect c) damage d) affect

10 A/An .... is a piece of paper that gives information about a product.
a) announcement b) manufacturer
c) advertisement d) label

11 Doctors say that exercise can .... you against heart disease.
a) endanger b) protect c) predict d) promise

12 Our eldest brother can make our father let us go to the cinema; he is a very .... speaker.
a) defective b) explosive c) persuasive d) defensive

13 Can you explain how this machine works? The noun from the verb "explain" is ....
a) explains b) explained c) explanatory d) explanation

14 I would have been here an hour ago, but unfortunately, I missed the train. The adverb "unfortunately" is similar in meaning to ....
a) luckily b) unluckily c) hopefully d) gradually

15 The novel "Treasure Island" is a/an .... and fascinating piece of writing.
a) brilliant b) terrible c) illusive d) intensive

Language

16 You .... get off the bus before it stops. It's dangerous.

a) shouldn't b) oughtn't to c) can d) mustn't

17 They .... to come early. They can come whenever they're ready.

a) don't need b) needn't c) have d) didn't have

18 You .... come to see us at the weekend. We miss you very much.

a) mustn't b) don't have to c) needn't d) must

19 Omar .... finish the report quickly because the deadline is today at 4 pm.

a) had to b) needn't c) has got to d) have to

20 Marwa .... email her homework to her teacher because she forgot to take it to class yesterday.

a) doesn't have to b) have to c) had to d) needn't

21 **A:** Does Ramy .... study very much tonight?
B: No, he doesn't. He reviewed a lot last night and he understood everything well.

a) has to b) have to c) must d) needs to

22 Judy .... go to the supermarket because she doesn't have enough food for dinner.

a) needn't b) have to c) has to d) mustn't

23 **Ahmed:** .... pay to see the doctor?
Amr: No, she .... because she has medical insurance.

a) Does your sister have to/doesn't
b) Did your sister have to/did
c) Must your sister/mustn't
d) Is it necessary for your sister to/isn't

24 We didn't have a test today so I .... for it last night!

a) needn't revise b) don't need to revise
c) mustn't revise d) needn't have revised

25 I got up early this morning without necessity. I ....

a) had to get up early b) didn't need get up early
c) needn't have got up early d) needn't get up early

26 You must come to my wedding party. The underlined verb expresses ....

a) invitation b) suggestion c) offer d) necessity

27 I .... go to a specialist hospital because I had a heart attack.

a) have to b) must
c) had to d) didn't have to

28 Teachers .... wear suits for work, but their clothes must be neat and clean.

a) have to b) don't have to c) doesn't have to d) has to

29 You .... train harder. The final match is next week.

a) mustn't b) don't have to c) must d) can't

30 You .... waste too much time watching TV.

a) mustn't b) have to c) can't d) must

Study | Watch a video | Part 3 Lessons 5 & 6

Act I, Scene i

Vocabulary

act (n)	فصل (فى مسرحية)	honest (adj)	صادق
actions (n)	إجراءات/أفعال	kingdom (n)	مملكة
answer (n)	إجابة/رد	majesty (n)	جلالة/فخامة
beauty (n)	جمال	marry (v) (y ied)	يتزوج
call (v) (ed)	ينادى على	power (n)	قوة/سلطة
countryside (n)	ريف	promise (v) (d)	يعد
cruel (adj)	قاسٍ	queen (n)	ملكة
duke (n)	دوق (لقب نبيل)	riches (n)	ثروات
duty (n)	مهمة/واجب	scene (n)	مشهد (فى مسرحية)
expect (v) (ed)	يتوقع	sir (n)	سيد
feelings (n)	مشاعر	speech (n)	خطاب
fine (adj)	محترم	stranger (n)	شخص غريب
foolish (adj)	أحمق	sword (n)	سيف
forest (n)	غابة	third (n)	ثلث
hate (adj)	يكره	title (n)	لقب

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

give ... advice	يعطى ... نصيحة	put ... into words	يعبر عن ... بالكلمات
make ... happy	يجعل ... سعيدًا	say goodbye to	يودع
divide ... into	يقسم ... إلى	give away	يهب/يتبرع/يتخلى عن
give to	يعطى لـ	shout about	يصيح بشأن/يصرح بـ

Practice  Practise more

King Lear Exercises
Act I, Scene i

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The United ...., England, is actually ruled by the Prime Minister, not the Queen.
a) Republic b) Kingdom c) Council d) Empire

2 The judge asked the lawyer a simple question and he gave a long and confusing ....
a) quiz b) puzzle c) riddle d) answer

3 After El Qanater, the River Nile .... into two channels, Damietta and Rosetta.
a) divides b) shares c) spares d) unifies

4 The divers were impressed by the .... of the coral reefs.
a) price b) wealth c) beauty d) position

5 The hopes of the future .... draws many young people into professional sports, especially football.
a) struggle b) affection c) poverty d) riches

6 The discount is a .... to a half of the full price during Black Friday.
a) once b) third c) twice d) share

7 A wife has a/an .... to her husband and to her children.
a) duty b) invention c) jealousy d) work

8 King Charles III, the present King of Britain, inherited the .... from his mother.
a) location b) address c) title d) health

9 The young man gave .... most of his old clothes to charity.
a) away b) off c) in d) for

10 A .... is a weapon with a short handle and a long sharp blade.
a) gun b) sword c) canon d) stick

11 My friends Amany and Adel are planning to .... next month and invite all their friends to the wedding.
a) separate b) engage c) meet d) marry

12 I think gun hunting should be banned because it is .... to animals.
a) merciful b) simple c) cruel d) humble

13 It was a very .... thing to leave my old job in these hard times.
a) persuasive b) innovative c) smart d) foolish

14 My parents always advise me to be .... and avoid lies.
a) vague b) honest c) tricky d) blushing

15 My uncle .... to buy his son a new bicycle on passing his exams.
a) promised b) expected c) graduated d) puzzled



للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.



Think of something that might help you to be healthier. Make notes on three persuasive reasons why your friend should do this.

Tips for writing the email

Introduction	What do you think can help you to be healthier? State briefly how this can help you.
Main body (1)	What is the first reason for your choice? Explain it in detail to try to convince your friend.
Main body (2)	What is the second reason for your choice? Explain it in detail to try to convince your friend.
Conclusion	How can your friend benefit from your advice? Conclude and clear your point of view briefly.

Model Email

To : yasser100@mail.com
From : medhat100@mail.com
Dear Yasser,

Fitness and health seem to be the same for everyone, but they have two different meanings. Fitness is the physical ability to perform work, sports, etc. While health is a condition in which the body should have resistance capacity to all illnesses and all parts of the body should work well without any problem. Your body should possess both fitness as well as health.

Health can be maintained by a proper diet, exercise and hygiene. To keep your body healthy, you need to do proper exercise. Usually, sportspeople have fit bodies. They shape their bodies in such a way that they will be fit for their sports. But, coming to a healthy body is just a matter of controlling weight and making your body immune to diseases.

For a healthy and fit body, walking is a very good exercise which helps in burning the excess fat in your body. A fit body doesn't mean that it should look good from the outside. A fit and healthy body should be physically active and energetic and smart enough to accept any tasks given to them.

Due to more demand for a fit and healthy body, many gyms and workout centres are opened. Maintaining a healthy and fit body requires self-control and willpower. Many factors can divert us from achieving our goal of having a fit and healthy body. But, try to focus on it to achieve your health as all know "Health is wealth".

Look forward to hearing from you.
Yours,
Medhat

Practice



Skills Exercises

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

"Don't eat just before going to bed!" My mother used to tell me. "You might get a nightmare[1]." I never believed her until it happened to me. It was on a night when I felt hungry just as I was about to go to bed. So, I made myself a peanut butter sandwich and a large cold glass of milk. After consuming[2] them, I went to bed.

Soon I drifted[3] off into a troubled sleep. I dreamt that I was with a group of people looking for an old woman. I was not sure why we were looking for her, but we all seemed afraid of her. Somehow[4] we had to find her. So there I was, searching high and low for her in frightful places I had never been before. Sometimes I seemed to be flying while at other times I seemed unable to move. The whole atmosphere was like a dreadful[5] horror movie.

After some searching, I entered a darkened room and saw a figure sleeping on a bed. As I got nearer, the figure suddenly threw away the blanket, got up, and stared at me. It was an ugly old woman with shiny golden teeth. She raised her claw-like fingers and walked towards me.

I wanted to run but was unable to. I tried to scream but found that I could not. In horror, I struggled and struggled to get away from the frightful woman.

The next moment I gave a muffled yell and found myself panting[6] on my bed. My goodness[7], what a horrible nightmare it was! For a minute or so I lay on my bed not daring to close my eyes for fear of falling asleep again and continuing the nightmare. From then on I never eat just before going to sleep.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The writer's mother warned him not to ....
- a) eat before going to sleep
- b) go with a group of people anywhere
- c) search for the old woman
- d) scream on facing dangers

2 The result of a peanut butter sandwich and a large cold glass of milk was a/an ....
- a) high bill
- b) nightmare
- c) attack from an old woman
- d) mother's anger from her son

3 The synonym of the word "muffled" is a "................".
- a) loud speech
- b) loud voice
- c) very pure sound
- d) quiet and less clear sound

4 The best title to the passage is "................".
- a) Nightmares
- b) Mothers' experiences
- c) Much eating and good sleep
- d) An adventure during the night

(1) كابوس (2) يستهلك/يلتهم (3) يبدأ النوم (4) بطريقة ما (5) مريع/فظيع (6) يلهث (7) تعبير للدهشة والتعجب

5 The boy was looking for the old woman although ....

a) she was cute
b) she was scared
c) he was afraid of her
d) he couldn't know her place

6 According to the passage, the nightmare ....

a) happens when people sleep
b) is a bad scary dream
c) refers to real life
d) happens to hungry people

7 The boy didn't want to close his eyes ....

a) because he was tired
b) so that he could see the rest of the nightmare
c) because they were sore
d) because he fears that he might see the nightmare again

8 The writer decided that he ....

a) would never eat just before sleeping
b) wouldn't listen to his mum's words
c) would do sports before sleeping
d) wouldn't talk to old women anymore

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 Egypt was one of the first African countries to provide different vaccines for COVID-19. The Egyptian scientists could even develop a vaccine for the new virus.

a) كانت مصر من أوائل الدول الإفريقية التى قدمت أدوية مختلفة لـ كوفيد-١٩ واستطاع العلماء المصريون حتى تطوير لقاح للفيروس الجديد.
b) كانت مصر من أواخر الدول الإفريقية التى قدمت لقاحات مختلفة لـ كوفيد-١٩ واستطاع العلماء المصريون حتى تطوير لقاح للفيروس الجديد.
c) كانت مصر من أوائل الدول الإفريقية التى قدمت لقاحات مختلفة لـ كوفيد-١٩ ويمكن للعلماء المصريين حتى تطوير لقاح للفيروس الجديد.
d) كانت مصر من أوائل الدول الإفريقية التى قدمت لقاحات مختلفة لـ كوفيد-١٩ واستطاع العلماء المصريون حتى تطوير لقاح للفيروس الجديد.

2 The main purpose of education is the integral development of the student. It also aims at preparing generations of scientists able to face the challenges of the future.

a) الغرض الرئيسى من التعليم هو التنمية المتكاملة للطالب. كما يهدف إلى إعداد أجيال من العلماء قادرة على مواجهة تحديات المستقبل.
b) الغرض الرئيسى من التعليم هو التنمية الجزئية للطالب. كما يهدف إلى إعداد أجيال من العلماء قادرة على مواجهة تحديات المستقبل.
c) الغرض الرئيسى من التعليم هو التنمية المتكاملة للطالب. كما يهدف إلى إعداد أجيال من العلماء قادرة على مواجهة تغيرات المستقبل.
d) الغرض الرئيسى من التعليم هو التنمية المتكاملة للطالب. كما يهدف إلى إعداد أجيال من العلماء عاجزة عن مواجهة تحديات المستقبل.

3 A healthy lifestyle has become more important with the spread of new diseases. Healthy food and sport are the most important factors of that style.

a) أصبح أسلوب الحياة الصحى أقل أهمية مع انتشار أمراض جديدة، والغذاء الصحى والرياضة من أهم عوامل ذلك الأسلوب.
b) أصبح أسلوب الحياة الصحى أكثر أهمية مع انتشار أمراض جديدة، والغذاء الصحى والرياضة من أهم عوامل ذلك الأسلوب.
c) أصبح أسلوب الحياة الصحى أكثر أهمية مع انتشار أمراض جديدة، والغذاء الصحى والرياضة من أهم نتائج ذلك الأسلوب.
d) أصبح أسلوب الحياة الصحى أكثر أهمية مع علاج أمراض جديدة، والغذاء الصحى والرياضة من أهم محددات ذلك الأسلوب.

4 The World Health Organisation regards clean water and food as one of the primary rights for human beings. Thus, it calls for fighting pollution.

a) تَعتبر منظمة الصحة العالمية الماء النظيف والغذاء أحد الواجبات الأساسية للإنسان لذلك تدعو إلى مكافحة التلوث.

b) تَعتبر منظمة الصحة العالمية الماء النظيف والغذاء أحد الحقوق الفرعية للإنسان لذلك تدعو إلى مكافحة التلوث.

c) تَعتبر منظمة الصحة العالمية الماء النظيف والغذاء أحد الحقوق الأساسية للإنسان لذلك تنبذ مكافحة التلوث.

d) تَعتبر منظمة الصحة العالمية الماء النظيف والغذاء أحد الحقوق الأساسية للإنسان لذلك تدعو إلى مكافحة التلوث.

5 Tourism is the second most important source of hard currency in Egypt. It also adds much to our national income. Therefore, the government gives due care to it.

a) السياحة هى ثانى أهم مصدر للعملة الصلبة فى مصر. كما أنها تضيف الكثير إلى دخلنا القومى. لذلك، فإن الحكومة توليها العناية الواجبة.

b) السياحة هى ثانى أهم مصدر للعملة الصعبة فى مصر. كما أنها تضيف الكثير إلى دخلنا المحلى. لذلك، فإن الحكومة توليها العناية الواجبة.

c) السياحة هى ثانى أهم مصدر للعملة الصعبة فى مصر. كما أنها تضيف الكثير إلى دخلنا القومى. لذلك، فإن الحكومة توليها العناية الواجبة.

d) السياحة هى ثانى أهم مصدر للعملة الصعبة فى مصر. كما أنها تضيف الكثير إلى دخلنا القومى. لذلك، فإن الحكومة توليها العناية السببية.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

6 نفخـــر جميعـًا بعلمائنا المتميزيـــن أمثال أحمد زويل وفاروق الباز اللذين قاما بإنجازات علمية كبيرة ســاهمت فى تقدم البشرية فى مجالات عديدة فى كل أنحاء العالم.

a) We are all proud of our modern scientists, such as Ahmed Zewail and Farouk El-Baz, who made great scientific achievements that contributed to the progress of humanity in many fields all over the world.

b) We are all proud of our distinguished scientists, such as Ahmed Zewail and Farouk El-Baz, who made great scientific achievements that contributed to the progress of humanity in many fields all over the world.

c) We are all proud of our distinguished scientists, such as Ahmed Zewail and Farouk El-Baz, who did great scientific achievements that contributed to the progress of humanity in many fields all over the world.

d) We are all proud of our detected scientists, such as Ahmed Zewail and Farouk El-Baz, who made great scientific achievements that cooperated with the progress of humanity in many fields all over the world.

7 مـع أزمــة فيروس كورونا برزت أهمية التعليم عبر الإنترنت؛ حيث أصبـح الحل الوحيد لإكمال الطلاب تعليمهم بعد غلق المدارس والجامعات فى كثير من دول العالم.

a) With the coronavirus crisis, the importance of online education has emerged. It has become the only solution for students to complete their education after the closure of schools and universities in many continents of the world.

b) With the coronavirus crisis, the importance of online education has reduced. It has become the only solution for students to complete their education after the closure of schools and universities in many countries of the world.

c) With the coronavirus crisis, the importance of online education has emerged. It has become the only solution for students to complete their education after the closure of schools and universities in many countries of the world.

d) With the coronavirus crisis, the importance of online education has emerged. It has become the only tactic for students to complete their education after the closure of schools and universities in many countries of the world.

8 إن اتبـاع نظام غذائى يسـاعدك كثيرًا فى الحفاظ على وزن طبيعى وصحة جيـدة. لذا يجب أن تعى أن المعدة مفتاح لصحة جيدة فى حالة اتباع العادات الغذائية السليمة. (Longman)

a) Following a diet helps you a lot in maintaining a normal weight and good health. Therefore, you should be aware that the stomach is a key to good health if you follow proper eating habits.

b) Following a diet helps you a lot in maintaining an abnormal weight and good health. Therefore, you should be aware that the stomach is a key to good health if you follow proper eating habits.

c) Following a diet helps you a lot in wasting a normal weight and good health. Therefore, you should be aware that the stomach is a key to good health if you follow proper eating habits.

d) Following a diet helps you a lot in maintaining a normal weight and good health. Therefore, you should be aware that the kidney is a key to good health if you follow proper eating customs.

9 أصبحت كرة القدم صناعة كبيرة تجذب الكثير من الاستثمارات وتدر أرباحًا أكثر من العديد من الصناعات الأخرى، كما أنها تلقى اهتمامًا إعلاميًا أكبر من الرياضات الأخرى.

a) Football had become a big industry that attaches a lot of investment and generates more profits than many other industries, and it also receives more media attention than other sports.

b) Football is becoming a big industry that attracts a lot of investment and takes more profits than many other industries, and it also receives more media attention than other sports.

c) Football becomes a big industry that attracts a lot of investment and generates more profits than many other industries, and it also receives more media intention than other sports.

d) Football has become a big industry that attracts a lot of investment and generates more profits than many other industries, and it also receives more media attention than other sports.

10 أخبرت صديقى أنه لا داعى أن يشترى كاميرا جديدة لأننى سوف أقرضه الكاميرا التى أهداها لى والدى فى عيد ميلادى.

a) I told my friend that he mustn't buy a new camera because I'm going to lend him the camera my dad gave me for my birthday.

b) I told my friend that he shouldn't buy a new camera because I'm going to lend him the camera my dad gave me for my birthday.

c) I told my friend that he doesn't have to buy a new camera because I'm going to lend him the camera my dad gave me for my birthday.

d) I told my friend that he wouldn't have to buy a new camera because I'm going to lend him the camera my dad gave me for my birthday.

3 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"How the internet has changed the world of work nowadays"

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. | I used the right structure. | I used a topic sentence. | I wrote the conclusion. | I used the right punctuation.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 As she is very sick, Mona taught her children to call the .... services if something bad happened to her.
a) accuracy b) infection c) emergency d) inquiry

2 The new factory placed a/an .... in the local paper asking for a sales manager.
a) situation b) advertisement c) experience d) announcement

3 A/An .... computer can be used to send out spam emails or attack other computers without your knowledge.
a) infected b) broken c) damaged d) immune

4 Some college students choose to .... their course after the first year at a certain department.
a) make b) run c) change d) take

5 The accident victim was taken to hospital as his injuries were quite severe. The antonym of the word "severe" is ".....................".
a) acute b) mild c) harsh d) violent

6 The new trainer of the national tennis team has promised to make an Olympic .... of the young player.
a) coach b) athlete c) referee d) champion

7 She .... home yesterday because her little son was sick.
a) needn't stay b) had to stay
c) needn't have stayed d) didn't have to stay

8 You .... ride a bicycle in this park. It's forbidden.
a) mustn't b) needn't c) don't have to d) aren't allowed

9 Is it .... for us to send the research as an email attachment, sir?
a) necessary b) must c) necessity d) possibility

10 Before you buy a house, you .... consider all the costs.
a) needn't b) have got c) don't have to d) need to

11 Fahmy is not here. He .... leave early.
a) must b) had to c) has to d) needs to

12 I .... to look my best as I'm going to have a job interview.
a) should b) must c) need d) needn't

13 It's late and the baby is asleep. You .... make so much noise.

a) must b) mustn't c) needn't d) have to

14 I .... finish this essay today. It has to be handed in by tomorrow.

a) had to b) don't have to c) mustn't d) must

15 You .... take a taxi to the station. I'll give you a lift.

a) mustn't b) can't c) needn't d) had to

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Obesity (being very fat) is one of the greatest public health challenges of the 21st century. Its prevalence has tripled in many countries of the World Health Organisation since the 1980s, and the numbers of those affected continue to rise at an alarming rate. In addition to causing various physical disabilities and psychological problems, excess weight drastically increases a person's risk of developing a number of non-communicable diseases, including cardiovascular disease, cancer and diabetes.

Obesity is a condition that is associated with having an excess amount of body fat, defined by genetic and environmental factors that are difficult to control when dieting. Obesity is classified as having a Body Mass Index (BMI) of 30 or greater. BMI is a tool used to measure obesity.

There are many causes that directly and indirectly contribute to obesity. Behaviour, environment and genetics are among the main contributors to obesity. The Centres for Disease Control have identified these three as the main causes of the complexity of the obesity epidemic.

In today's fast-paced environment, it is easy to adopt unhealthy behaviours. Behaviour, in the case of obesity, relates to food choices, the amount of physical activity you get and the effort to maintain your health.

Environment plays a key role in shaping an individual's habits and lifestyle. There are many environmental influences that can impact your health decisions. Today's society has developed a more sedentary lifestyle. Walking has been replaced by driving cars, physical activity has been replaced by technology and nutrition has been overcome by convenience foods.

Science shows that genetics plays a role in obesity. Genes can cause certain disorders which result in obesity. However, not all individuals who are predisposed to obesity become affected by obesity. Research is currently underway to determine which genes contribute most to obesity.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16 The main idea of the passage is ....
a) the dangers of obesity in the poor countries
b) how can the rich countries solve the problem of obesity
c) the advantages and disadvantages of obesity
d) obesity and our health

17 Obesity has increased .... since the 1980s in many European countries.
a) three times b) twice c) four times d) once

18 Which of the following ideas is not mentioned in the passage?
a) Food choices and the amount of physical activity are causes of obesity.
b) Obesity affects the level of intelligence of all people.
c) Sedentary lifestyle is one of the causes of obesity.
d) Scientists don't know which genes are responsible for obesity.

19 What does the underlined word "epidemic" mean?
a) Decrease. b) Control. c) Health. d) Outbreak.

20 According to the passage, behaviour is .... obesity.
a) not a cause for
b) a minor cause for
c) a major cause for
d) one of the steps to stop

21 The problem of obesity is that it ....
a) causes many health problems
b) makes the person very big
c) causes the prices to rise
d) needs special clothes

22 Obesity is classified when a person's BMI is ....
a) below thirty
b) thirty or more
c) double thirty
d) not thirty

23 Scientifically, ... is/are responsible for obesity.
a) food b) environment c) diseases d) genes

24 Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Spare time can be useful if it is employed for developing one's character physically and mentally. So we should all realise its importance and try to make the best use of it.

a) يجب أن يكون وقت الفراغ مفيداً إذا تم اســتخدامه لتطوير شــخصية الفرد جسديًا وعقليًا. لذلك يجب علينا جميعًا أن ندرك أهميته ونحاول صنع الأفضل منه.

b) يمكن أن يكون وقت الفراغ مفيداً إذا تم استخدامه لتطوير شخصية الفرد جسديًا وعقليًا. لذلك يجب علينا جميعًا أن ندرك أهميته ونحاول حسن استخدامه.

c) يمكن أن يكون وقت الفراغ مفيداً إذا تم استخدامه لتطوير شخصية الفرد جسديًا وعقليًا. لذلك يجب علينا جميعًا أن ندرك أهميته ونحاول جعل الأفضل منه.

d) يمكن أن يكون وقت الفراغ مفيداً إذا تم اســتخدامه لتغيير شــخصية الفرد جسديًا وعقليًا. لذلك يجب علينا جميعًا أن ندرك أهميته ونحاول حسن استخدامه.

25 Choose the correct English translation:

- القـراءة هوايـة مفيدة جدًا لأنها تحفز عقلـك، ويقول الخبراء إن لها تأثيرًا مهدئًا، ويمكن أن تخفض مسـتويات الإجهاد وتساعدك على الاسترخاء، فضلًا عن كونها تُثري ثقافتك.

a) Reading is a very beneficial hobby because it hinders your mind. Experts say it has a calming effect, can lower stress levels and help you relax, as well as enrich your culture.

b) Reading is a very reflective hobby because it stimulates your mind. Experts say it has a calming effect, can lower stress levels and help you relax, as well as reduce your culture.

c) Reading is a very beneficial hobby because it stimulates your mind. Experts say it has a clearing effect, can lower stress stages and help you relax, as well as enrich your culture.

d) Reading is a very beneficial hobby because it stimulates your mind. Experts say it has a calming effect, can lower stress levels and help you race, as well as enrich your culture.

26 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"How to protect your environment and preserve it for future generations"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

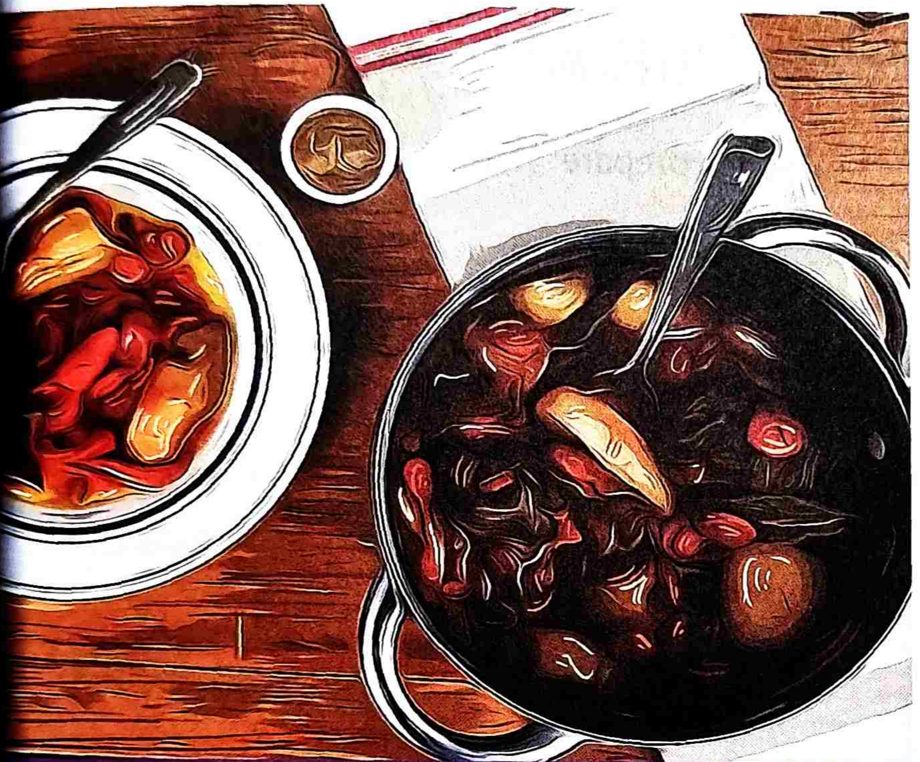
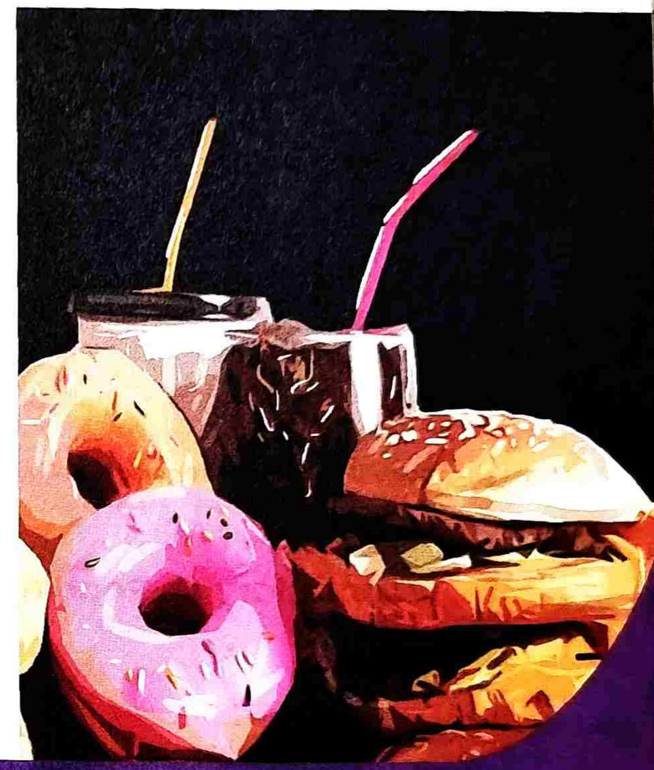
....

لمزيـد مـن التدريبـات للطلبـة الفائقين
الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 304

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!



Eating around the world

Unit 2

Objectives



Reading : An excerpt from Old Jo's Scrap-Bag. An Old-fashioned Thanksgiving by Louisa M. Alcott; Two articles about ways of eating around the world

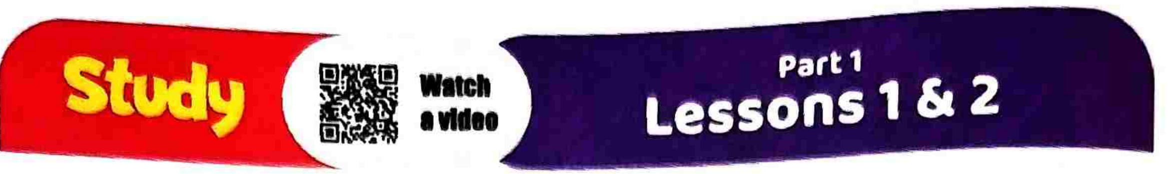
Writing : A questionnaire

Listening : Descriptions of international meals

Speaking : Communicating opinions and beliefs

Language : Comparative and superlative adjectives

Life Skills : Critical thinking; Respect for diversity; Negotiation

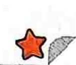


A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

amount (n)	مقدار/كمية	occasion (n)	مناسبة
celebrate (v) (d)	يحتفل بـ	prepare (v) (d)	يعد/يجهز
eat out (v) ★	يأكل بالخارج	serve (v) (d)	يخدم/يقدم طعامًا
get together (v)	يتجمع/يتقابل	traditional (adj)	تقليدى

★ Mum cooked nothing; we're going to eat out today.







Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

arrive (v) (d)	يصل	extract (n) (v) (ed)	مقتبس/يقتبس/يستخلص
chips (n)	شيبسى (شرائح البطاطس)	feed (v)	يُطعم/يغذى
cornbread (n)	خبز الذرة	festival (n)	مهرجان
curious (adj)	فضولى	fry (v) (y ied)	يقلى
customer (n)	زبون/عميل	fun (n)	مرح
decide (v) (d)	يقرر	gather (v) (ed)	يتجمع/يجمع
dessert (n)	تحلية (بعد الطعام)	native (adj)	أصلى
Europe (n)	أوروبا	noodles (n)	شرائح المكرونة
event (n)	حدث	old-fashioned (adj)	ذو طراز قديم
expect (v) (ed)	يتوقع	oyster (n)	محار

passenger (n)	راكب/مسافر	special (adj)	خاص
popular (adj)	محبوب/مشهور	spicy (adj)	حار (بالتوابل)
prawn (n)	جمبرى	surprised (adj)	مندهش
pumpkin pie (n)	فطيرة اليقطين (القرع العسلى)	sweet potatoes (n)	البطاطا
quantity (n)	كمية	takeaway (n)	طعام جاهز
rare (adj)	نادر	Thanksgiving (n)	عيد الشكر
recent (adj)	حديث	turkey (n)	ديك رومى
roast lamb (n)	لحم ضأن مشوى	wake (v)	يوقظ/يستيقظ
roasted (adj)	مشوى	whatever	مهما/أيا كان
shellfish (n)	المحار		

Workbook Vocabulary

curry (n)	كارى (بهار هندى)	nut (n)	بندق
exist (v) (ed)	يوجد	seafood (n)	مأكولات بحرية
grapes (n)	عنب	smell (n) (v) (ed)	رائحة/يشم
herring (n)	سمك الرنجة	taste (n) (v) (d)	مذاق/يتذوق
Indonesian (adj)	إندونيسى	the countryside (n)	الريف
jar (n)	إناء/برطمان	whale (n)	حوت/لحم الحوت
menu (n)	قائمة طعام		

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Fetta is a/an .... Egyptian dish which most people have on Eid El Adha festival.
   a) updated b) technological c) inventive d) traditional
2. I always ask my mother not to add hot peppers to the food as I don't like .... food.
   a) spicy b) solid c) cool d) cooked
3. We were .... to know who won the game that we didn't watch on TV.
   a) obvious b) curious c) exciting d) proud
4. The new restaurant quickly built up a base of regular .... because its food is really good.
   a) customers b) producers c) servants d) sellers
5. There is hard .... between the leading communication companies in the market.
   a) race b) competition c) festival d) examination
6. My friend nearly lives on .... as he has lived alone since he moved to Cairo.
   a) take-ins b) overtakes c) takedowns d) takeaways
7. My brother doesn't like wearing suits; he only wears them on formal ....
   a) accidents b) occasions c) actions d) experiences
8. .... are a long thin kind of pasta, used especially in Chinese and Italian cooking.
   a) Prawns b) Chips c) Noodles d) Lambs
9. People differ in the way they .... their festivals, but most of them have special meals on these days.
   a) celebrate b) remind c) expect d) report
10. My doctor always tells me that I need to increase the .... of exercise I take.
    a) account b) quality c) amount d) number

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

around the country	فى كل أنحاء البلد	fall asleep	ينام فجأة
at least	على الأقل	for example	على سبيل المثال
catch up	يجارى/يعرف أحوال	get ... ready	يجهز/يعد ...
by that time	بحلول ذلك الوقت	have a meal	يتناول وجبة
amount of	كمية من	take place	يحدث
keep out of	يبتعد عن	tell ... about	يخبر ... عن
look after	يعتنى بـ	travel to	يسافر إلى
(be) made from	مصنوع من	wait for	ينتظر

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
arrive	يصل	arrival	وصول	arriving	قادم
celebrate	يحتفل بـ	celebration	احتفال	celebratory	احتفالى
decide	يقرر	decision	قرار	decisive	حاسم
exist	يوجد/يتواجد	existence	وجود	existing/existent existential	موجود وجودى
expect	يتوقع	expectation	توقع	expected	متوقع
popularise	يعمم	popularity	شهرة	popular	محبوب/مشهور
prepare	يجهز	preparation	إعداد	prepared	معد/جاهز
serve	يخدم	service servant	خدمة خادم	serving	خادم
wake	يوقظ/يستيقظ	waking	الاستيقاظ	awake	مستيقظ

- They decided to leave now.
- Their decision was made carefully.
- They took decisive actions to face the problems.



Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
celebrate	يحتفل بـ	honour	ignore يتجاهل
exist	يوجد	live/remain	depart/cease يغادر/يتوقف
gather	يتجمع	collect/meet	separate/scatter يفصل/يتناثر
old-fashioned	ذو طراز قديم	outdated/old	fashionable/modern ذو طراز حديث
popular	محبوب	attractive/famous	unpopular/unknown غير محبوب/غير معروف
probably	من المحتمل	possibly/likely	unlikely/improbably من غير المحتمل
rare	نادر	scarce/unique	common/ordinary شائع/عادى
surprised	مندهش	astonished/amazed	unsurprised/poised غير مندهش
traditional	تقليدى	conventional/classical	modern/new حديث
welcome	يرحب بـ	greet/entertain	exclude/refuse يستبعد/يستنكر

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 During the school picnic, we gathered the children around us and sang songs. The synonym of the word "gather" is "..................".
a) divide b) collect c) scatter d) separate

2 One in seven road accidents is caused by drivers .... asleep while driving.
a) falling b) going c) turning d) failing

3 Sami has missed so much school that he's going to find it hard to catch ....
a) for b) at c) in d) up

4 We would welcome any advice or suggestions with open arms. The antonym of the word "welcome" is "..................".
a) agree b) accept c) refuse d) reply

5 I hope I've made the right .... to join the Faculty of Literature.
a) decide b) decision c) decided d) decisive

6 The new coach's job includes looking .... under-21 team.

a) for b) up c) like d) after

7 We have a lot of trouble at the factory because of the old-fashioned machines. The adjective "old-fashioned" is similar in meaning to ....

a) modern b) outdated c) new d) updated

8 Many small companies will not exist in a few years' time. The verb "exist" is the opposite of ....

a) cease b) entertain c) greet d) reduce

9 We celebrate 6th October as one of the most important events in our history. The adjective from the verb "celebrate" is ....

a) celebrates b) celebration c) celebratory d) celebrating

10 The drink which is made .... cherries was really delicious.

a) in b) into c) for d) from

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات الآتية واستخداماتها

1	**arrive (in/at)** ١- يصل (لا يتبعه مفعول) ٢- يصل إلى (يتبعه مفعول بعد حروف الجر (in/at	- When does the Paris plane arrive? - We arrived in Cairo late at night. - The passengers arrived at the airport just before the plane takes off.
	reach ١- يصل إلى (يتبعه مفعول بدون حرف جر) ٢- يصل إلى شيء معنوى	- We reached Cairo late at night. - Ministers must reach a decision before next month.
2	**decide to + inf.** يقرر أن (يتبعه المصدر)	Wafaa decided to stay in the hotel for two days.
	decide that + a sentence يقرر أن (يتبعه جملة كاملة)	I decided that it would be best to tell my father the truth.
	decide on + n/v-ing يستقر على (يتبعه اسم أو صيغة (verb + ing	We decided on going to Sharm El-Sheikh for our holiday this year.
3	**special** خاص (من نوع خاص)	I only wear this suit on special occasions like weddings.
	private خصوصى (خاص بشخص أو مجموعة محددة)	My grandfather didn't want to discuss his private life with anyone.

event ١ - حدث مهم ٢ - حدث مرتب (مثل حفل موسيقى/مؤتمر سياسى)	- One of the most important events in our history is October Victory. - The charity raises money by organising social events.
incident ١ - حدث (عارض/غير معتاد) ٢ - حدث فى فيلم/قصة/مسرحية	- The fire shooting is one of the incidents of the day. - He thought the film was boring without many incidents.
accident حادث (شىء خاطئ أو مؤذٍ حدث بغير ترتيب)	Over 70,000 people are seriously injured every year in road accidents.

menu ١ - قائمة طعام (فى مطعم) ٢ - قائمة (مهام/إعدادات) فى جهاز	- He looked at the menu and decided to have chicken with rice. - The menu bar with its windows is one of the features of the desktop.
list قائمة (أشياء أو مهام تم إعدادها)	I made a list of all the jobs I had to do in the house.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The earthquake in Turkey was one of the biggest tragic .... of the year.
   a) events b) accidents c) incidents d) processes
2. Experts take .... care in handling very old books as they are soft and valuable.
   a) private b) special c) general d) public
3. After a long discussion, we decided .... blue for painting the bedroom.
   a) for b) to c) at d) on
4. The government must .... a decision about the new city before next month.
   a) arrive b) do c) reach d) come
5. Children under 12 can choose dishes from the children's .... in most restaurants.
   a) menu b) list c) title d) leaflet

Practice  Practise more

Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 We .... our father's graduation with a party for family and close friends.
a) shared b) celebrated c) expected d) gathered

2 Most Egyptian families usually .... together at important festivals such as Eid El Adha and Christmas.
a) get b) serve c) make d) perform

3 Working methods in the factory were .... until the owners went over to computers.
a) modern b) old-fashioned c) splendid d) recent

4 The children had a lot of .... at the movie theatre watching their favourite film.
a) sorrow b) fight c) quarrel d) fun

5 Children are usually .... about animals and how they live.
a) thoughtful b) grateful c) curious d) strange

6 The whole class seem to be working hard .... for the final exams which are soon.
a) making b) preparing c) serving d) advising

7 The chef at the hotel restaurant is used to .... important guests himself.
a) serving b) surprising c) preparing d) replying

8 After finishing our dinner, the waiter asked us if we'd like to order a ....
a) desert b) dessert c) recipe d) receipt

9 Hesham was rewarded because he is always the first to .... at work in the morning.
a) go b) get c) arrive d) reach

10 When they got off the train, the three .... shared a taxi home as they didn't have enough money.
a) voters b) passengers c) sellers d) drivers

11 Most Indian dishes usually taste very .... as they use the hottest pepper in them.
a) sweet b) tasteful c) warm d) spicy

12 Science gives us hope that many diseases will not .... in our future world.
a) damage b) disappear c) exist d) cure

13 Suzan speaks French fluently, but it isn't her .... language.
a) foreign b) native c) modern d) dead

14 The chef said that we needed to use fresh herbs اعشاب to get the good Italian ....
a) scene b) sight c) test d) taste

15 The poet read several .... from his new poems in his television interview.
a) marks b) volumes c) extracts d) scripts

16 Most of the buildings in El Moez Street in Cairo are in the .... style dating back to many years ago.
a) updated b) ragged c) gradual d) traditional

17 My grandmother used her best chinaware الأوانى الصينية on special .... and she is always careful about it.
a) accidents b) reflections c) occasions d) results

18 Experts advise the stadium workers to cut the grass of the pitch at .... once a week in summer.
a) last b) lost c) list d) least

19 The Pyramids are one of the most .... touristic places with tourists in Egypt.
a) popularise b) popularity c) popular d) unpopular

20 The manager says that the next meeting will take .... on Thursday.
a) place b) part c) up d) in

21 It is common for children to be afraid of the dark. The adjective "common" can be the opposite of the adjective "..................".
a) useful b) ordinary c) available d) rare

22 The businessman was arrested on his .... at the airport as he had been suspected of a crime.
a) arrive b) arrival c) arrives d) arrived

23 Mother always asks my little brother to .... out of the kitchen.
a) sleep b) take c) keep d) give

24 Unfortunately, the factory didn't achieve the .... profits and we had to close it.
a) expect b) expectance c) expected d) expecting

25 The fire could possibly have been caused by accident. The adverb "possibly" is similar in meaning to the adverb "..................".
a) regularly b) probably c) terribly d) fantastically

26 In some parts of Africa, people are still using letters as a/an .... way of communication. *(Longman)*
a) modern b) usual c) traditional d) international

27 We had to .... a lot of sweets for my sister's birthday party. *(Longman)*
a) prepare b) compare c) repair d) appear

28 We are going to .... after my brother's graduation. *(Longman)*
a) collaborate b) celebrate c) contribute d) educate

29 I usually visit my village on different .... *(Longman)*
a) occasions b) purposes c) positions d) reasons

30 It's important to show .... for other people's opinions. *(Longman)*
a) courage b) respect c) dislike d) jealousy



1 Adjectives الصفات

الصفة: هى كلمة تصف الاسم ولا تُجمع حتى ولو كان الاسم الموصوف جمعًا.

- She is a beautiful girl.
- They are beautiful girls.



تأتى الصفة قبل الاسم وإذا جاءت بعده تسبق بـ v. to be أو بعد بعض الأفعال مثل:

(look, smell, sound, feel, taste, seem, appear, become, get, stay, etc.)

- He is a tall boy.
- She looks pretty.
- The boy is tall.
- The food tastes good.



الصفة تأتى بعد الأسماء التى أولها some/any/no/every

- I haven't met anyone important since I left Paris.



الصفات الآتية لا يأتى بعدها أسماء:

(afraid, alike, alive, alone, ashamed, asleep, awake, glad, pleased, etc.)

- They are still alive.



بعض الصفات لا تأتى إلا قبل الأسماء مثل:

(chief, indoor, outdoor, only, outer, upper, etc.)

- I like outdoor activities such as skiing, climbing and hiking.



بعض الصفات تستخدم مع the كأنها أسماء لتفيد الجمع:

(old, young, blind, dead, deaf, disabled, living, sick, homeless, hungry, poor, rich, strong, weak, unemployed, middle-aged, elderly, etc.)

- The rich (Rich people) should help and support the poor (poor people).

2 Order of Adjectives ترتيب الصفات

	Opinion	Fact adjectives							Noun
		Size	Age	Shape	Colour	Origin	Material	Used for	
It's a	nice	small	old	square	brown	Italian	wooden	dinner	table.

وفي الغالب نستخدم صفة أو اثنتين أو ثلاث صفات فقط قبل الاسم وليس كل هذه الصفات.

a beautiful, white wedding dress.



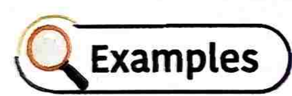
3 One-syllable Adjectives

صفات المقطع الواحد

Positive One-syllable Adjectives صفات المقطع الواحد	Comparative adj. + er + than	Superlative the + adj. + est
tall	taller than	the tallest
old	older than	the oldest
long	longer than	the longest
quick	quicker than	the quickest
short	shorter than	the shortest
إذا كانت الصفة تنتهي بحرف e نضع r/st.		
large	larger than	the largest
wide	wider than	the widest
إذا كانت الصفة تنتهي بحرف ساكن قبله متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن.		
big	bigger than	the biggest
hot	hotter than	the hottest
إذا كانت الصفة تنتهي بحرف w وقبله o أو e نضع er/est دون مضاعفة.		
low	lower than	the lowest
few	fewer than	the fewest
إذا كانت الصفة من مقطعين وتنتهي بحرف y قبله ساكن تقلب إلى ier/iest.		
ugly	uglier than	the ugliest
easy	easier than	the easiest
heavy	heavier than	the heaviest
happy	happier than	the happiest
lucky	luckier than	the luckiest

4 More than one-syllable Adjectives صفات أكثر من مقطع

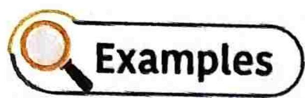
More than one-syllable Adjectives صفات أكثر من مقطع	more/less + adj. + than	the most/the least + adj.
modern	more/less modern than	the most/least modern
careful	more/less careful than	the most/least careful
expensive	more/less expensive than	the most/least expensive
wonderful	more/less wonderful than	the most/least wonderful
exciting	more/less exciting than	the most/least exciting
difficult	more/less difficult than	the most/least difficult
interesting	more/less interesting than	the most/least interesting
beautiful	more/less beautiful than	the most/least beautiful



- Samir is a fast runner.
  - Samir is faster than Ali.
  - Samir is the fastest student.
- This film is interesting.
  - This film is more interesting than the one we watched last night.
  - This film is the most interesting ever.

5 Irregular Comparatives and Superlatives الصفات الشاذة

Positive		Comparative	Superlative
good	جيد/حسن	better than	the best
bad	سيئ/ردئ	worse than	the worst
little	قليل	less than	the least
much/many/a lot of	كثير	more than	the most
far	بعيد	farther/further than	the farthest/furthest



Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Addiction is a bad habit.	Addiction is worse than smoking.	Addiction is the worst habit in anyone's life.

نستخدم صيغة المقارنة comparative مع الحالات الآتية:


لبيان المقارنة الضمنية لشيئين حتى مع عدم ذكر أحد طرفي المقارنة. لأنه معلوم لدى المستمع.

- We need a bigger house.
- He wants a more expensive car.


لوصف كيف يتغير الشيء وبيان الفرق بين شيء قديم وآخر حديث.

- Hala is getting taller.
- Ali is getting older and more intelligent.


تستخدم هذه الصيغة comparative + comparative لبيان الزيادة المطردة في التغيير.

- Cars are getting faster and faster.
- Computers are getting cheaper and cheaper.


نستخدم صفات المقارنة بمعنى (كلما ...) مع التركيبة الآتية:

The + صفة مقارنة + اسم ......, the + صفة مقارنة + اسم

- The more books you read, the more information you get.
- The fewer mistakes you make, the higher marks you get.


يمكن استخدام صيغة المقارنة مع the بدلا من صيغة التفضيل عند مقارنة شيئين من نفس النوع:

the + صفة مقارنة (adj.+ er/more + adj.)

- Of the two cars this is the more/most expensive.
- Noha is the younger/youngest of two girls.



هناك صفات مشتركة في النوعين فتأخذ **er/est or more/the most** ومنها:

clever, common, cruel, friendly, gentle, narrow, pleasant, polite, shallow, simple, stupid, quiet, etc.

- Football is the commonest/most common sport in the world.

Practice



Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I think, the computer is .... invention in the world.
a) the more important b) the most important
c) important d) more important

2 Who is .... person in your country?
a) powerful b) more powerful
c) the most powerful d) much powerful

3 How far is .... railway station from here?
a) the nearest b) the nearer c) the near d) nearer

4 My friend thinks that math is .... than Arabic, but I don't agree.
a) more difficult b) the most difficult c) as difficult d) difficult

5 Mona was not as intelligent as the others, but she was ....
a) more prettier b) pretty c) the prettiest d) most pretty

6 China is .... than any other country in the world.
a) most populated b) more populated
c) populated d) as populated

7 Although we aren't rich, our children go to .... schools in the city.
a) the best b) the most c) as good d) the better

8 The blue whale is .... animal in the world.
a) more heavy b) heavy c) heavier d) the heaviest

9 A falcon has got a .... eyesight than a human.
a) good b) better c) best d) bad

10 Unfortunately, her illness was .... we thought at first.
a) serious b) more serious
c) more serious than d) the most serious

11 Vegetables are .... than meat if you want to go on a diet.
a) healthier b) much healthy c) healthy d) more healthy

12 The slower you drive, the .... you are.
a) safe b) safest c) safer d) most safer

13 Lamia is the .... of the two sisters.
a) young b) as young as c) more young d) younger

14 What's .... important decision you've ever had to make?

a) the more b) the most c) most d) the many

15 Health and happiness are .... than money.

a) important b) more important
c) the least important d) as important

16 We live in a .... house, but my uncle lives in a .... one.

a) big/big b) big/biggest c) big/bigger d) bigger/biggest

17 He's .... boy in the class.

a) the funnier b) funniest c) funnier d) the funniest

18 It's too noisy here. Can we go somewhere ....?

a) more quiet b) much quiet c) quieter d) most quiet

19 The .... I had to queue at the bank, the more impatient I became.

a) longer b) long c) longest d) most long

20 My job is a bit boring sometimes. I'd like to do something .... interesting.

a) much b) most c) less d) more

21 Your homework is .... than last week; you seem lazy. *(Longman)*

a) better b) worse c) good d) bad

22 Adel isn't as old as Hatim. Adel is really .... *(Longman)*

a) younger b) older c) youngest d) old

23 Which is .... in the summer: Cairo or Alexandria? *(Longman)*

a) hotter than b) as hot c) hottest d) hotter

24 What is the .... mountain in Europe? *(Longman)*

a) highest b) high c) highly d) much high

25 This exam seems .... than the previous one; you don't have to worry. *(Longman)*

a) more difficult b) the easiest c) easier d) much difficult

26 One of the given words is an adjective:
"The sun is the star at the center of our solar system."

a) system b) solar c) star d) sun

27 One sentence gives the same meaning as:
"To me, physics is a difficult subject, but English is easy."

a) I find physics more difficult than English.
b) I find physics much easier than English.
c) I find physics as difficult as English.
d) I find English more difficult than physics.

28 One sentence is grammatically correct:

a) What is the world's popular sport?

b) What is the world's most popular sport?

c) What is the world's better sport?

d) What is the world's more popular sport?

29 One sentence doesn't give the same meaning as:

The red dress costs 250 pounds, the blue dress costs 200 pounds.

a) The blue dress costs less than the red dress.

b) The red dress is more expensive than the blue dress.

c) The blue dress is cheaper than the red dress.

d) The blue dress costs more than the red dress.

30 One sentence is grammatically correct:

a) I bought a nice, Italian red dress.

b) The young people should help the old ones.

c) All society should take care of the disabled.

d) I like this food as it tastes nicely.

31 .... are responsible for the country's progress and welfare.

a) The youngest

b) The young people

c) The young

d) The younger

32 There is only .... water in the glass. Please give me some more.

a) many

b) much

c) a few

d) a little

33 Wood is .... than gold.

a) much cheaper

b) a lot expensive

c) a little expensive

d) more cheaper

34 When I learned a lot of grammar and vocabulary, English became ....

a) the easiest

b) much more easier

c) more and more easier

d) easier and easier

35 My grandmother is kinder than anyone in the family. This means that ....

a) Anyone in the family is kinder than my grandmother.

b) My grandmother is as kind as anyone in the family.

c) No one in my family is kinder than my grandmother.

d) My grandmother shows no kindness towards anyone.

Test yourself



Part 1
(Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 I separated the documents into two piles. The verb "separate" is an antonym to the verb "....................".
a) gather b) spread c) scratch d) wake

2 The training has .... the students to deal with any small medical emergency.
a) expired b) accepted c) appeared d) prepared

3 We aren't used to eating .... a lot. We prefer our mother's cooking.
a) inside b) down c) out d) across

4 We wished our son all the best on the .... of his 20th birthday.
a) accident b) assignment c) promotion d) occasion

5 Some people doubt the .... of life at the very bottom of the ocean.
a) exist b) existence c) existential d) exit

6 The aeroplane that crashed in the mountains was carrying over 500 ....
a) passengers b) hosts c) pilots d) hostesses

7 Some .... teachers still think of computers as useless toys.
a) modern b) dated c) updated d) traditional

8 My parents always support me, ... the decision I make they trust me.
a) however b) whatever c) although d) whoever

9 When the children get home, the mother often wants to .... with them on the school news.
a) take away b) wait for c) catch up d) look after

10 It's natural to be nervous before an important .... such as a wedding.
a) accident b) plan c) event d) feast

11 I can't eat fish or shrimps because I'm allergic to ....
a) seafood b) dairy c) poultry d) legumes

12 Make sure that you add the correct .... of water to the food recipe.
a) quality b) quantity c) equality d) equity

13 It's Dad's birthday and we're going out for a meal to ....
a) separate b) commemorate c) celebrate d) relate

14 My grandfather's cakes are good and tasty. The adjective "tasty" is a synonym to the adjective "....................".
a) accepted b) horrible c) delicious d) strange

15 I have read only some .... from the new novel, but I liked it much.
a) addresses b) experiments c) extracts d) headlines

Language

16 I was feeling tired last night, so I went to bed .... than usual.
a) earlier b) much early c) later d) more early

17 Hatim speakes .... his friends.
a) more serious than b) more seriously than
c) as seriously than d) much more serious than

18 Mrs Azza is tall, but Mrs Fareeda is ....
a) more tall b) more taller c) taller d) less taller

19 Yara is .... of the twins.
a) cleverer b) the most clever c) the cleverer d) more clever

20 This book is .... than the last one she wrote. I don't like it.
a) better b) best c) worst d) worse

21 You were a little depressed yesterday, but you look .... today.
a) happier b) more happy c) much happy d) happiest

22 I regret selling my car. It was .... decision I've ever made.
a) the best b) the worst c) as bad d) worse

23 This dress is .... of all you've tried on yet.
a) nicer b) nice c) the nicest d) as nice

24 He got the best marks in the class. This means that he got .... marks than anyone else.
a) good b) better c) best d) most

25 My car is more modern than Ali's car, but Yasser's is ....
a) most modern b) more modern
c) the most modern d) much modern

26 Hany had three big sandwiches. He was .... of all his friends.
a) hungrier b) hungry c) the hungriest d) much hungrier

27 A: Why are you sitting there? B: Frankly, there is .... to do.
a) nothing interest b) interesting nothing
c) interesting something d) nothing interesting

28 The living conditions are .... than they used to be.
a) bad b) worse c) badly d) the worst

29 My neighbour is driving me mad! It seems that the .... it is at night, the .... he plays his music!
a) later – more loud b) late – louder
c) later – louder d) more late – loud

30 Some mushrooms are edible يؤكل while others, which look almost identical, contain .... poisons.
a) deadly b) dead c) the more dead d) deadness

Study  Watch a video

Part 2
Lessons 3 & 4

A Vocabulary

 لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك 

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening Texts

achieve (v) (d)	يحقق	name (n) (v) (d)	اسم/يسمى/يذكر
article (n)	مقال	options (n)	اختيارات
attractive (adj)	جذاب	personally (adv)	شخصياً
beef (n)	لحم بقرى	phrase (n)	عبارة
belief (n)	اعتقاد/إيمان	plate (n)	طبق
chopstick (n)	عصا الأكل الصينية	products (n)	منتجات
complicated (adj)	معقد	questionnaire (n)	استبيان/استطلاع رأى
confused (adj)	مرتبك	relatives (n)	أقارب
consider (v) (ed)	يعتبر	respect (n) (v) (ed)	احترام/يحترم
design (v) (ed) (n)	يصمم/تصميم	rest (n) (v) (ed)	باقٍ/راحة/يرتاح
details (n)	تفاصيل	rude (adj)	وقح/غير مؤدب
distant (adj)	بعيد	rule (n)	قاعدة
foreigner (n)	أجنبى	share (v) (d)	يشارك
general (adj)	عام	simple (adj)	بسيط
introduce (v) (d)	يقدم	tradition (n)	تقليد
light (adj)	خفيف	type (n)	نوع
mean (v)	يعنى/يقصد	vertically (adv)	عمودياً
mind map (n)	خريطة ذهنية		

Workbook Vocabulary

abroad (adv)	بالخارج	prefer (v) (red)	يفضل
climate (n)	مناخ	repeat (v) (ed)	يكرر
comfortable (adj)	مريح	snack (n)	وجبة خفيفة
confuse (v) (d)	يربك	suitable (adj)	مناسب
fried (adj)	محمر/مقلى	windy (adj)	عاصف
include (v) (d)	يشمل/يتضمن/يشتمل		

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Nowadays, it is hard to .... a balance between work and your family life.
a) respect b) design c) rewrite d) achieve

2 The question with too many .... will confuse the young student.
a) articles b) papers c) options d) letters

3 In the .... past, dinosaurs had controlled the earth before they became extinct.
a) near b) distant c) strange d) odd

4 Our head teacher insists that anyone who breaks the school .... will be severely punished.
a) rules b) roles c) beliefs d) phrases

5 In China, it is impolite to put your chopsticks .... into your food bowl.
a) gradually b) carefully c) usefully d) vertically

6 There was an interesting .... on the final match in the paper today.
a) phrase b) belief c) article d) search

7 Some of the maths questions were too .... for my 10-year-old son. He found them difficult.
a) simple b) complicated c) easy d) hidden

8 I have great .... for my teacher. He taught me a lot.
a) disrespect b) rudeness c) power d) respect

9 The new washing machine is very .... for all people to use.
a) simple b) confused c) astonishing d) interested

10 Only thirty-five close friends and .... attended my sister's wedding.
a) enemies b) relatives c) heroes d) opponents

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

achieve a great deal of	يحقق قدرًا كبيرًا من	in my opinion	في رأيي
around the world	حول العالم	make noise	يحدث ضوضاء
at all	أبدًا/مطلقًا	show respect for	يظهر الاحترام لـ
go abroad	يسافر للخارج	sound nice	يبدو لطيفًا
ask about	يسأل عن	start with	يبدأ بـ
happy with	سعيد بـ	write about	يكتب عن
spend on	ينفق على		

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
achieve	يحقق	achievement	إنجاز	achievable	يمكن تحقيقه
attract	يجذب	attraction	جذب	attractive	جذاب
believe	يعتقد	belief believer	اعتقاد مؤمن	believable	يمكن تصديقه
confuse	يربك	confusion	ارتباك	confused confusing	مرتبك مربك
consider	يعتبر	consideration	اعتبار	considerable considered	كبير/فائق معتبر/جدير بالاعتبار
introduce	يقدم	introduction	مقدمة	introductory	تقديمي
produce	ينتج	product production producer	منتج صناعي إنتاج مُنتج	productive	منتج
respect	يحترم	respect	احترام	respected respectable respectful	محترم بسبب إنجازاته محترم من الآخرين محترم لغيره

- The factory **produces** high quality shoes.
- The **products** are exported to the Gulf countries.
- The workers are very **productive**.
- Saudi Arabia is a major **producer** of oil.



Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
belief	اعتقاد	concept/faith	doubt/disbelief	شك
confuse	يربك	distract	comfort/clarify	يريح/يوضح
design	يصمم	plan/devise	ruin	يدمر
distant	بعيد	isolated/remote	close/near	قريب
light	خفيف	lightweight/moderate	heavy/large	ثقيل/كبير
respect	احترام	appreciation/esteem	disrespect/dishonor	عدم احترام
share	يشارك	distribute/participate	gather/combine	يجمع
suitable	مناسب	appropriate/convenient	inconvenient/improper	غير مناسب

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The stars are more distant from the earth than the sun. The synonym of the adjective "distant" is "..................".
   a) remote b) close c) nearly d) wild
2. As a manager of a multi-national company, Mr Ibrahim often .... abroad on business.
   a) arrives b) goes c) comes d) plans
3. The streets in this area are so alike that they can confuse any newcomer. The noun from the verb "confuse" is ....
   a) confuses b) confused c) confusion d) confusedly
4. I have the greatest respect for my parents. The noun "respect" is similar in meaning to ....
   a) belief b) doubt c) denial d) appreciation
5. I have to go to the mechanic's as my car is .... a loud and strange noise.
   a) making b) doing c) reusing d) devising
6. I always confuse Leila with her sister - they're so alike. The antonym of the verb "confuse" is "..................".
   a) distract b) clarify c) reply d) mend
7. My science teacher advises us to learn from bees which are highly .... workers.
   a) produced b) product c) producer d) productive
8. This violent movie isn't suitable for children. The antonym of the adjective "suitable" is "..................".
   a) appropriate b) convenient c) improper d) defective

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات الآتية واستخداماتها

Notes on Vocabulary

	Word	Meaning	Examples
1	**share**	١- يشترك (فى شىء) بدون تقسيم ٢- يشارك (شيئًا/ رأيًا/ شعورًا)	- My brother shares a room with one of his university colleagues. - We shared the pizza between the four of us.
	divide	١- يقسم/ينقسم ٢- يقسم على رقم (فى الرياضيات)	- The children are divided into three teams. - Thirty divided by six is five.
2	**introduce**	يقدم (شخصًا) يقدم (شيئًا جديدًا)	- I introduced my family to all my friends at the school party. - Russia is the first country to introduce a new vaccine for the Novel Coronavirus.
	present	يقدم (شيئًا)	It was the school headmaster who presented the prizes at the party.

3	**include** يشمل/يتضمن (ما بعده يشكل جزءًا مما قبله)	The price of the computer includes 500 pounds worth of free software.
	contain يحتوى على (بداخله)	There were four or five boxes containing toys and books.
	consist of يتكون من (ما بعده يشكل كل ما قبله)	A football team consists of ten players and a goalkeeper.
4	**abroad** خارج البلاد	My father travelled abroad last year.
	aboard = on board على متن السفينة/الطائرة	The check-in desk announced that it's time to get aboard the plane to London.
	broad عريض/واسع	My friend Ali is of medium height, but has very broad shoulders.
5	**climate** (المناخ) فترة طويلة	Egypt is popular with tourists because of its mild climate all the year.
	weather (الطقس) فترة قصيرة	The weather today is hot and humid.
	atmosphere الغلاف الجوى / جو من	- Pollution is really damaging the atmosphere of the Earth. - He lives in an atmosphere of respect and love.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The Grand Egyptian Museum .... a great number of original artworks.
a) consists b) includes
c) encloses d) contains

2 We went around the room, and each of us .... himself on the first day in class.
a) introduced b) presented
c) invited d) showed

3 At the restaurant, the three friends .... the pizza and had a slice each.
a) shared b) divided
c) meant d) produced

4 The .... was fantastic for a picnic, but I have lots of work to do.
a) climate b) feel
c) weather d) ozone

Practice  Practise more

Vocabulary
General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Omar Khairat is .... to be one of the finest musicians of the age.
a) inspected b) included c) considered d) denied

2 Many people lost several close .... in the earthquake which happened in Syria and Turkey.
a) officers b) relatives c) passengers d) reporters

3 My brother doesn't find it easy to .... his problems with other people which causes him much trouble.
a) divide b) build c) design d) share

4 You should wear ...., comfortable shoes if you intend to make this long shopping tour.
a) heavy b) vague c) light d) old-fashioned

5 The reason my sister .... good exam results is because she works hard.
a) introduces b) achieves c) designs d) loses

6 The new programme in our favourite channel is perfectly .... for children of all ages.
a) respectful b) reusable c) achievable d) suitable

7 Your brother's tough behaviour doesn't .... that he dislikes you.
a) mean b) share c) report d) present

8 The old man often has to ask people to .... what they say because he has hearing difficulties.
a) start b) announce c) repeat d) attract

9 We must make the instructions for our system easier as they can .... the customers.
a) support b) confuse c) diffuse d) report

10 Can you give me more .... about these English courses, please?
a) questions b) plots c) chances d) details

11 A .... is a written set of questions which you give to a large number of people in order to collect information.
a) belief b) degree c) request d) questionnaire

12 The factory in our city is able to .... most of the cooking oil we need.

a) produce b) consume c) buy d) present

13 Most villagers in Egypt are keen to preserve local .... as part of our culture.

a) instructions b) costumes c) customs d) divisions

14 You must read the .... of the novel to understand it better.

a) introduce b) introduction c) introductory d) introduced

15 People living near the new factory are not happy .... the decision to close it.

a) at b) in c) over d) with

16 If you travel to isolated areas, make sure you have a good guide. The adjective "isolated" is similar in meaning to the adjective ....

a) distant b) connected c) joined d) shared

17 You must always have the .... that you can do better and succeed in life.

a) belief b) believe c) believable d) believed

18 This camera has many .... features at a very good price, so it is a bestseller.

a) attract b) attraction c) attractive d) attracted

19 Schools must teach children to .... respect towards elderly people.

a) achieve b) sound c) show d) make

20 Every now and then, the factory workers .... noises about raising their wages.

a) make b) do c) reply d) apply

21 There is no doubt that smoking is bad for your health. The noun "doubt" can be the opposite to the noun "..................".

a) denial b) belief c) tiredness d) acceptance

22 My friend Amir spends a lot of his money .... fast food.

a) in b) at c) on d) with

23 I don't like to work in distant places. "Distant" is the opposite in meaning to "..................". *(Longman)*

a) remote b) close c) far d) crowded

24 The teacher .... students into four groups to encourage teamwork. *(Longman)*

a) joined b) separated c) divided d) shared

25 Most developed countries .... a lot of money on scientific research. *(Longman)*

a) depend b) miss c) spend d) save





Important Notes



1

لتساوى الصفات نستخدم:

as + adj. + as	عند تساوى الصفات	Chemistry is as difficult as biology.
not as/so + adj + as	عدم تساوى الصفات	Arabic isn't as/so difficult as biology.

- وتستخدم أيضا الصيغة the same + noun + as للتعبير عن التساوى:

- Her hair is as long as her sister's. = Her hair is the same length as her sister's.
- His father is as old as my father. = His father is the same age as my father.

2

- نستخدم no/never دائمًا فى صيغة المقارنة:

- No river in the world is longer than the Nile.
- I've never seen a faster car than Mercedes.

3

- نستخدم ever فى صيغة التفضيل آخر الجملة.

- Mercedes is the fastest car I've ever seen.

4

- نستخدم less+ adjective + than للمقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين مع استخدام الصفة القصيرة.

- Fiat is less cheap than Toyota.

5

نستخدم most بدون the بمعنى very قبل صفة أو حال

- We attended a most interesting lecture.
- This is the question that is asked most often.

6

- نستخدم (of) بعد صيغة التفضيل إذا تبعها أشخاص أو فترة زمنية.

- He is the cleverest of his friends in electronics.

7

- نستخدم (in) بعد صيغة التفضيل إذا تبعها مكان.

- Cairo is the biggest city in Egypt.

- لاحظ استخدام (nearest) مع (to) واستخدام (farthest) مع (from):

- Pluto is the farthest planet from the sun.
- Benha is the nearest city to Cairo.

- يمكن استـخدام كلمات مثل much/a lot/a bit/a little/far/rather/even/slightly قبل صفات المقارنة سـواء er .... أو more لبيان درجة ومقدار المقارنة.

لبيان أن الفارق كبير بين طرفى المقارنة far/much/a lot

Gold is much/a lot/far more expensive than salt.

لبيان أن الفارق ليس كبيرًا بين طرفى المقارنة slightly/a bit/a little/rather/even

Travelling by train is a little/a bit cheaper than travelling by car.

الفرق بين later/latter/last

last (الأخير)	latter (الثانى/الأخير)	later (بعد ذلك/لاحقًا)
"آخر" شـىء أو شـخص، ولا شـىء ولا شـخص بعده/أقرب شـىء للوقت الحاضر وتُستخدم كصفة/ اسم. ▸ The next meeting will be held in the last week in June. ▸ The guard was the last person to see his boss alive.	نستخدم latter عندما نشير إلى الثانى مـن شـخصين أو شـيئين يتـم ذكرهما وتُستخدم هنا كإسم. ▸ I have fans on both Facebook and YouTube, and I have more fans on the latter. الأخيـر يعنى الثانى من الشـيئين اللذين ذكرتهما للتو وهو اليوتيوب. - يمكن أن تستخدم كصفة ولكن يجب أن يكون بعدها اسم ▸ The structure is explained in the latter part.	تشـير كلمـة "later" إلـى وقـت فـى المستقبل. ▸ Right now, I'm studying my lesson, and I'll visit you later. (in the future from this moment) ودائمًا عندما نقول مع السـلامة لشخص "مع المقابلة مرة أخرى فى وقت لاحق" See you later! يمكن أن تسـتخدم كصفة ولكن يجب أن يكون بعدها اسم ▸ The meeting was postponed to a later date.

الفرق بين elder/older

older	elder
تستخدم older لتشير إلى الأكبر سنا أو الأقدم زمنا ويمكن أن يتبعها than أو تفهم المقارنة ضمنيا بدون than. ▸ We start understanding many things as we grow/get older. ▸ My parents are older than your parents. ▸ The older version of the software had many useful features than this one.	عندمـا يتعيـن علينا مقارنـة أقدمية شـخصين فيما يتعلـق بالعمر وخاصة بين أفراد العائلة نستخدم elder ولا يأتى بعدها than. ▸ My elder sister couldn't go to school today because she missed the bus. ▸ Oh, so you are 3 years elder to me! لاحظ أن كلمة elderly صفة بمعنى كبار السـن من منتصف الخمسينيات وأكثر. ▸ Nowadays, elderly people are healthier and more active than youngsters.

Summary

Degrees of Adjectives درجات الصفات

Positive الصفة العادية | Comparative المقارنة بين طرفين | Superlative صيغة التفضيل (للمقارنة بين فرد ومجموعة)

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
One-syllable Adjectives صفات المقطع الواحد	adj. + er + than	the + adj. + est
tall	taller than	the tallest
old	older than	the oldest
إذا كانت الصفة تنتهي بحرف e نضع r/st.		
large	larger than	the largest
wide	wider than	the widest
إذا كانت الصفة تنتهي بحرف ساكن قبله متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن.		
big	bigger than	the biggest
hot	hotter than	the hottest
إذا كانت الصفة تنتهي بحرف w وقبله o أو e نضع er/est دون مضاعفة.		
low	lower than	the lowest
few	fewer than	the fewest
إذا كانت الصفة من مقطعين وتنتهي بحرف y قبله ساكن تقلب إلى ier/iest.		
ugly	uglier than	the ugliest
easy	easier than	the easiest
More than one-syllable Adjectives صفات أكثر من مقطع	more/less + adj. + than	the most/the least + adj.
modern	more/less modern than	the most/least modern
careful	more/less careful than	the most/least careful

Irregular Comparatives and Superlatives الصفات الشاذة

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
good	better than	the best
bad	worse than	the worst
little	less than	the least
much/many/alot of	more than	the most
far	farther/further than	the farthest/furthest



Language
General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The Amazon isn't .... the Nile. The Nile is the longest river in the world.
a) longer b) long c) as long as d) so long

2 That's the least interesting book I've .... read.
a) ever b) never c) yet d) hardly

3 It is .... more expensive to live in London than any other city in Britain.
a) very b) few c) little d) far

4 The second exercise is .... more difficult than the first.
a) rather b) so c) as d) many

5 I like to travel light. The .... luggage, the better.
a) little b) fewer c) more d) less

6 The film we saw last night was .... interesting of all I have seen this month.
a) more b) the least c) less d) much

7 She is not .... as her mother.
a) more beautiful b) most beautiful c) as beautiful d) beautifully

8 I'm very clever at cooking, but my mother is .... cook I've ever known.
a) cleverer b) clever c) the cleverest d) less clever

9 Sara is the same .... as Mona.
a) age b) old c) young d) older

10 If I had to choose between Gamal and Hany, Gamal is ....
a) funny b) funniest c) funnier d) the funny

11 After three weeks of studying, I began to understand English ....
a) good b) the farthest c) the better d) much better

12 Who is the .... person you have ever spoken to?
a) most intelligent b) more intelligent
c) intelligent d) as intelligent

13 The .... you study for these exams, the .... you will do.
a) hard/better b) harder/better c) more/good d) much/better

14 Osama tells his doctor that he has been feeling .... tired lately.
a) the most b) more and more c) such a d) many

15 The lecture halls at my university are the same .... those at State University.
a) as b) from c) with d) at

16 Badr studies hard, but his brother studies even .... !

a) hardly b) hardness c) harder d) the hardest

17 He is .... of the two brothers.

a) cleverer b) the cleverer c) clever d) the clever

18 I like living in the country. It's .... peaceful than living in a town.

a) fewer b) most c) much d) more

19 The .... chapter is very interesting.

a) late b) last c) latest d) latter

20 Of the two sisters, Magda is the ....

a) old b) most old c) elder d) elderly

21 The Pharaohs' Golden Parade is .... majestic than any other. People enjoyed watching it all over the world.

a) far more b) lot c) exactly as d) less

22 The Egyptian Museum is one of the .... places to visit in Cairo. Thousands of tourists like to visit it.

a) more popular b) less popular

c) least popular d) most popular

23 What is .... planet from the sun?

a) the nearest b) the farthest c) farthest d) nearest

24 Living in a big city isn't .... living in a small village.

a) so cheap b) as cheap c) so cheap as d) cheaper

25 Who is the .... of the two runners?

a) more faster b) much fast c) fastest d) faster

26 Pick out one adjective in the following sentence:

"I always see my friendly neighbours running fast in the club near our village."

a) neighbours b) friendly c) village d) fast

27 One of the following sentences gives the same meaning as:

"I live 2 km from my mother. My sister lives 1 km from her."

a) I live nearer to my mother than my sister.

b) I live further from my mother than my sister.

c) My sister lives farther from my mother than me.

d) My sister and I are the same distance from my mother.

28 **One of the following sentences is grammatically correct:**

a) My brother is as tall as my father.

b) My father is tallest than my brother.

c) My father and my brother are the same high.

d) My brother is more shorter than my father.

29 **One sentence is grammatically incorrect:**

a) The poor people always wish to live as comfortable as the rich people.

b) The poor always wish to live as comfortable as the rich.

c) Poor people always wish to live as comfortable as rich people.

d) The poor always wish to live as comfortable as rich people.

30 **One sentence doesn't give the same meaning as:**
"No person is more intelligent than Bassem in my class."

a) Bassam is the most intelligent person in my class.

b) Bassam is more intelligent than any person in my class.

c) Bassam is as intelligent as every person in my class.

d) No person is as intelligent as Bassem in my class.

31 **Yesterday's match was .... than last week's match.**

a) much more boring
b) the most boring
c) little boring
d) much boring

32 **The children were too tired to walk any ....**

a) far
b) furthest
c) further
d) farthest

33 **Watching football attracts me more than any other programmes. This means ....**

a) For me, no other programme is more interesting than watching football.

b) For me, watching football is less interesting than any other programmes.

c) For me, watching football is as interesting as any other programmes.

d) For me, watching football is the least interesting thing.

34 .... **Mohamed Salah is! All people respect him.**

a) How intelligent footballer

b) What an intelligent footballer

c) What intelligent a footballer

d) What an intelligent a footballer

35 **Ali can carry heavy weights, and so can Osama. This means that ....**

a) Ali is stronger than Osama.

b) Osama is stronger than Ali.

c) Ali and Osama have the same strength.

d) Ali is strong, but Osama is weak.

Test yourself



Part 2
(Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 In India, people don't eat .... as they honour cows as special animals.
a) poultry b) beef c) seafood d) nuts

2 The movie is not .... for children as it has violent scenes.
a) available b) suitable c) reputable d) avoidable

3 Some kind of flowers such as sunflower can grow in hot or humid ....
a) soil b) atmosphere c) climate d) depth

4 Mohamed Salah is .... to be one of the best players in the world.
a) considered b) regulated c) arranged d) moved

5 I don't share your belief about the role of women. The noun "belief" can be the opposite to the noun "..................".
a) concept b) theory c) doubt d) faith

6 We should .... what our ancestors أسلافنا have written and said.
a) reflect b) benefit c) affect d) respect

7 This section of the hypermarket sells meat .... like hot dogs and burgers.
a) productions b) products c) articles d) extracts

8 You can avoid home accidents by following some simple .... of safety which are easy for children.
a) rails b) rolls c) roles d) rules

9 The price of the room at this hotel doesn't .... lunch.
a) consist b) contain c) include d) enclose

10 The rich man made great efforts to be a .... member of society.
a) disrespected b) respect c) respecting d) respected

11 Scientists .... new ideas and inventions to make our life better.
a) reject b) introduce c) achieve d) allow

12 It can be difficult to .... a room with a noisy or naughty companion.
a) prefer b) divide c) share d) leave

13 Experts warn us of a great change in the world's .... due to global warming.
a) climate b) population c) economy d) ozone

14 The .... of Sham El Nessim dates back to the time of the pharaohs.
a) direction b) tradition c) fault d) search

15 Most companies spend much money .... marketing and advertising.
a) of b) in c) about d) on

Language

16 Do you think Aswan is .... city in Egypt?

a) the sunnier b) the sunniest c) the sunny d) more sunnier

17 Have you visited the old castle? It was the .... one we visited during our holidays.

a) oldest b) eldest c) elder d) older

18 Maher isn't .... friendly as Hussein.

a) more b) so c) far d) much

19 Water is the .... expensive, but the most needful of all liquids.

a) most b) least c) less d) more

20 The shorter the queue, the .... the service.

a) fast b) fastest c) faster d) less fast

21 Most other metals aren't .... as gold.

a) precious b) the most precious c) more precious d) as precious

22 In a basketball match, there are .... players than in a football match.

a) fewer b) fewest c) less d) few

23 My sister and my brother are not as happy as me. This means that I'm ....

a) the happier of all b) happier than them
c) happiest d) happy

24 He is already .... his father.

a) so tall than b) as tall than c) so tall as d) as tall as

25 My brother is two years .... than me. He is 50, but I'm 48.

a) elder b) older c) better d) worse

26 Manal has .... money than her friend.

a) fewer b) much c) much more d) little

27 Mohamed Salah is one of the world's .... players in the world.

a) good b) best c) the better d) the best

28 Ali speaks French .... than English. Few people understand him when he speaks it.

a) better b) good c) worse d) best

29 Nada is 160 centimeters tall, and so is Sara. This means that ....

a) Nada is the same height as Sara.
b) Nada is younger than Sara.
c) Nada and Sara are the same tall.
d) Sara is taller than Nada.

30 It took us .... time to get here than usual.

a) a lot b) little c) less d) long

Study | Watch a video | Part 3 Lessons 5 & 6

Act I, Scenes i-ii

Vocabulary

adult (n)	شخص بالغ	handwriting (n)	خط اليد
anger (n)	غضب	hide (v)	يخفى
beat (v)	يتغلب	income (n)	إيراد/دخل
believe (v) (d)	يصدق	inheritance (n)	ميراث
bring (v)	يحضر	loyalty (n)	انتماء/إخلاص
conversation (n)	محادثة	pocket (n)	جيب
dead (adj)	ميت	power (n)	قوة/سلطة
deceive (v) (d)	يخدع	receive (v) (d)	يتسلم
decision (n)	قرار	respect (v) (ed)	يحترم
deserve (v) (d)	يستحق	succeed (v) (ed)	ينجح
exit (v) (ed)	يخرج	test (n)	يختبر
fail (v) (ed)	يفشل	throw (v)	يرمى
fool (n)	أحمق	trust (n)	ثقة
forgive (v)	يغفر	truth (n)	حقيقة/صدق

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

feel better	يشعر بتحسن	ill health	صحة معتلة
have a plan	لديه خطة	My heart is broken	قلبى محطم (تعبير عن شدة الحزن)
angry with	غاضب من	loyalty to	إخلاص لـ
cruel to	قاسٍ مع	send ... away	يرسل ... بعيدًا
lie about	يكذب بشأن	stay with	يقيم مع

Practice



King Lear Exercises Act I Scenes i-ii

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 It is a fact that some people such as criminals express their .... through violence.
a) triumph b) anger c) heritage d) inspection

2 My elder brother gets very angry when I .... him at chess.
a) beat b) win c) practise d) rehearse

3 My father punished my younger brother for trying to .... him about his exam results.
a) inform b) tell c) award d) deceive

4 A good business person can quickly make an important ....
a) consumption b) sale c) decision d) affection

5 After standing five hours on his feet, the poor worker .... a break.
a) reserves b) deserves c) observes d) empowers

6 Essam is a nice boy, so his teacher usually .... his occasional bad behaviour.
a) forgives b) awards c) shows d) breaks

7 Tourism is a major source of .... for people in Hurghada and South Sinai.
a) pension b) income c) pride d) loyalty

8 Samy began his own business with the .... he got from his grandfather.
a) degree b) certificate c) inheritance d) penalty

9 In the past, all important people had to swear their .... to the Queen of England.
a) revenge b) disobedience c) treason d) loyalty

10 In Japan, after the emperor dies, the .... passes to his eldest son.
a) business b) power c) army d) parliament

11 The King decided to send his former minister .... as he was very angry with him.
a) at b) in c) to d) away

12 I believe that the young man won't .... in his business as he doesn't have any previous experience.
a) succeed b) pass c) agree d) argue

13 I believe that my wife will do the right thing because I .... her.
a) betray b) accept c) trust d) trick

14 We finally learned the shocking .... about our company's great losses.
a) truce b) truth c) fight d) dispute

15 I would never .... to my parents about the exam results.
a) lay b) imagine c) lie d) apply



للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.



Questionnaire Writing

- **You're going to write a questionnaire to find out what young people like to eat and where they prefer to eat in your country:**

Tips for preparing the questionnaire:

- Discuss things to ask about and make the mind map.
- Design your own questionnaire.
- Think about how long it will take to ask all your questions.
- Make your questionnaire look attractive.

Model Questionnaire

Read the questions and Tick (✓) your answer:

1. Where do you like to eat your food?

◯ At home. ◯ At restaurants.

2. What kind of food do you like?

◯ Fast food. ◯ Home cooked food.

3. What do you care more about your food?

◯ Taste. ◯ Ingredients.

4. What kind of snacks do you like?

◯ Fruit and vegetables. ◯ home cooked food
◯ Sandwiches and juice.

5. Do you care about the natural ingredients of the food you eat?

◯ Yes. ◯ No.

6. Do you like canned food?

◯ Yes. ◯ No.

7. How much fresh juice do you have?

◯ Much. ◯ A little.
◯ None.

8. Do you care about healthy or unhealthy food?

◯ Yes. ◯ No.

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

You don't need to be an adult to help others. In November 2009, when she was just thirteen years old, Nahla was looking for the sports section in the newspaper. A story about a girl by the name of Karima El-Said caught her eye. Karima El- Said, who lived in Siwa, had been forced to work long days in a carpet factory.

She had worked fourteen hours a day, seven days a week from the time she was six years old until she escaped. Her job was to tie small knots(1) in the carpets.

The article shocked Nahla. Karima El-Said was the same age as Nahla. Nahla just couldn't imagine what it was like to work all day seven days a week and never have a chance to attend school or play. Nahla tore the article out of the newspaper and put it in her rucksack(2) . But she couldn't get Karima El-Said out of her mind. Riding the bus to school, she took the article out of her rucksack and read it again and again. After school, she went to the local library and got as much information as she could find on child labour and exploitation(3) . The next morning, with the teacher's permission, she told the class about Karima and about the thousands of children who were forced to work in plantations, mines(4) , and factories.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 One of the following isn't true.
a) Nahla is about 27 years now.
b) Nahla never had a chance to attend school.
c) Nahla and Karima are the same age.
d) Nahla was sorry for Karima.

2 This story shows that you .... to help others.
a) don't have to be old
b) must be old
c) need to be courageous
d) have to be a student

3 The best title to the passage is "................".
a) How to help others
b) Children are more useful than adults
c) Children in plantations
d) Child employment and manipulation

4 The underlined word "plantations" means ....
a) shops
b) schools
c) farms
d) markets

5 Nahla knew about Karima El-Said's story when she ....
a) went to school
b) read the newspaper
c) met her teacher
d) met her personally

(1) عقدة (2) حقيبة الظهر (3) تسخير/استغلال (4) مناجم

6 What was shocking about Karima's story?
a) She worked for long hours and had no education.
b) She worked in carpets.
c) She was from Siwa.
d) She had the ability to work for long hours.

7 Nahla cut the article out of the page to ....
a) stick it on the wall
b) take part in a competition
c) read it several times
d) put it in the library

8 Karima couldn't bear her conditions and ....
a) decided to open her factory
b) escaped from the factory
c) committed a suicide
d) went to school

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 In the past, people only ate food made of local and available ingredients. Now, they can eat food made in many parts of the world due to the growth of international trade.

a) فـى الماضـى كان الناس يأكلون فقط الطعام المصنوع من المكونات المحلية والمتاحة، والآن يمكنهم تناول الطعام المصنوع فى أجزاء كثيرة من العالم بسبب نمو التجارة الدولية.
b) فى الماضى كان الناس يأكلون أحيانا الطعام المصنوع من المكونات المحلية والمتاحة، والآن يمكنهم تناول الطعام المصنوع فى أجزاء كثيرة من العالم بسبب نمو التجارة الدولية.
c) فـى الماضـى كان الناس يأكلون فقط الطعام المصنوع من المكونات المحلية والمتاحة، والآن يمكنهم تناول الطعام المصنوع فى أجزاء كثيرة من العالم بسبب نمو الصناعة الدولية.
d) فـى الماضـى كان الناس يأكلون فقط الطعام المصنوع من المكونـات المحلية والثرية، والآن يمكنهم تناول الطعام المصنوع فى أجزاء كثيرة من العالم بسبب نمو التجارة الدولية.

2 Most governments impose strict laws to assure food safety for their peoples. Yet, we should all be responsible for obeying these laws precisely everywhere.

a) تفـرض معظم الحكومات قوانين صارمة لضمان سـلامة الغذاء لشـعوبها. ومع ذلك، يجب أن نكون جميعـًا مسئولين عن إطاعة هذه القوانين بدقة فى كل مكان.
b) تفـرض معظـم الحكومات قوانين صارمة لضمان سـلام الغذاء لشـعوبها. ومع ذلك، يجب أن نكون جميعـًا مسئولين عن إطاعة هذه القوانين برقة فى كل مكان.
c) تفـرض معظـم الحكومات قوانين صارمـة لضمان أمانة الغذاء لشـعوبها. ومع ذلك، يجب أن نكون جميعـًا مسئولين عن إطاعة هذه القوانين بكفاءة فى كل مكان.
d) تقوض معظم الحكومات قوانين صارمة لضمان سـلامة الغذاء لشـعوبها. ومع ذلك، يجب أن نكون جميعـًا مسئولين عن تمييز هذه القوانين بدقة فى كل مكان.

3 Eating habits differ from one country to another. Some people are characterised by their healthy food whereas others prefer the tasty food whether it is healthy or not.

a) تختلف تطلعات الأكل من بلد إلى آخر و يتميز بعض الناس بطعامهم الصحى بينما يفضل البعض الآخر الطعام الشهى سواء كان صحيًا أم لا.
b) تختلف عادات الأكل من بلد إلى آخر و يتوسع بعض الناس بطعامهم الصحى بينما يفضل البعض الآخر الطعام الشهى رغم كونه صحيًا أم لا.
c) تختلف عادات الأكل من بلد إلى آخر و يتميز بعض الناس بطعامهم المغذى بينما يفضل البعض الآخر الطعام الشهى بينما كان صحيًا أم لا.
d) تختلف عادات الأكل من بلد إلى آخر و يتميز بعض الناس بطعامهم الصحى بينما يفضل البعض الآخر الطعام الشهى سواء كان صحيًا أم لا.

4 Food shortage is one of the most serious problems which the world faces nowadays. Experts say that it is due to misdistribution of food and not lack of it.

a) يُعد نقص الغذاء من أخطر المشاكل التى يواجهها العالم فى الوقت الحاضر ويقول الخبراء إن ذلك يرجع إلى التوزيع السليم للغذاء وليس النقص فيه.

b) يُعد نقص الغذاء من أخطر المشاكل التى يواجهها العالم فى الوقت الحاضر ويقول الخبراء إن ذلك يرجع إلى التوزيع الخاطئ للغذاء وليس النقص فيه.

c) يُعد نقص الغذاء من أسهل المشاكل التى يواجهها العالم فى الوقت الحاضر ويقول الخبراء إن ذلك يرجع إلى التوزيع المتوازن للغذاء وليس النقص فيه.

d) يُعد نقص الغذاء من أخطر المشاكل التى يواجهها العالم فى الوقت الحاضر ويقول الخبراء إن ذلك ينتج إلى التوزيع الخاطئ للغذاء وليس النقص فيه.

5 Achieving good economic developments requires good planning and caring about scientific progress. Hence, governments should invest in scientific institutions.

a) يتطلب تحقيق التنمية الاقتصادية الجيدة التخطيط الجيد والاهتمام بالتقدم العلمى. ومن ثم، يجب على الحكومات الاستثمار فى المؤسسات العلمية.

b) يتطلب تحقيق التنمية الاقتصادية الجيدة التخطيط الجيد والاهتمام بالتقدم العلمى. ومن ثم، يجب على الحكومات التوسع فى المؤسسات العلمية.

c) يتطلب تحقيق التنمية الاقتصادية الجيدة التخطيط الجيد والاهتمام بالتقدم العلمى. ومن ثم، يجب على الحكومات تجديد الشركات العلمية.

d) يتطلب تحقيق التنمية الاقتصادية الجيدة التخطيط الجيد والاهتمام بالتقدم العلمى. ومن ثم، يجب على الحكومات السيطرة على المؤسسات العلمية.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

6 نأمل أن تسهم جهود المنظمات الخيرية فى مصر، مثل: جمعية رسالة وبنك الطعام المصرى، فى تخفيف معاناة الناس والقضاء على الفقر فى كل مكان.

a) We hope that the efforts of charitable organizations in Egypt, such as Resala Society and the Egyptian Food Bank, will contribute to relieve people's suffering and eliminate poverty everywhere.

b) We hope that the efforts of charitable organizations in Egypt, such as Resala Society and the Egyptian Food Bank, will contribute to relieving people's suffering and enhancing poverty everywhere.

c) We hope that the efforts of charitable organizations in Egypt, such as Resala Society and the Egyptian Food Bank, will contribute to relieving people's suffering and eliminating poverty everywhere.

d) We hope that the efforts of charitable organizations in Egypt, such as Resala Society and the Egyptian Food Bank, will make up to relieving people's suffering and eliminating poverty everywhere.

7 لم تمنع صعوبات التعلم بعض المشاهير من النجاح فى حياتهم واستثمار قدراتهم ومواهبهم، بل استطاعوا الوصول للنجاح بالمثابرة والعمل الجاد

a) Learning difficulties did not prevent some celebrities from succeeding in their lives and investing their abilities and talents. Rather, they were able to reach success through preservation and hard work.

b) Learning difficulties did not prevent some celebrities from passing their lives and investing their abilities and talents. Rather, they were able to reach success through perseverance and hard work.

c) Learning difficulties did not prevent some celebrities from succeeding in their lives and investing their abilities and talents. Rather, they were able to arrive success through perseverance and hard work.

d) Learning difficulties did not prevent some celebrities from succeeding in their lives and investing their abilities and talents. Rather, they were able to reach success through perseverance and hard work.

8 يحتفل المصريون مثل باقى شعوب العالم بالأعياد المختلفة التى يتميز كل منها بنوع معين من الطعام، فاللحوم تؤكل فى عيد الأضحى، والحلويات المختلفة تؤكل فى عيد الفطر وعيد الميلاد المجيد.

a) Unlike the rest of the world's peoples, Egyptians celebrate various holidays, each of which is dominated by a specific type of food. Meat is eaten on Eid al-Adha, and various sweets are eaten on Eid al-Fitr and Christmas.
b) Like the rest of the world's peoples, Egyptians celebrate various holidays, each of which is characterized by a private type of food. Meat is eaten on Eid al-Adha, and various sweets are eaten on Eid al-Fitr and Christmas.
c) Like the rest of the world's peoples, Egyptians celebrate various holidays, each of which is characterized by a specific type of food. Meat is eaten on Eid al-Adha, and various sweets are eaten on Eid al-Fitr and Christmas.
d) Unlike the rest of the world's peoples, Egyptians celebrate various holidays, each of which is characterized by a general type of food. Meat is eaten on Eid al-Adha, and various sweets are eaten on Eid al-Fitr and Christmas.

9 رغم معارضة البعض لاستخدام الحيوانات فى التجارب يعتقد الكثيرون أنه لو لم نستخدمها لما كان لدينا الكثير من الأدوية التى تنقذ حياة الناس.

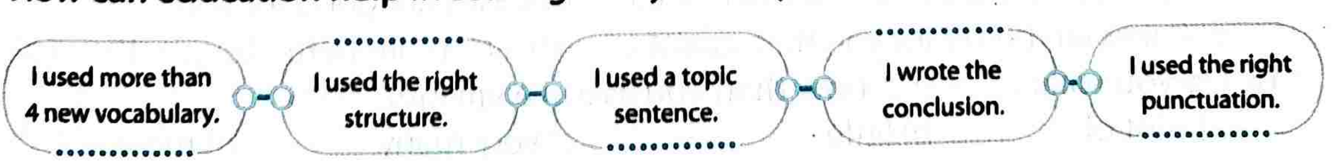
a) Although some people oppose the use of animals in experiments, many people believe that if we do not use them, we will not have so many medicines that save people's lives.
b) Although some people oppose the use of animals in experiments, many people believe that if we had not used them, we would not have had so many medicines that save people's lives.
c) Although some people oppose the use of animals in experiments, many people believe that if we did not use them, we would not have so many medicines that save people's lives.
d) Although some people oppose the use of animals in experiences, many people believe that if we had not used them, we would not have had so many medicines that save people's lives.

10 كلما زاد رضاء الموظفين عن وظائفهم زادت إنتاجيتهم لذا يجب توفير بيئة العمل المناسبة لهم.

a) The most employees are satisfied with their jobs, the more productive they are, so a suitable work environment must be provided for them.
b) The most employees are satisfied with their jobs, the most productive they are, so a suitable work environment must be provided for them.
c) The less employees are satisfied with their jobs, the most productive they are, so a suitable work environment must be provided for them.
d) The more employees are satisfied with their jobs, the more productive they are, so a suitable work environment must be provided for them.

3 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

How can education help in solving many social problems in Egypt?





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My elder brother often gets .... with his friends after work on Thursday.
a) together b) on c) over d) through

2 These clothes aren't suitable for this cold weather. The synonym of the word "suitable" is "..................".
a) appropriate b) inconvenient c) improper d) similar

3 An estimated 200 people had attended the food .... in the local park.
a) gallery b) conference c) festival d) seminar

4 The surgeon asked the two nurses to .... the patient for surgery.
a) appear b) disappear c) prepare d) repair

5 The decision to close the plastic factory should .... as a warning to factories that pollute the environment.
a) cook b) serve c) mend d) show

6 The hotel manager ordered the staff to .... the big hall ready for the conference in two days' time.
a) bring b) do c) get d) design

7 The hotel was surprisingly cheap. I expected it to be ....
a) more expensive.
b) much expensive.
c) cheaper.
d) cheap.

8 The younger you are, the .... freedom you have.
a) most b) best c) more d) much

9 Box A is bigger than box B, box C is bigger than box A. This means ....
a) Box B is the smallest box.
b) Box A is the biggest box.
c) Box C is the smallest box
d) Box B is the biggest box.

10 Robert is never on time. He always arrives .... than the rest of us.
a) the latest b) later c) last d) latter

11 I thought this test would be difficult, but it's .... test I've ever taken.
a) much easier b) easier c) the easiest d) easy

12 Out of all the films I've seen, this one is ....
a) sadly b) a sad c) sadder d) the saddest

13 Your answer is not complete, but it's .... than the other students' answers.
a) more correctly b) more correct c) the most correct d) much correct

14 Carrots are good for you, cakes are bad for you. This means ....
a) Carrots are worse for you than cakes.
b) Cakes are good for you.
c) Cakes are better for you than carrots.
d) Carrots are better for you than cakes.

15 Do you walk .... now than you live in a village?
a) a lot of b) little c) very many d) more

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Some people argue that the pressures on international sportsmen and sportswomen kill the essence[1] of sport—the pursuit[2] of personal excellence. Children kick a football around for fun. When they get older and play for local school teams, they become competitive but they still enjoy playing. However, the individual representing his/her country cannot afford to think about enjoying him/herself; he has to think only about winning. He/She is responsible for an entire nation's hope, dreams and reputation[3] .

A good example is the football World Cup. Football is the world's most important sport. It is even more important now that the United States is seriously taking it up. Winning the World Cup is perhaps the summit of international sporting success. Mention "Argentina or Brazil" to someone and chances are that he/she'll think of football. In a sense, winning the World Cup "puts Argentina or Brazil on the map."

Sports fans and supporters get quite irrational[4] about the World Cup. People in England felt that their country was somehow important after they won in 1966. Years ago thousands of Scots sold their cars, and even their houses, and spent all their money travelling to Argentina, where the finals were played.

So, am I arguing that international competition kills the idea of sport? Certainly not! Do the Argentineans really believe that because eleven of their men proved the most skillful at football, their nation is in every way better than all others? Not really. But it's nice to know that you won, and that in one way at least your country is best.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16 According to the passage, the United States ....

a) has begun to give much attention to football

b) is fond of playing football

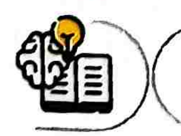
c) has won the football World Cup

d) is getting sick of football

17 In the second paragraph, the underlined word "summit" means the ....

a) highest point b) mountain top

c) award d) summary



(1) جوهر/خلاصة (2) مواصلة/تعقب (3) شهرة/سمعة (4) غير منطقي

18 **According to the passage, if a sportsman only thinks about winning, he will ....**

a) fail to succeed b) be successful c) lose enjoyment d) be irrational

19 **What is the author's attitude towards international games?**

a) Nations that meet on a football field are unlikely to meet on a battlefield.
b) Nations that win the football World Cup are regarded as best in all aspects.
c) Nations that win in international games prove best on the sports field at least.
d) Nations that give much attention to international competitions are world famous in many ways.

20 **Winning an international game can make the country ....**

a) strong b) weak
c) famous d) occupied

21 **In order to attend the final matches, the Scots ....**

a) bought tickets online b) sold their properties
c) rent their watches d) bought TVs

22 **According to the passage, people think that their country is important when ....**

a) it comes first in a scientific competition
b) they support it in the stadium
c) they take the World Cup
d) they win a game

23 **The best title to the passage is ....**

a) The Importance of Football b) The History of Football
c) How People Think of Sport d) Sports and Argentina

24 **Choose the correct English translation:**

- البطالة مشكلة خطيرة جدًا، فهى لا تؤثر فقط على الأفراد، ولكن أيضًا على نمو البلد؛ حيث إن لها تأثيرًا سلبيًا على النمو الاقتصادى والاجتماعى، وتساعد على انتشار الجريمة فى المجتمع.

a) Unemployment is a very serious problem, as it affects not only individuals, but also the growth of the country. It has a negative impact on economic and social growth, and helps spread crime in society.
b) Unemployment is a very serious problem, as it reflects not only individuals, but also the growth of the country. It has a negative impact on cultural and social growth, and helps spread crime in society.
c) Unemployment is a very serious problem, as it affects not only individuals, but also the growth of the country. It has a positive impact on economic and social growth, and helps publish crime in society.
d) Unemployment is a very serious problem, as it affects not only members, but also the growth of the country. It has a negative crash on economic and social growth, and helps spread crime in society.

25 Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- One must carefully weigh the positives and the negatives before engaging excessively in social media. If used in the correct way, social media can be a boon for mankind.

a) يجب على المرء أن يقيس بعناية الإيجابيات والسلبيات قبل الانخراط بشكل عادى فى وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى. إذا تم استخدامها بالطريقة الصحيحة، يمكن أن تكون وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى نعمة للبشرية.

b) يجب على المرء أن يتناول بعناية الإيجابيات والسلبيات قبل الانخراط بشكل مفرط فى وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى. إذا تم استخدامها بالطريقة الصحيحة، يمكن أن تكون وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى نقمة للبشرية.

c) يجب على المرء أن يوازن بعناية الإيجابيات والسلبيات قبل الانخراط بشكل مفرط فى وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى. إذا تم استخدامها بالطريقة الصحيحة، يمكن أن تكون وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى نعمة للبشرية.

d) يجب على المرء أن يعتبر بعناية الإيجابيات والسلبيات قبل الابتعاد بشكل مفرط عن وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى. إذا تم استخدامها بالطريقة الصحيحة، يمكن أن تكون وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى تقدم للبشرية.

26 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Sports and their good impact on man's health."

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين
الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 304

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Units 1& 2 Al-Adwaa Test

40

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The .... on the player's knee was carried out by a team of surgeons at a German hospital.
a) operation b) process c) research d) inspection

2 Several villages along the .... of the river were affected by the floods.
a) certificate b) line c) degree d) course

3 Doctors say that our .... system works better if we eat healthy food.
a) emergency b) immune c) athletic d) injured

4 The machine presses the plastic into sheets. The synonym of the verb "press" is "..................".
a) iron b) release c) squeeze d) pull

5 We all need to learn to accept people who have different .... from ours.
a) releases b) treaties c) riches d) beliefs

6 My parents always tell us that students usually .... great respect for their teachers when they were at school.
a) showed b) gained c) won d) demanded

7 They .... see us talking or they'll suspect something.
a) had to b) mustn't c) didn't have to d) can

8 **A:** Can we meet on Thursday morning? **B:** Sorry, no. I .... go to the dentist at 11.00.
a) had to b) mustn't c) have to d) shouldn't

9 He's got a lung problem and he .... go to hospital for treatment.
a) has to b) doesn't have to c) mustn't d) have to

10 Ali .... his car to the market yesterday as it was very near.
a) must have driven b) had to drive
c) has to drive d) needn't have driven

11 **A:** Ola lost her passport. .... get a new one?
B: No, she didn't. She found it in her purse.
a) Did she have to b) Will she have to
c) Does she have to d) Is she having to

12 Ayman is a successful sportsman, but his brother is .... than him.

a) as successful
b) most successful
c) more successful
d) more successfully

13 My sister has a soft voice, but my teacher's voice is .... than hers.

a) so soft
b) more soft
c) softest
d) softer

14 I always arrive at school a little later .... my schoolmates.

a) as
b) than
c) from
d) to

15 I am afraid his situation is going from bad to ....

a) worse
b) bad
c) worst
d) badly

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

If we look around us, we see motion happening everywhere. We see it in the movement of vehicles, people walking, aeroplanes flying, a ball rolling and animals running. Basically, it is an important part of our lives. However, there is much more to motion and it has a great impact on many things that we are part of. We can watch things around us move. When something is in motion, it changes its position. Objects can move from one place to another. They can move in many directions. If you roll a ball, it might move in a straight line. It might also move in a curve. A swing can move back and forth. A light switch can move up and down. Fans have blades that move in a circle. If you want to know if something is moving, you can compare it to other things around it that are not moving. If the things behind the object are changing, the object is probably moving. If they are not changing, the object is probably not moving.

You can measure the distance an object moves. Just measure the distance between where it was when it started to move and where it was when it stopped.

Distance can be measured in inches, feet, yards or miles. Those measurements are in the customary system. It can also be measured in millimetres, centimetres, metres and kilometres. Those measurements are in the metric system.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16 **When something is in motion, what does it change?**

a) Size. b) Height.
c) Position. d) Weight.

17 **How does a swing move?**

a) Up and down. b) Back and forth.
c) Back and up. d) Back and right.

18 **How does a light switch move?**

a) Back and up. b) Back and forth.
c) Back and right. d) Up and down.

19 **What are the units of measurement you could use to measure distance?**

a) Inches, feet, yards or miles. b) Inches, pounds, grimes or miles.
c) Tones, kilograms, yards or miles. d) Hectares, feet, tones or miles.

20 **We know that something is moving when ....**

a) it makes noise b) objects behind it are changing
c) balls are moving around it d) it exceeds a mile

21 **A distance between the start point of the object and the ending point means that ....**

a) the object moved b) the object was stable
c) the object is heavy d) the object will move

22 **The word "impact" in the passage can be replaced by the word ....**

a) move b) effect c) change d) response

23 **The underlined pronoun It refers to a ....**

a) moving object b) direction c) straight line d) ball

24 **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**

- **Health care is considered an important element in increasing production. A healthy worker can work harder and more efficiently than a sick one.**

a) تُعتبر الرعاية الصحية عنصرًا مهمًا فى زيادة الإنتاج و يمكن للعامل السليم أن يعمل بجد أكبر وبكفاءة أكبر من العامل المريض.

b) تُعتبر الرعاية الصحية عنصرًا مهمًا فى زيادة الاستهلاك و يمكن للعامل السليم أن يعمل بجد أكبر وبكفاءة أكبر من العامل المريض.

c) تُعتبر الرعاية الصحية عنصرًا مهمًا فى زيادة الإنتاج و يمكن للعامل المجد أن يعمل بجد أكبر وبكفاءة أكبر من العامل المريض.

d) تُعتبر الرعاية الصحية عنصرًا مهمًا فى زيادة الإنتاج و يمكن للعامل السليم أن يعمل بخطورة أكبر وبكفاءة أكبر من العامل المريض.

25 **Choose the correct English translation:**

- الغذاء الكامل هو الغذاء الذى يحتوى على جميع العناصر الغذائية وبكميات مناسبة لاحتياجات الجسم، لكن معظم الناس يهتمون بالطعم ولا يهتمون بالمكونات.

a) Complete food is food that includes all the nutrients and in quantities suitable for the needs of the body, but most people care about the taste and do not care about the ingredients.

b) Complete food is food that contains all the nutrients and in quantities suitable for the needs of the body, but many people care about the taste and do not care about the ingredients.

c) Complete food is food that contains all the nutrients and in quantities suitable for the needs of the body, but most people care with the taste and do not care about the crops.

d) Complete food is food that contains all the nutrients and in quantities suitable for the needs of the body, but most people care about the taste and do not care about the ingredients.

26 **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:**

The role of mass media such as television in spreading awareness about the importance of a healthy lifestyle.

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

The future of food

Unit 3

Objectives



Reading : Two articles about future sources of food and more sustainable farming

Writing : Essay with proposals for how to feed people more sustainably in the future; writing a summary

Listening : An interview with an expert on sustainable farming

Speaking : Speculating about the future

Language : Will/Be going to; Future continuous

Life Skills : Problem solving



Study | Watch a video | Part 1 Lessons 1 & 2



A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

agriculture (n)	الزراعة	production (n)	إنتاج
crop (n)	محصول	sustainable (adj)	مُستدام
Earth (n)	الكرة الأرضية	source (n)	مصدر
innovation (n)	إبداع/ابتكار/فكرة مبتكرة	variety (n)	تنوع/مجموعة متنوعة
livestock (n)	ماشية		

The coach has a variety of choices for the squad.









Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

burger (n)	شريحة هامبورجر	environment (n)	البيئة
cause (n) (v) (d)	سبب/يسبب	gas (n)	غاز
chemical (adj) (n)	كيميائى/مادة كيميائية	grow (v)	ينمو/يزداد
climate change (n)	التغير المناخى	guest (n)	ضيف
create (v) (d)	يخلق/ينتج	increase (v) (d) (n)	يزيد/زيادة
damage (n) (v) (d)	تلف/يتلف	instead (adv)	بدلاً من ذلك
decade (n)	عقد (عشر سنوات)	invest (v) (ed)	يستثمر
destroy (v) (ed)	يدمر	involve (v) (d)	يتضمن/يتورط
dry (adj) (v) (y ied)	جاف/يجف/يجفف	island (n)	جزيرة
education (n)	التعليم	laboratory (n)	معمل
effect (n)	تأثير	land (n)	أرض
electric (adj)	كهربى	level (n)	مستوى
electricity (n)	كهرباء	mention (v) (ed)	يذكر
energy (n)	طاقة	negative (adj)	سلبى

organisation (n)	منظمة	solution (n)	حل
percent (adv)	بالمائة	southern (adj)	جنوبى
project (n)	مشروع	space (n)	مساحة/فراغ/فضاء
rainforest (n)	غابات استوائية (مطيرة)	stuff (n)	أشياء/مواد
remove (v) (d)	يزيل	technology (n)	تكنولوجيا
researcher (n)	باحث	the United Nations (UN)	الأمم المتحدة
save (v) (d)	ينقذ/يوفر	vegetarian (n)	شخص نباتى (لا يأكل اللحوم)
seriously (adv)	بجدية/بخطورة	vehicle (n)	مركبة/وسيلة

Workbook Vocabulary

area (n)	منطقة/مساحة	furniture (n)	أثاث
capital (n)	عاصمة/رأس مال	local (adj)	محلى
central (adj)	وسط/متوسط	petrol (n)	بنزين
charity (n)	مؤسسة خيرية	population (n)	السكان
encourage (v) (d)	يشجع	rainfall (n)	هطول المطر
extraordinary (adj)	مميز/رائع	success (n)	نجاح

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The land used for .... has been reduced so we need to reclaim more desert land.

a) economy b) agriculture c) industry d) culture

2 The book consists of extracts from a .... of articles of famous political writers.

a) mixture b) variety c) combination d) collocation

3 The government aims at paving the way for .... economic growth, which will last for many years to come.

a) imaginary b) noticeable c) solvable d) sustainable

4 Unfortunately, many crops are still grown with .... fertilizers which can be harmful.

a) chemical b) useful c) physical d) valuable

5 We get much of our world knowledge through .... especially in primary and prep stages.

a) agriculture b) education c) training d) industry

6 The number of students at the new university has .... from 500 to over 2000 in a short time.

a) removed b) made c) grown d) continued

7 A .... is a person who does not eat meat or fish.

a) vegetarian b) farmer c) creator d) researcher

8 Many economists believe that it is safer to .... in buying gold than any other way.

a) increase b) invest c) move d) cause

9 Australia has a low .... density. That's why they welcome immigrants المهاجرين there.

a) devastation b) invention c) pollution d) population

10 The farmer bought a good horse at a market where .... is bought and sold.

a) livestock b) dairy c) agriculture d) poultry

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

according to	طبقًا لـ	get worse	يسوء/يزداد سوءًا
as a result	نتيجة لذلك	make more money	يدر مالًا/يكسب المزيد من المال
cause/do damage	يسبب دمار	run a programme	يدير برنامجا
for years to come	لسنوات قادمة	tell the difference between	يميز الاختلاف بين
cut down	يقطع/يزيل	look for	يبحث عن
expert on/in	خبير في	solution to/for	حل لـ
hope for	أمل لـ	taste of	مذاق لـ
increase ... by	يزيد ... بنسبة	variety of	تنوع من
instead of	بدلًا من	work with	يعمل مع
learn about	يعرف عن		

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
produce	ينتج	production producer	إنتاج مُنتج	productive	منتج
innovate	يبدع/يبتكر	innovation innovator	إبداع/فكرة مبتكرة مبتكر	innovative	مبدع/إبداعى/ابتكارى
vary	يختلف/يتنوع	variety	تنوع	various	مختلف/متنوع
sustain	يدعم/يتحمل/يمدد	sustainability	استدامة	sustainable	مستدام
create	يخلق/ينتج	creation creator	خلق/إنتاج خالق/مبدع	creative	مبدع
affect	يؤثر على	effect	تأثير	effective	مؤثر
solve	يحل	solution	حل	solvable	يمكن حله
destroy ★	يدمر	destruction	دمار/تدمير	destroyed destructive	مدمَّر (تم تدميره) مدمِّر
organise	ينظم	organisation organiser	منظمة مُنظم	organised	منظَّم
succeed	ينجح	success	نجاح	successful	ناجح

The army **destroyed** the settlements of the civilians.
The **destruction** disappointed the soldiers.
The attacks were **destructive**. ★

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
destroy	يدمر	smash/ruin	construct/build	يشيد
extraordinary	مميز/رائع	amazing/incredible	ordinary/common	عادى
increase	يزيد	raise/expand	decrease/reduce	يخفض
mention	يذكر	name/point out	ignore/neglect	يتجاهل
negative	سلبى	contradictory	positive	إيجابى
source	مصدر	origin	outcome	ناتج
success	نجاح	achievement/ accomplishment	failure/defeat	فشل
sustainable	مستدام	continuous	temporary	مؤقت
variety	تنوع	diversity/variation	similarity/uniformity	تشابه

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The bomb destroyed the building. The synonym of the word "destroy" is "..............".
a) repair b) construct c) smash d) touch

2 There are no simple solutions .... the problem of overpopulation.
a) to b) in c) at d) by

3 Most of the flights from the London airport had to be cancelled .... a result of the pilots' strike إضراب.
a) for b) as c) in d) at

4 My friend is colour-blind and can't really .... the difference between these two colours.
a) do b) make c) watch d) tell

5 Young men can .... more money in private business than governmental jobs.
a) make b) give c) deliver d) see

6 You must be happy to work .... an important writer from whom you can learn a lot.
a) in b) on c) with d) as

7 He succeeded in his final exams with good results. The adjective from the verb "succeed" is "................".
a) succeeds b) succeeded c) success d) successful

8 We all believe that cycling is a totally sustainable form of transport. The antonym of "sustainable" is "................".
a) permanent b) temporary c) continuous d) available

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات الآتية واستخداماتها

1

south جنوب
southern جنوبى
الجهات الأصلية هى:
(north – south – east – west)
ولتحويل هذه الكلمات إلى صفات نضيف (ern).

- My cousins live in the south of Egypt.
- In summer, temperatures are so hot in southern Egypt.

2

local
١- محلى (خاص بمنطقة/قرية/مدينة)
٢- أحد السكان المحليين

- Alaa worked in the local newspaper before he travelled to the city.
- We asked one of the locals to recommend a restaurant.

national قومى (خاص ببلد)
Tourism helps to increase the national income of many countries.

international دولى (بين أكثر من دولة)
The United Nations is the most important international organisation.

cause	١- سبب (يتبعها حرف الجر of) ٢- يسبب	-The major cause of these accidents is the high speed of vehicles. - The fire caused serious damage to the factory.
reason	١- سبب/تبرير (يتبعها حرف الجر for) ٢- يفكر/يصل إلى رأى بعد تفكير	- People have different reasons for wanting to change jobs. - We reasoned that they would not leave before dark.
reason with	يقنع/يتجادل مع	- I tried to reason with my friend to attend the party.
reason why + جملة	سبب لـ	- I don't know the reason why he was absent.

earth	الكرة الأرضية/تراب	The earth is not flat as most people believed in the past.
ground	أرض فضاء/أرضية	On my way home, my bag dropped on the ground.
land	اليابسة	The earth consists of water and land.
soil	تربة (زراعية/رملية)	This kind of vegetables needs muddy soil, not sandy soil.
floor	طابق فى بناية/أرضية الحجرة	- The floor of the flat needs cleaning. - My flat is on the fourth floor.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 When I returned home, I found my son and daughter sitting on the .... watching TV.
a) earth b) land c) floor d) soil

2 The .... anthems الأناشيد of different countries are played at the beginning of big football matches.
a) national b) local c) global d) international

3 I can't think of any .... why you would want to leave your good job.
a) reason b) result c) cause d) share

4 The .... part of Egypt such as Aswan has very hot weather in summer.
a) southern b) southerly c) small d) shortest

5 The gardener told us that the flowers grow well in sandy ....
a) earth b) land c) floor d) soil

Practice 

Vocabulary
General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 It is important to know that running your own business usually .... working long hours.
a) consists b) involves c) examines d) starts

2 Students are offered a wide .... of courses in languages and computer software in this training centre.
a) team b) mixture c) region d) variety

3 Unfortunately, keeping animals requires more land than cultivating ....
a) ingredients b) floors c) crops d) products

4 All wood used in modern furniture comes from .... forests.
a) sustainable b) consuming c) unreliable d) solvable

5 When we cut down rainforests, some of the animal habitats مَواطن are totally ....
a) saved b) created c) designed d) destroyed

6 A/An .... is a person who studies something carefully and tries to discover new facts about it.
a) graduate b) explorer c) researcher d) conductor

7 All the rooms in this hotel cabin have a/an .... heater.
a) electric b) electronic c) updated d) chemical

8 The government is making great efforts to encourage .... in industry.
a) excitement b) loss c) source d) innovation

9 The war in Ukraine has resulted in a drop in oil and gas ....
a) destruction b) organisation c) production d) inspection

10 Tourism can .... wealth for any country if we make the best use of it.
a) take b) end c) involve d) create

11 The crises which we faced proved the importance of .... to provide food for people if imports were stopped or delayed.
a) fishing b) agriculture c) invention d) researching

12 We should make more and more efforts to .... money for our new project.
a) spend b) attribute c) save d) waste

13 The new drug has some .... side effects such as drowsiness النعاس and headache.
a) positive b) negative c) organised d) successful

14 The company decided that 2% of its profit goes to the .... for cancer patients.
a) newspaper b) increase c) factory d) charity

15 Most governments invest more in renewable .... sources such as wind and wave power.
a) food b) reactor c) energy d) aviation

16 Scientists are working hard to find new .... to our environmental problems.

a) solutions b) causes c) results d) sources

17 Some of the problems were mentioned in his report. The word "mention" is similar in meaning to the word "..................".

a) name b) neglect c) ignore d) invent

18 The new film was an immediate .... after the campaign made for it.

a) succeed b) success c) successful d) successfully

19 Because of the war, food prices increased .... 50% in less than a year in many world countries.

a) out b) in c) by d) of

20 Eating fast food will eventually have a bad .... on your health.

a) source b) effect c) effective d) affection

21 To keep healthy, I can walk to work instead .... going by car.

a) in b) at c) of d) for

22 We couldn't complete our picnic as the weather .... worse during the day.

a) made b) got c) done d) devised

23 There was a great change in the .... of the health service in many hospitals.

a) organise b) organisation c) organised d) disorganise

24 The desired outcome of most services is a satisfied customer. The noun "outcome" is an antonym to the noun "..................".

a) source b) result c) explanation d) purpose

25 The young scientist became rich after he .... a lot of money out of his new invention.

a) did b) printed c) made d) declared

26 In the future, we can expect that farmers will be using .... in technology to remove too much rainwater from the land and use it elsewhere. *(Longman)*

a) cultivation b) irrigation c) motivations d) innovations

27 Tourism is a great .... of national income in Egypt. *(Longman)*

a) store b) means c) source d) origin

28 Are you for or against using chemicals to help .... grow faster? *(Longman)*

a) products b) goods c) careers d) crops

29 A lot of farmers keep .... for meat production. *(Longman)*

a) crops b) seeds c) stock d) livestock

30 Can you .... the difference between the two pictures? They are nearly the same! *(Longman)*

a) hide b) tell c) appear d) think



Future Forms

Future simple المستقبل البسيط



will + inf.

Form	Subj. + will + inf. • I will draw a picture in the test.
Negative	Subj. + won't + inf. • I won't draw a picture in the test.
Question	Will + subj. + inf. ...? • Will you draw a picture in the test?
Passive	Obj. + will be + P.P. • A picture will be drawn in the test.

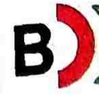
(will + inf.) is used with the following:

On-the-spot decisions القرارات الفورية	I like these shoes. I'll buy them. **Father:** I'm thirsty. **Son:** I'll get you some water.
Future facts حقائق المستقبل (شيء لا نتحكم فيه)	Mazen will be 9 years old next month. Today is the 10th of Sept. Tomorrow will be the 11th.
Predictions based on what we think (without evidence) التنبؤ القائم على الاعتقاد (بدون دليل)	Salah will score a goal next match. It will rain heavily tomorrow.

Offer	العرض	I see that you have difficulty with these questions. Wait a minute and I'll help you. Since you're tired, I'll cook dinner tonight.
Request	الطلب	Will you help me with my homework, Hazem? Will you get me two kilos of sugar when you go to the market?
Threat	التهديد	If you make these mistakes again, I'll punish you. Behave well or I'll tell your father.
Warning	التحذير	Factories must stop polluting the air or we won't be able to breathe. If we don't arrive early, we won't find a place to park.
Some verbs, expressions and adverbs مع بعض الأفعال والتعبيرات والأحوال		- Verbs: **think/ believe/ expect/ promise/ hope/ predict** I promise I will get higher marks on the next exam. I hope my brother will pass his driving test. My parents think that I'll become an artist one day. - Expressions: **be sure/ be afraid** I'm sure Osama will win the race. - Adverbs: **perhaps/ certainly/ probably/ possibly** **Perhaps**, my boss will punish me for being late. The police will **probably** find the criminal.



hoped/ thought + would	- I thought (didn't expect) that she would visit us.
promise + to + inf.	- I have promised to come early tonight.
just decided قرار سريع	- He has just decided that he won't join this club.
فعل أمر + **or + will (won't)**	- Get up early or you won't catch the train.



be (am/ is/ are) going to + inf.

Form	Subj. + (be) going to + inf. • I am going to fix my bike today.
Negative	Subj. + (be) + not + going to + inf. • I am not going to fix my bike today.
Question	(be) + subj. + going to + inf. ...? • Are you going to fix your bike today?
Passive	Obj. + (be) going to + be + P.P. • My bike is going to be fixed today.

(be going to) is used with the following:

For plans and decisions we have already made للخطط والنوايا والقرارات التى اتخذناها بالفعل	He's going to employ more staff. (plan خطة/intention نية) I'm going to move to a bigger house next year. (decision قرار)
To make predictions with present reality or evidence التنبؤ بدليل (شىء نراه أو نعرفه)	Look at him! He is going to win the race. (He is ahead of the other runners). The wall is moving. It is going to fall.



C) Present simple المضارع البسيط

Form

- He/ She/ It/ singular noun + (v. + s, es, ies)
- I/ They/ We/ You/ plural noun + 1st form of the verb without "s"

(Present simple) is used with the following:

When we refer to programmes or timetables (planes/ trains/ busses, etc.).

- يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل مع الجداول المحددة والبرامج والمواعيد الثابتة، مثل: مواعيد الطائرات والحافلات والقطارات والسينما والمسرح والتليفزيون والامتحانات ... إلخ.

The film starts at 9 p.m. (cinema programme)

The plane arrives at Cairo airport at 7:30. (timetable)

The train to Assuit leaves at 6 o'clock tomorrow morning. (timetable)

D) Present continuous المضارع المستمر

Form

- (am/ is/ are + v.ing)

(Present continuous) is used with the following:

For fixed arrangements in the near future.

- يستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن المستقبل مع الأشياء التى تم الترتيب لها فى المستقبل القريب.

I'm flying to London tomorrow morning. (I've got the ticket.)

I can't watch the final match with you we're giving a party tomorrow. (Everything has been arranged.)

I am meeting Mr Ibrahim at his office at 10 a.m. tomorrow.

The time conjunctions used with future simple and perfect الروابط الزمنية

The future simple is used with the following time conjunctions:

Future simple (will/ be going to + inf.)	after, before, till/until, when, as soon as	Present simple Present perfect

After Ahmed finishes/ has finished his exams, I'll take him for a picnic.

The manager is going to see you as soon as he comes out of the meeting.

Call me as soon as you get back.



الفعل الأمر يحل محل المستقبل.

I won't touch (Don't touch) anything before the police arrive.

He won't say anything until the boss tells him.

Extra points



الفعل think يأخذ will ولكن إذا كان هناك دليل نستخدم be going to.

Bahaa is a careless driver. I think he will have an accident one day.

Look! Bahaa is driving dangerously fast. I think he is going to have an accident.



تدل جمل التحذير (Be careful! – Look out! – Take care!) غالبـًا على قرب حدوث الفعل، فالشخص يرى شيئًا قريب الحدوث فيحذر منه لذلك نستخدم بعد هذه الأفعال be going to.

Look out! We are going to crash! There is a car coming.

وأما إذا كان التحذير عامـًا نستخدم will.

Be careful or you will fall into the newly dug hole on your way to the market.



بعد الأفعال think/ expect/ predict/ be sure نستخدم will.

أما بعد الأفعال thought/ expected/ predicted/ (was/ were) sure فنستخدم would.

I thought they would phone me that evening.

عند التحدث عن الآمال والطموحات الشخصية يمكن أن نستخدم be going to.

I think I'm going to be a good football player.

Practice  Practise more

Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Someone is at the door. I .... who it is.
a) am going to see b) will see c) am seeing d) would see

2 I'm sure my friend .... win the next school championship in swimming.
a) should b) would c) is going to d) will

3 They've got the tickets; they .... to London.
a) will have flown b) fly c) are flying d) will fly

4 The basketball team .... two games next week.
a) play b) is playing c) have played d) going to play

5 The programme .... at seven o'clock this evening.
a) starts b) is starting
c) will start d) will be starting

6 I think it .... hot tomorrow.
a) is going to be b) will be c) is being d) would be

7 I .... Ahmed in the club as planned.
a) am going to meet b) will meet
c) meet d) would meet

8 The train to Cairo is on platform No. 4 and it .... at 9:30.
a) will be leaving b) will leave c) leaves d) is leaving

9 When he .... next week, he will give me some money.
a) come b) will come c) is coming d) comes

10 Our manager .... dinner with the minister next Thursday as appointed.
a) has b) had
c) is having d) is going to have

11 She is flying to Italy next week, her flight .... off at 7 a.m.
a) took b) taking c) take d) takes

12 She .... to Spain next spring.
a) is travelling b) travels c) has travelled d) would travel

13 A: Have you got any plans for tomorrow? B: Yes, I .... my grandparents.
a) would visit b) visit
c) am going to visit d) will visit

14 I feel terrible with a severe stomachache. I think I .... be sick.

a) should b) am going to c) am to d) will

15 My brother has decided to immigrate يهاجر. He .... next month.

a) will travel b) travels
c) is going to travel d) travelling

16 I'm looking for my e-book reader. I .... an e-book on it.

a) will be read b) am going to read c) will read d) read

17 There are a lot of people in the room. It .... difficult to find a chair.

a) will be b) is going to be
c) is being d) will have been

18 I predict that in the future mobile phones .... much smaller.

a) are going to be b) are c) will have been d) will be

19 The fridge is empty. .... and get some food, please?

a) Will you go b) You will go c) Do you go d) Are you going

20 It is getting hot. I .... the windows.

a) am opening b) will be opening c) open d) will open

21 I .... on the AC because it's very hot now. *(Longman)*

a) will turn b) will be turning c) going to turn d) had turned

22 I have made up my mind to spend the weekend in my village. I .... spend the weekend there. *(Longman)*

a) was going to b) am going to c) will d) may

23 I expect Rami .... a successful engineer one day. *(Longman)*

a) will be b) is being c) going to be d) has been

24 Be careful; the bus .... towards you. *(Longman)*

a) going to come b) is coming
c) will have come d) will be coming

25 My grandson, Ahmed, ... 12 next Friday. *(Longman)*

a) is going to be b) was c) will be d) has been

26 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct:

a) It's cold here. I will close the window.
b) It's cold here. I will have closed the window.
c) It's cold here. I will be closing the window.
d) It's cold here. Shall you close the window?

27 **Choose the grammatically correct sentence:**

a) I will be helping you with your homework if you want.

b) I will help you with your homework if you want.

c) I will have helped you with your homework if you want.

d) I'm helping you with your homework if you want.

28 **One of the following sentences is grammatically correct:**

a) Liverpool is winning the next match.

b) Liverpool will have won the next match.

c) Liverpool is going to win. They're three-nil already.

d) Liverpool will be winning the next match.

29 **Choose one correct answer to the following sentence:**

As it's cold and rainy, I ....

a) won't go out today
b) am going out today
c) won't have gone out today
d) will be going out today

30 **One of the following questions is grammatically incorrect:**

a) What are you going to do next weekend?

b) What do you do next weekend?

c) What are your plans for next weekend?

d) What do you intend to do next weekend?

31 **A: Why have you got so much food? B: Because I .... a meal for ten people.**

a) was cooking
b) am going to cook
c) cook
d) will cook

32 **I promise .... hard and get high marks this year.**

a) to study
b) to studying
c) will study
d) to have studied

33 **It's very hot here. ....**

a) You are going to turn on the air conditioner.

b) Will you turn on the air conditioner?

c) Are you going to turn on the air conditioner?

d) You will turn on the air conditioner.

34 **................ visit the Egyptian Museum next weekend?**

a) Do you
b) Do you offer to
c) Are you suggesting to
d) Do you intend to

35 **Since you don't know the way, I'll give you a lift. This is a kind of a/an ....**

a) suggestion
b) excuse
c) offer
d) request

Test yourself



Part 1 (Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 One of my friends works for a .... that gives poor people money and food for their living.
a) newspaper b) charity c) shop d) station

2 Scientists say that governments must take action to reduce the .... of pollution.
a) reasons b) studies c) effects d) inventions

3 We enjoyed the film, which was amazing. The word "amazing" is similar in meaning to the verb ....
a) terrible b) extraordinary c) common d) awful

4 I really like the variety the department store offers. The noun "variety" can be the opposite of ....
a) diversity b) variation c) similarity d) detection

5 Scientists warn us that cutting .... rainforests has a bad effect on the planet.
a) in b) at c) for d) down

6 The space project took a whole .... from 2010 to 2020 and it was successful.
a) reign b) millennium c) decade d) century

7 Many tourists visit .... Spain because of the beautiful Mediterranean beaches.
a) south b) southern c) southerly d) southward

8 We had a very good .... of potatoes last year which led to the increase in exports.
a) discovery b) drop c) crop d) exploration

9 We really live in an age of technological .... where everything seems possible.
a) distortion b) innovation c) pollution d) population

10 Scientists always think of new ways to help farmers to promote .... agriculture.
a) sustainable b) real c) toxic d) unavailable

11 Toyota's latest car has just gone into .... for the Japanese market.
a) produce b) production c) productive d) produced

12 The battery of the new mobile I bought can store .... for one or two days.
a) gas b) health c) strength d) energy

13 The study about the COVID-19 vaccine was carried out by .... at Oxford University.
a) researchers b) farmers c) helpers d) officers

14 There was a lot of rainfall this winter. As a/an ...., floods happened in the country.
a) reason b) result c) effect d) impact

15 The train accident got much .... in the national newspapers because of its drama.

a) space b) area c) gap d) hole

Language

16 My parents promised me that they .... me a new car.

a) are buying b) will buy c) would buy d) are going to buy

17 Ali will go to the park when he .... his homework.

a) will finish b) finish c) had finished d) finishes

18 They have intended to buy a big house. They .... buy it soon.

a) are buying b) are going to c) may d) will

19 I'm very late. .... me to the club, please?

a) Do you drive b) Are you driving c) Will you drive d) Are you going to drive

20 What a wonderful shirt, I .... it.

a) buy b) will buy c) am going to buy d) am buying

21 Most of our shopping .... on the internet in the future.

a) will be doing b) will do c) will be done d) is going to do

22 We .... the meeting as soon as he arrives.

a) start b) have started c) started d) will start

23 There are no clouds in the sky today. I think that it .... very hot.

a) will be b) will have been c) is going to be d) is

24 Quick! Give me a paper tissue, I .... again!

a) will sneeze b) am going to sneeze c) sneeze d) would sneeze

25 Sayed thinks that his team .... next week's competition.

a) may be winning b) will be winning c) will be won d) will win

26 A: Oh! I haven't got enough money to pay!
B: Don't worry. I .... you some.

a) am lending b) am going to lend c) will lend d) lend

27 A: Why do you want so many oranges?
B: I .... make an orange juice for us all.

a) am going to b) will c) would d) won't

28 The programme predicts what life .... in 20, 30 or 40 years' time.

a) will be like b) will be liking c) will have liked d) may be liking

29 'Aya is in hospital.' 'Oh really? I didn't know. I .... and visit her.

a) will go b) am going c) am going to go d) will be going

30 Lots of people have said they .... to the party.

a) will come b) would come c) came d) were going to come




Watch a video

Part 2
Lessons 3 & 4




لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك


Vocabulary on Reading and Listening Texts

algae (n)	طحالب	heat up (v) (ed)	يزداد حرارة
argument (n)	جدال/حجة	include (v) (d)	يشمل
available (adj)	متوافر/متاح	introduction (n)	مقدمة
boring (adj)	ممل	link (n) (v) (ed)	رابط/يربط
chance (n)	فرصة	lose (v)	يفقد/يخسر
complete (adj)	مكتمل/تام	notice (v) (d)	يلاحظ
conclude (v) (d)	يستنتج/يختتم/ينهى	ocean (n)	المحيط
conclusion (n)	استنتاج/ختام	original (adj)	أصلى
continent (n)	قارة	replace (v) (d)	يستبدل
description (n)	وصف	seaweed (n)	الأعشاب البحرية
efficiently (adv)	بكفاءة	several (adj)	عديد
evidence (n)	دليل	suggest (v) (ed)	يقترح
fact (n)	حقيقة	summarise (v) (d)	يلخص
factual (adj)	واقعى/حقيقى	summary (n)	ملخص
farm (v) (ed)	يزرع/يفلح	tasty (adj)	ذو مذاق جيد
fashion (n)	موضة	topic (n)	موضوع
gap (n)	فجوة/فراغ	underline (v) (d)	يضع خطًا تحت
giant (adj) (n)	عملاق	unusual (adj)	غير معتاد/غريب

Workbook Vocabulary

Antarctica (n)	القارة القطبية الجنوبية	leaves (n)	أوراق شجر
argue (v) (d)	يجادل/يقدم حجة	main (adj)	أساسى
contain (v) (ed)	يحتوى على	outdoor (adj)	خارج المنزل
control (v) (led)	يسيطر على	predict (v) (ed)	يتنبأ بـ
earn (v) (ed)	يكسب	produce (n) (v) (d)	إنتاج زراعى/ينتج
flow (n) (v) (ed)	انسياب/ينساب	reuse (v) (d)	يعيد استخدام
focus (v) (ed)	يركز	specific (adj)	محدد
fresh (adj)	طازج	surprisingly (adv)	من المدهش
hydroponics (n)	الزراعة المائية	urban (adj)	مدنى/حضرى
insect (n)	حشرة		

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 With the invention of the internet, it is possible to make learning .... wherever it is needed.
a) main b) suitable c) available d) reliable

2 Although they are rare, wolves are still found on the .... of Europe.
a) continent b) country c) island d) ocean

3 Our office manager decided to buy equipment that distributes electrical power more .... to save electricity.
a) surprisingly b) efficiently c) negatively d) passively

4 Police officers are trying hard to find .... which proves the criminal's guilt.
a) prediction b) description c) chance d) evidence

5 Many people move from the countryside to the .... areas looking for jobs.
a) urban b) rural c) ocean d) desert

6 I agree with the .... that violence on TV makes people behave violently.
a) debate b) argument c) summary d) disagreement

7 The salesman showed me the catalogue with its detailed .... of all the cars.
a) description b) introduction c) conclusion d) infection

8 The old church still has its .... stone floors, which date back hundreds of years.
a) factual b) original c) dispensing d) giant

9 I .... the essay's main points in the final paragraph.
a) appeared b) expected c) summarised d) divided

10 Unfortunately, there is a .... between the lifestyles of the old and the young in most societies.
a) notice b) flow c) gab d) gap

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

in fact	فى الحقيقة/الواقع	make sense	ذو معنى
in my view	فى رأيى	over the next few decades	عبر العقود القليلة القادمة
lose up to	يخسر حتى	to conclude	وفى الختام
available for	متوافر لـ	grow to	ينمو إلى
based on	معتمد (مرتكز) على	link to	رابط لـ
focus on	يركز على	opinion on/about	رأى عن
good for	جيد لـ	source of	مصدر لـ

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
argue	يجادل	argument	جدل	argumentative	جدلى
bore	يضجر/يمل	boredom	الملل	boring bored	ممل متضجر
describe	يصف	description	وصف	descriptive	وصفى
predict	يتنبأ بـ	prediction	تنبؤ	predictable	يمكن التنبؤ به
replace	يستبدل	replacement	استبدال/بديل	replaced	مستبدل
specify	يحدد	specification	تحديد	specific	محدد
suggest	يقترح	suggestion	اقتراح	suggestive	اقتراحى

- Scientists predict that the sun will explode one day.
- The prediction caused a lot of arguments.
- This case is not easily predictable.



Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
boring	ممل	uninteresting/dull	interesting/exciting شيق
control	يسيطر على/يتحكم	dominate/command	obey يتجاهل/يطيع
factual	حقيقى/واقعى	real/actual	fictional/false خيالى/غير حقيقى
notice	يلاحظ	observe/regard	ignore/overlook يهمل/يتغاضى عن
predict	يتنبأ بـ	forecast/anticipate	disbelieve/misunderstand لا يصدق/يسىء فهم
specific	محدد	definite/particular	common/ambiguous شائع/غامض
suggest	يقترح	propose/advise	oppose/deny يعارض/ينكر
urban	مدنى/حضرى	civil	rural ريفى

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The essay contains a number of factual errors. The antonym of the adjective "factual" is "..................".
a) real b) fictional c) complete d) true

2 It would .... sense for the parents to share in the decisions about their children's education.
a) make b) do c) reply d) devise

3 The car factory production has grown .... around 100 cars a month over the last two years.
a) at b) to c) in d) for

4 The police did not specify precisely how many people were in the incident. The adjective from the verb "specify" is "..................".
a) specifies b) specification c) specific d) pacified

5 I haven't seen my old friend for years. In ...., I can't even remember what he looks like.
a) face b) fiction c) advance d) fact

6 In my ...., the new plan to build the new cinema is fantastic.
a) discussion b) view c) debate d) fight

7 The game was so boring for the spectators who left early. The synonym of the word "boring" is "....................".

a) special b) interesting c) dull d) exciting

8 New teachers often find it difficult to control their classes. The verb "control" is similar in meaning to ....

a) damage b) obey c) neglect d) dominate

9 The article focuses .... three main economic problems of the present situation.

a) in b) on c) at d) for

10 The lifeguard didn't notice that a boy was having trouble in the pool. The verb "notice" is the opposite of the verb "....................".

a) ignore b) observe c) regard d) contain

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات الآتية واستخداماتها

1

tasty
ذو مذاق جيد (تستخدم للطعام فقط)
- My sister makes a really tasty dish with chicken and rice.

tasteful
ذو ذوق جيد (مختار بعناية)
- The hotel lobby is filled with tasteful furniture and original artwork.

2

lose
يفقد/يخسر
- I lost my handbag at the airport because it was overcrowded.
- Our team lost the final match of the championship last year.

miss
يفتقد/يفوته شيء
- I really missed my family when I was abroad last month.
- I missed the train because I got up very late.

3

fresh
- طازج
- جديد وشيق
- حديث (تم أو يتم من وقت قصير)
- نشيط/ملىء بالحيوية

- I like to have fresh juice with my breakfast. طازج
- Our teacher always encourages having fresh ideas about science. جديد وشيق
- The marks on the shirt are fresh. You should wash it immediately. حديث (تم أو يتم من وقت قصير)
- The players of the team still look fresh after the first half. They are very fit. نشيط/ملىء بالحيوية

earn يكسب (مالاً عن طريق العمل غالبًا)	She was earning good money during her work at the bank.
gain يكتسب (شيئًا معنويًا)	- In her first job, she gained experience as a programme manager. لاحظ gain (speed - weight - height) - I have gained a lot of weight because of eating fast food.
win يفوز بـ (مباراة/جائزة/مسابقة)	- It's supposed to be easier to win your home games. - How does it feel to have won the gold medal?
beat يهزم/يتغلب على	- I always beat my friend at tennis; he gets annoyed.

4

outdoor بالخارج/خلوى (خارج الأماكن المغلقة) صفة يأتى بعدها اسم.	Father has liked outdoor activities like camping and hiking since he was a child.
outdoors بالخارج (خارج الأماكن المغلقة) حال/ظرف يصف فعلًا.	I asked my wife to have breakfast outdoors. It was sunny and nice.

5

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 We had to hurry back so as not to .... the start of our favourite program.
a) lose b) gain c) miss d) earn

2 My cousin .... a scholarship to study at the American University in Cairo.
a) won b) beat c) earned d) gained

3 Fast food can be ...., but it contains a lot of fat.
a) tasteful b) tasty c) tasteless d) taste

4 Samir wants a job that will let him work .... He doesn't like staying in offices.
a) indoor b) indoors c) outdoor d) outdoors

5 Regular exercise will help you feel fresher and fitter. "Fresh" here means ....
a) new b) tasteful c) drinkable d) energetic

Practice 

Vocabulary
General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Many tourist villages and resorts near the Red Sea are built using locally .... materials.
   a) factual b) avoidable c) available d) probable
2. The police came to the .... that the criminal was not telling the truth.
   a) introduction b) experience c) argument d) conclusion
3. Some scientists believe there may be a .... between caffeine and heart disease.
   a) gap b) travel c) space d) link
4. The .... of our research this month will be the new space stations.
   a) topic b) reason c) object d) fact
5. At the end of the news programme, they often give you a/an .... of the main stories.
   a) evidence b) research c) summary d) introduction
6. Mary doesn't .... much money as an office clerk, but she enjoys the work.
   a) earn b) win c) beat d) gain
7. Seaweed and other .... are eaten in China and Japan, especially by people who live near the ocean.
   a) algae b) insects c) fruits d) meat
8. In the future, we hope, it may be possible to .... earthquakes.
   a) protect b) conclude c) predict d) rejoice
9. The chef said that we must use .... tomatoes for his recipe.
   a) original b) dull c) renewed d) fresh
10. .... is the process of growing plants in water or sand, rather than in soil.
    a) Agriculture b) Hydroponics c) Industry d) Botany
11. Children's television programmes are made mainly for a/an .... age group.
    a) public b) available c) specific d) accepted
12. The rich businesswoman is always dressed in the latest .... from Paris and Milan.
    a) flows b) fashions c) fictions d) facts
13. The doctor tried to stop the .... of blood from the wound that was bleeding.
    a) produce b) downpour c) flow d) storm
14. In my ...., new ways of farming are very important for us.
    a) view b) sight c) scene d) scenery
15. Scientists say that there is real .... that the vaccine is effective against the virus.
    a) fiction b) art c) evidence d) science

16 While the oven is .... up, you can prepare the sauce for the chocolate cake.
a) heating b) speeding c) hurrying d) descending

17 The sausages in this restaurant are really ....; you must try them.
a) tasty b) tasteful c) tasteless d) taste

18 The attacker missed a .... to score just before the end of the match and our team lost.
a) present b) chance c) gift d) prize

19 Because of the traffic jam, we got to the cinema late and .... the beginning of the movie.
a) lost b) gained c) missed d) completed

20 The conference .... on the effects of climate change on African countries.
a) detects b) distracts c) derives d) focuses

21 Experts say that raw vegetables .... more potassium than cooked ones.
a) develop b) contain c) enclose d) dry

22 The hotel is distinguished by an .... swimming pool which is overlooked by most of the rooms.
a) outdoor b) indoor c) internal d) unattractive

23 Chinese factories .... cheap goods for export to many world countries.
a) avoid b) present c) produce d) consume

24 The bank guard was punished for neglecting his duty. The word "neglect" is an antonym of the word "..................".
a) expect b) control c) employ d) dismiss

25 Most young people don't like to watch news programmes saying that they are ....
a) bore b) boredom c) bored d) boring

26 The film is based .... a true story of an American soldier during the Second World War.
a) at b) for c) on d) about

27 You must correct this sentence as it doesn't .... any sense to me.
a) do b) notice c) accept d) make

28 I asked my friends to give me their opinions .... my new watch.
a) for b) at c) about d) over

29 Dreams can sometimes seem very real. The word "real" is similar in meaning to the word "..................".
a) fictional b) factual c) available d) advised

30 The woman gave an accurate .... of the man who stole her bag.
a) describe b) description c) described d) descriptive



Future continuous المستقبل المستمر

Form	Subj. + will be + v.ing • I'll be playing at 7 p.m. tomorrow.
Negative	Subj. + won't be + v.ing • I won't be waiting for you at 10 p.m. tomorrow.
Question	Will + subj. + be + v.ing? • Will you be painting your room at this time next week?

USAGE الاستخدام

1 **For actions that will be in progress at a stated future time.**

يستخدم للأحداث التى ستكون مستمرة عند وقت محدد فى المستقبل.

Don't phone me at 11 p.m. as I'll be sleeping at this time.

2 **For actions that will definitely happen in the future as a result of a routine or arrangement (instead of the present continuous).**

يستخدم للأحداث التى سوف تحدث بالتحديد فى المستقبل كنتيجة لروتين أو ترتيب (بدلًا من المضارع المستمر).

I'll be playing golf on Friday.
(I play golf every Friday - it's part of my routine.)
I'll be seeing Ramy tomorrow. (see = meet)
(We work in the same office so we will definitely meet.)

3 **When we ask politely about people's arrangements to see if they can do something for us or because we want to offer to do something for them.**

يستخدم عندما نسأل بأدب عن ترتيبات الأشخاص لنرى ما إذا كانوا يستطيعون فعل شىء لنا أو لأننا نريد أن نفعل شيئًا لهم.

Will you be going to the supermarket? Can you buy me some tea?

4

We use may be + v.ing to refer to future events or trends which are possible but not certain:

نستخدم may be + v.ing للتعبير عن الأحداث التى من الممكن أن تحدث ولكن لسنا متأكدين منها.

Many more people may be living in Cairo in the next 50 years.

5

The future continuous is used with the following time expressions:

نستخدم المستقبل المستمر مع التعبيرات الزمنية الآتية.

- all night/ day tomorrow/ next week, etc.
- this time tomorrow/ next week - at + مدة tomorrow/next week - from .... to .... tomorrow.
- in an hour's time ....

This time tomorrow, I will be watching a film with my family.

Extra points

1 أفعال state verbs لا تستخدم مع المستقبل المستمر ولكن إذا تغير معناها يمكن أن تستخدم فى الاستمرار.

This time next year, I will have had my graduation certificate.

- لا يمكن استخدام will be having لأن الفعل يملك لا يُستخدم مستمرًا.

This time tomorrow, I will be having my dinner with my family.

- الفعل have هنا ليس بمعنى يملك بل بمعنى يتناول؛ لذلك استخدم فى الاستمرار.

2 لو كان الحدثان سيستمران فى المستقبل ووجد رابط زمنى فالحدث الذى بعد الرابط الزمنى يكون مضارعًا مستمرًا أو بسيطًا وليس مستقبلًا مستمرًا.

مضارع مستمر أو بسيط	+	رابط زمنى	+	مستقبل مستمر

I'll be studying for my lessons while my father is watching the match tomorrow.

Summary

will + inf.

Form

+	- I will attend the meeting. - I'll attend the meeting.
-	- I will not attend the meeting. - I won't attend the meeting.
?	- Will you attend the meeting?
Ans.	- Yes, I will. - No, I will not. - No, I won't.

Usage

Prediction without evidence تنبؤ بدون دليل

- I think it will rain tomorrow.
- Our team will win the next match.

Instant decision قرار سريع

- I think it will rain tomorrow.
- Our team will win the next match.

(be) going to + inf.

Form

+	He is going to attend the party. He's going to attend the party.
-	He is not going to attend the party. He isn't going to attend the party.
?	- Is he going to attend the party?
Ans.	- Yes, he is. - No, he is not. - No, he isn't.

Usage

Prediction with evidence تنبؤ بدليل

- The sky is cloudy. It is going to rain.
- Our team is playing well. They are going to win the next match.

Decisions already made قرارات مسبقة

- I think it will rain tomorrow.
- Our team will win the next match.

Future continuous tense زمن المستقبل المستمر

Form

+	Subj. + will + be + v.ing	• I'll be doing my homework at 6 tomorrow.
-	Subj. + will + not + be + v.ing	• I won't be doing my homework at 6 tomorrow.
?	Will + subj. + be + v.ing?	• Will you be doing your homework at 6 tomorrow?

Usage

For actions that will be in progress at a stated future time. يستخدم للأحداث التى ستكون مستمرة عند وقت محدد فى المستقبل	• Don't phone me at 11 p.m. as I'll be studying at this time.
To ask a question politely about the future. لطرح سؤال بأدب حول المستقبل	• Will you be going to the supermarket? Can you buy me some tea?

Practice



Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I .... tomorrow. I've got my plane ticket.
a) will leave b) am leaving c) going to leave d) shall leave

2 My elder son says he .... a doctor. This is his ambition.
a) is being b) is c) will be d) is going to be

3 Tomorrow .... a cold sunny day.
a) will be b) was going to be c) is being d) is

4 I want to buy a new villa, so I .... save a lot of money.
a) going to b) will c) am going to d) will be

5 I can't visit you because I .... for my sister's wedding all next afternoon.
a) might have b) going to prepare c) will prepare d) will be preparing

6 I can't meet you tonight as I .... for the exam.
a) going to revise b) will have been revised c) will revise d) am revising

7 Will you .... the phone for long? I want to make some calls.
a) be using b) use c) be used d) have used

8 I'll tell Hesham about the party. I .... him at work anyway.
a) will see b) will be seeing c) may see d) was seeing

9 From 6 to 8 tomorrow, I .... the final match on TV.
a) will watch b) going to watch c) watch d) will be watching

10 This time next week, I .... on the beach.
a) will have sunbathed b) will be sunbathing c) will have been sunbathing d) will be sunbathed

11 Will you .... into town this afternoon? Can you give me a lift?
a) be driving b) drive c) be driven d) have driven

12 Magdy .... in the school concert all next week.
a) will perform b) will be performing c) performed d) has performed

13 I can't meet you because I .... my homework this evening.

a) will do b) will have done c) will be doing d) do

14 This flat is very hot, so we .... a flat that is far from the beach next time.

a) will rent b) aren't going to rent

c) are renting d) don't rent

15 Our last lesson .... at two o'clock this afternoon.

a) will be finishing b) is finishing

c) will finish d) finishes

16 We .... a family party on Saturday. Would you like to come?

a) are having b) have c) will have had d) have had

17 The boys will watch the new film after they .... their pocket money.

a) are going to get b) get c) will get d) are sure to get

18 **A:** .... to the dentist this afternoon? **B:** Yes, why?

A: Can you make an appointment for me to see him?

a) Are you going b) Will you have gone

c) Do you go d) Shall you go

19 I think one day every new book .... as an e-book.

a) publish b) will publish

c) will be published d) will have published

20 Don't worry. I'm sure you .... them again soon.

a) see b) are seeing c) would see d) will see

21 More people .... electric cars, and therefore we will cut down on pollution. *(Longman)*

a) were using b) had to use c) going to use d) will be using

22 Don't expect him to come this evening; he .... an important meeting. *(Longman)*

a) going to attend b) will be attended

c) will be attending d) had attended

23 I can't go to the cinema with you this evening because I .... for my brother's wedding. *(Longman)*

a) will prepare b) will be preparing

c) had to prepare d) going to prepare

24 What .... from 6 to 8 next evening? *(Longman)*

a) will you do b) were you doing

c) will you be doing d) have you done

(Longman)

25 **All next year, scientists .... on decreasing global warming.**

a) are going to work
b) will be working
c) will work
d) will have worked

26 **Choose the best correct answer:**

a) I will be met my friends for dinner after work tomorrow.
b) I will have met my friends for dinner after work tomorrow.
c) I am meeting my friends for dinner after work tomorrow.
d) I shall meet my friends for dinner all day after work tomorrow.

27 **"Just a minute, please. I will be with you as soon as I .... this."**

a) will do b) have done c) will be doing d) will have done

28 **A: Let's meet at eleven o'clock tomorrow.**

B: Sorry, I .... my boss at this time.

a) will have met b) will be meeting c) will meet d) meet

29 **One of the following sentences is grammatically correct:**

A: Have you made plans for tonight?

B: Yes. I .... my sister after work. We need to discuss some family matters.

a) am going to visit b) will have visited c) will visit d) will be visited

30 **One of the following sentences is grammatically correct:**

a) This time tomorrow, I will watch the new film.
b) This time tomorrow, I will be watching the new film.
c) This time tomorrow, I watch the new film.
d) This time tomorrow, I will have been watched the new film.

31 **I'll help you as soon as I .... my work.**

a) have finished b) had finished c) am going to finish d) will finish

32 **I can't come tomorrow as I .... the match at the stadium with my friends.**

a) will watch b) may watch c) watch d) am watching

33 **We don't think that the price of petrol .... my work.**

a) won't rise b) will be risen c) is raising d) will rise

34 **He promised .... me with my homework.**

a) he would help
b) to have helped
c) he will help me
d) that he will help

35 **The rich man's plane .... Cairo next week.**

a) will have reached
d) will reach
b) is going to be reached
c) will be reaching

Test yourself



Part 2 (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 I propose going to an early film and having dinner afterwards. The verb "propose" is a synonym to the verb "..................".
a) divide b) intend c) agree d) suggest

2 The stove takes a while to .... up and you can prepare the ingredients of the dish.
a) heat b) speed c) hurry d) descend

3 The war has been the main .... of most talk shows.
a) clause b) reason c) result d) topic

4 The text provides a .... of the plot of Shakespeare's King Lear.
a) research b) document c) theory d) summary

5 The website of the fashion house gives a full .... of each product.
a) describe b) description c) described d) descriptive

6 The air is fresh in rural areas. The adjective "rural" is the opposite of the adjective "..................".
a) natural b) fresh c) urban d) helpful

7 You would have another .... to succeed in the test if you tried again and again.
a) topic b) chance c) study d) subject

8 On hearing about losing his job, Sameh was so angry that his speech didn't .... sense.
a) do b) notice c) accept d) make

9 The report's main .... was that global warming is a serious threat.
a) study b) conclusion c) extension d) experience

10 At present, we have no .... of life on other planets.
a) fiction b) art c) evidence d) science

11 Calvin Klein, Diesel and Christian Dior's .... shows attract a lot of attention as they are world-famous clothes designers.
a) wave b) fashion c) flood d) trend

12 The roof of the farmer's yard was in such bad condition that it needed to be completely ....
a) replaced b) placed c) disappeared d) destroyed

13 The research shows a .... between high cholesterol and an increased risk of heart attacks.
a) method b) link
c) contact d) communication

14 I thanked my friend for the .... meal she cooked for us.
a) tasty b) tasteful c) tasteless d) testy

15 Access to certain websites is only .... to registered users who have to pay for this.
a) readable b) acceptable c) available d) probable

Language

16 I can't visit my cousins in June because I .... for a charity.
a) will work
b) will be working
c) am being worked
d) will have worked

17 In the next week's radio programme, we .... to a famous scientist.
a) will be talking b) talking c) talk d) have talked

18 People .... in houses under water in twenty years' time.
a) may have lived
b) will be lived
c) may be living
d) are going to live

19 This time tomorrow, I .... for my father at the airport.
a) will be waited
b) will be waiting
c) going to wait
d) will have been waited

20 Don't phone me at 7 o'clock. I ....
a) will sleep b) will be sleeping c) am going to sleep d) sleep

21 You have no chance of getting the job. You .... your time if you apply for it.
a) be wasting b) will be wasting c) waste d) won't waste

22 This time next week, Hamid .... in a school football match.
a) will play b) may play c) will be playing d) will have played

23 I have made a decision. I .... the weekend in my village.
a) will spend
b) will be spending
c) am spending
d) am going to spend

24 In five years' time, Ali will probably .... with his parents.
a) be lived b) still live c) be still living d) still living

25 If you don't take a taxi, you .... on time.
a) won't arrive
b) aren't going to arrive
c) aren't arriving
d) don't arrive

26 Ahmed is a terrible driver. He .... an accident one day.
a) is having b) will have c) is going to have d) will be having

27 This time next year, Salma .... for her final exam.
a) will revise b) will be revising c) may revise d) revises

28 **A:** I've planned my future for the next five years.
B: That is very clever of you. What .... when you retire?
a) are you doing b) are you going to do c) have done d) do you do

29 The doctor says that he'll feel a lot better after he .... a rest.
a) had b) has had c) will have d) had had

30 It rained! I didn't think it ....
a) is going to rain b) was going to rain c) was raining d) had rained



Part 3

Lessons 5 & 6

Act I, Scenes iii-iv

Vocabulary

attack (v) (ed)	يهاجم	immediately (adv)	فورا/فى الحال
attendant (n)	مضيف/خادم	lady (n)	سيدة
behave (v) (d)	يتصرف	mad (adj)	غاضب/مجنون
cart (n)	عربة الخيل	notice (v) (d)	يلاحظ
disguise (v) (d)	يتنكر	palace (n)	قصر
encourage (v) (d)	يشجع	pull (v) (ed)	يسحب/يشد
follow (v) (ed)	يتبع	rude (adj)	وقح
fool (n)	مهرج	servant (n)	خادم
guilty (adj)	مذنب	soldier (n)	جندى
hit (v)	يضرب	taste (n)	مذاق
hold (v)	يعلق/يمسك	wise (adj)	حكيم/عاقل

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

have a taste of her own medicine	تجنى نتيجة عملها	have the power	يمتلك القوة والسلطة
make problems	يسبب المشكلات	the cart is pulling the horse	العربة تجر الحصان (تعبير عن انقلاب الأوضاع)

Practice



King Lear Exercises Act I, Scenes iii-iv

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 We'll have a/an .... with our sick son 24 hours a day to keep an eye on him.
a) adviser b) attendant
c) consultant d) guide

2 I hope the children will .... well during my brother's wedding.
a) behave b) relieve c) fight d) shout

3 The criminals who robbed the bank were .... in post office uniforms.
a) disliked b) discouraged
c) disguised d) dissented

4 I still feel .... about bad things I said to my little brother when I was a teenager.
a) guilty b) happy
c) pleased d) proud

5 Mum always .... us to discuss our problems with her.
a) discourages b) recognises
c) realises d) encourages

6 The man was .... a large package in his arms when he fell down the stairs.
a) kicking b) pulling
c) holding d) tying

7 When we entered the restaurant, I .... that my friend was sitting at the next table.
a) booked b) dissolved c) abused d) noticed

8 It's .... to keep people waiting outside your house for a long time.
a) rude b) polite c) bored d) honourable

9 The rich businessman treats his home .... kindly and also pays them well.
a) servants b) members
c) masters d) partners

10 There were several .... guarding the main gate of the army camp.
a) revolvers b) sailors c) soldiers d) instructors

11 The medicine had a slightly bitter ...., so the child refused to take it.
a) shape b) effect c) paste d) taste

12 Grandmother was a/an .... old woman, and we all valued her advice.
a) lazy b) wise
c) unreasonable d) wisely



للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.



• **Write an essay about how to feed people sustainably in the future.**

Tips for writing the essay

Introduction	Reasons for keeping sustainable food: - Increase in the population. - Decrease in food production.
Main body (1)	- A modern way to grow food. - Aeroponics, definition and basic rules.
Main body (2)	- Benefits of aeroponics to keep sustainable food.
Conclusion	- How aeroponics can secure sustainable food. - How it is better than traditional methods of agriculture.

Model Essay

There is a big shortfall between the amount of food we produce today and the amount needed to feed everyone in 2050. There will be nearly 10 billion people on Earth by 2050. Moreover, as incomes rise, people will consume more and more. At the same time, we urgently need to decrease greenhouse gas emissions from agricultural production and stop the destruction of the remaining forests on earth. Hence, we need innovative and new ways to keep sustainable food in the future.

One of the most innovative ways to grow food is aeroponics. It is the process of growing plants in an air or mist environment without the use of soil. The seeds are planted in pieces of foam stuffed into tiny pots, which are exposed to light on one end and nutrient mist on the other. The foam also holds the stem and root mass in place as the plants grow. The plant's roots are sprayed with a nutrient-rich water solution.

Aeroponics is suitable for growing many kinds of food. Tomatoes and herbs are the best examples. It enables us to grow food in all available spaces. Besides, the environment is kept free from pests and diseases so that the plants may grow healthier and more quickly. Last, it helps us save water resources.

Aeroponics is a better method of agriculture than traditional soil-based ones. It provides faster growth, and higher yields and also minimises or eliminates the need for herbicides and pesticides. It doesn't need special skills, so everyone can grow food wherever they find available space. In short, aeroponics is one of the most modern ways that can help us keep sustainable food in the future.

Practice



Practise more

Skills Exercises

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

African lions are larger than other big wild cats, including leopards, cheetahs and jaguars. In fact, only Asian tigers are bigger. The African lion is the only cat to live in cooperative groups. These groups are called prides. A pride usually has no more than three unrelated adult males. Together with adult females (lionesses) and young cubs[1], a pride has from three to over 30 members. The females are related, and they usually stay together for life.

Living in a pride gives African lions benefits other cats don't have. Other cats live alone, coming together only to mate. This means the mother must raise the young and provide all protection and food. African lion mothers, however, have a pride of lions to help. Pride members communicate vocally, by roaring, meowing, and snarling. They also use facial expressions, scent, and touch, including rubbing and licking.

The largest male lion's job is to protect the pride, especially the cubs. Males are usually gentle with cubs in their own pride, but not with the cubs in other prides. Females, meanwhile, do most of the hunting. With their smaller size, they can sneak closer to prey through tall savannah grasses. They hunt mostly during the night and in the early morning when the light is poor. Large, fast animals like zebras, buffalo, wildebeest, wild hogs, and gazelles are the lions' favourite prey. However, these fast animals often escape. So lions also hunt smaller animals, such as hares, birds, and reptiles[2]. They also use their size and numbers to steal dead prey from other predators, including cheetahs and leopards. That's why cheetahs drag their kills[3] to hiding places and leopards pull theirs into trees.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 According to the article, how are lions different from any other wild cats?
a) Lions are the largest wild cat species on earth.
b) Lions are the only wild cats that live in Africa.
c) Lions are the only wild cats that are endangered.
d) Lions are the only wild cats to live in cooperative groups.

2 What is one reason why female lions, the lionesses, do the hunting instead of the males?
a) The females run faster than the males and can catch up to their prey quicker.
b) The females are stronger than the males and can take down their prey easier.
c) The females are smaller than the males and can sneak closer to their prey in the tall savannah grasses.
d) The females have better eyesight than the males to spot prey easier.



(1) صغار الأسد (الأشبال)　(2) الزواحف　(3) قتلى

3 Lions hunt ....

a) large, fast animals only
b) smaller animals only
c) dead animals
d) both small and large animals

4 The synonym of the word "prey" is "................".

a) friend
b) victim
c) companion
d) mate

5 Living in groups is good for African mother lions because ....

a) the members of the group help them raise the cubs
b) the males are kind to them
c) they don't hunt, so they don't run
d) males take care of them

6 Cheetahs and leopards may hide their prey ....

a) to keep them fresh
b) to eat them with their families
c) to preserve them
d) because lions can eat the prey by force

7 The pride members can communicate in many ways except ....

a) odour
b) drawing
c) facial expressions
d) licking

8 The best title for the passage is "................".

a) The Life of the Lioness
b) The Species of Cats
c) The Prey
d) Prides and Individuals

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 In the last fifty years, technology has really changed the way farmers produce food. Agriculture is now developed with the help of machines that save time and effort.

a) فى الخمسين عامًا الماضية، غيرت التكنولوجيا حقًّا طريقة إنتاج المزارعين للغذاء. يتم الآن تطوير الزراعة بمساعدة الآلات التى تخزن الوقت والجهد.

b) فى الخمسين عامًا الماضية، غيرت التكنولوجيا حقًّا طريقة إنتاج المزارعين للغذاء. يتم الآن تطوير الزراعة بمساعدة الآلات التى توفر الوقت والجهد.

c) فى الخمسين عامًا الماضية، تغير التكنولوجيا حقًّا طريقة إنتاج المزارعين للغذاء. يتم الآن تطوير الزراعة بمساعدة الآلات التى توفر الوقت والجهد.

d) فى الخمسين عامًا الماضية، غيرت التكنولوجيا حقًّا طريقة إنتاج المزارعين للغذاء. يتم الآن زيادة الزراعة بمساعدة الآلات التى تحفظ الوقت والجهد.

2 Organising your life is a necessity if you want to achieve your most valuable goals. Well-organised people are the most successful and effective members in life.

a) يعد تنظيم حياتك أمرًا ضروريًا إذا كنت ترغب فى تحقيق أهدافك الأكثر قيمة فالأشخاص المنظمون جيدًا هم أكثر الأعضاء نجاحًا وفاعلية فى الحياة.

b) يعد تنظيم حياتك أمرًا فرعيا إذا كنت ترغب فى تحقيق أهدافك الأكثر ثمنا فالأشخاص المنظمون بجد هم أكثر الأعضاء نجادًا وفاعلية فى الحياة.

c) يعد تنظيم حياتك أمرًا قانونيا إذا كنت ترغب فى تحقيق أهدافك الأكثر قيمة فالأشخاص المنظمون جيدًا هم أكثر الأعضاء نجاحًا وفاعلية فى الحياة.

d) يعد تنظيم حياتك أمرًا ثانويا إذا كنت ترغب فى تحقيق أهدافك الأكثر قيمة فالأشخاص المنظمون جيدًا هم أكثر الأعضاء نجاحًا وفاعلية فى الحياة.

3 Egypt had its leading role in the economic, political, and educational fields, especially in the Middle East. Thus, we should try to help restore this role.

a) كان لمصـر دور متحكـم فى المجالات الاقتصادية والسياسـية والتعليمية وخاصة فى منطقة الشـرق الأوسـط وبالتالى، يجب أن نحاول المساعدة فى استعادة هذا الدور.

b) كان لمصـر دور ريـادى فى المجالات الاقتصادية والسياسـية والتعليمية وخاصة فى منطقة الشـرق الأوسـط وبالتالى، يجب أن نحاول المساعدة فى استعادة هذا الدور.

c) كان لمصـر دور ريـادى فى المجالات الاقتصادية والسياسـية والتعليمية وخاصة فى منطقة الشـرق الأوسـط وبالتالى، يجب أن نحاول المساعدة فى تصحيح هذا الدور.

d) كان لمصـر دور ريـادى فى المجالات الاقتصادية والسياسـية والتعليمية وخاصة فى منطقة الشـرق الأوسـط وبالتالى، يجب أن نحاول المساعدة فى امتلاك هذا الدور.

4 Mass media play an important role in forming public opinion and effective awareness in our country. Therefore, they should be used properly for useful purposes.

a) تلعب وسائل الإعلام دورًا مهمًا فى تكوين الأمر العام والوعى الفعال فى بلادنا، لذلك يجوز استخدامها بشكل صحيح لأغراض مفيدة.

b) تلعـب وسـائل الإعلام دورًا مهمًا فى تكوين الـرأى العام والوعى الفعال فى بلادنا، لذلك لا يجب اسـتخدامها بشكل صحيح لإسهامات مفيدة.

c) تلعـب وسـائل الإعلام دورًا مهمًا فى تكوين الـرأى العام والتعافى الفعال فى بلادنا، لذلك يمكن اسـتخدامها بشكل صحيح لأغراض مفيدة.

d) تلعب وسائل الإعلام دورًا مهمًا فى تكوين الرأى العام والوعى الفعال فى بلادنا، لذلك يجب استخدامها بشكل صحيح لأغراض مفيدة.

5 Scientists are always researching new methods of food production. They believe that without new and creative ways, the world will face severe hunger.

a) يبحث العلماء دائمًا عن اختراعات جديدة لإنتاج الغذاء وهم يعتقدون أنه بدون طرق جديدة ومبتكرة، سيواجه العالم الجوع الشديد.

b) يبحث العلماء دائمًا عن طرق جديدة لإنتاج الغذاء وهم يعتقدون أنه بدون طرق جديدة وفاعلة، سيواجه العالم الجوع الشديد.

c) يبحث العلماء دائمًا عن طرق جديدة لإنتاج الغذاء وهم يعتقدون أنه بدون طرق جديدة ومبتكرة، سيواجه العالم الجوع الشديد.

d) يبحث العلماء دائمًا عن طرق جديدة لإنتاج الغذاء وهم يعتقدون أنه بدون طرق جديدة ومبتكرة، سيواجه العالم العطش الشديد.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

6 من المهم أن يدرك المزارعون أهمية الحفاظ على الزراعة المسـتدامة للمحافظة على إمدادات الطعام لنا وللأجيال القادمة، وهكذا نستطيع حل مشكلة نقص الطعام.

a) It is important for farmers to recognize the importance of maintaining sustainable agriculture in order to maintain food supplies for us and for future generations. Thus we can solve the problem of food shortages.

b) It is important for farmers to realize the importance of maintaining attainable agriculture in order to maintaining food supplies for us and for future generations. Thus we can solve the problem of food shortages.

c) It is important for farmers to realize the importance of maintaining sustainable agriculture in order to maintain food supplies for us and for future generations. Thus we can solve the problem of food shortages.

d) It is important for farmers to recognize the importance of maintaining sustainable agriculture so that maintain food supplies for us and for future generations. Thus we can solve the problem of food efficiency.

7 لن أنتظرك فى محطة القطار لأننى سوف أكون فى دورة الشطرنج عندما تصل إلى القاهرة.

a) I didn't wait for you at the train station because I will be at the chess tour when you will arrive in Cairo.
b) I don't wait for you at the train station because I will be at the chess tournament when you will arrive in Cairo.
c) I won't wait for you at the train station because I will be at the chess tour when you arrived in Cairo.
d) I won't wait for you at the train station because I will be at the chess tournament when you arrive in Cairo.

8 أحد أخطر عيوب الكمبيوتر والتليفون المحمول توسيع الفجوة بين الشباب ووالديهم، حيث يقضون ساعات طويلة فى استخدامهما دون التواصل مع الوالدين والعائلة.

a) One of the most serious disadvantages of computers and mobile phones is the widening gap between young people and their parents, as they spend long hours using them without communicating with parents and family.
b) One of the most serious advantages of computers and mobile phones is the widening gap between young people and their parents, as they spend long hours using them without communicating with parents and family.
c) One of the most serious disadvantages of computers and mobile phones is the shortening gap between young people and their parents, as they spend long hours using them without contacting with parents and family.
d) One of the most serious disadvantages of computers and mobile phones is the widening gap between young people and their parents, as they spend long hours using them without connecting with parents and family.

9 عُرفت مصر على مر التاريخ بأنها أرض التسامح الدينى والتعايش بين المسلمين والمسيحيين الذين عاشوا بسلام لقرون عديدة مما يشكل عاملًا هامًا للوحدة بين شعبها.

a) Egypt has known throughout history as a land of religious tolerance and coexistence between Muslims and Christians who have lived in peace for many centuries, which is an important factor of unity among its people.
b) Egypt has known throughout history as a land of religious tolerance and coexistence between Muslims and Christians who have lived in piece for many centuries, which is an important factor of unity among its people.
c) Egypt has been known throughout history as a land of religious tolerance and coexistence between Muslims and Christians who have lived in peace for many centuries, which is an important factor of unity among its people.
d) Egypt has been known throughout history as a land of religious resistance and coexistence between Muslims and Christians who have lived in peace for many centuries, which is an important factor of work among its people.

10 لابد من وجود قوانين صارمة لمعاقبة كل المصانع التى تتلاعب بتاريخ انتهاء الصلاحية على عبوات منتجات الأغذية المختلفة؛ لما تمثله من خطر على صحة المواطنين وسلامة الغذاء.

a) There must be strict laws to punish all factories that play the expiry date on the packaging of various food products. It forms a threat to the health of citizens and food safety.

b) There must be strict laws to punish all factories that manipulate the production date on the packaging of various food products. It informs a threat to the health of citizens and food safety.

c) There must be strict laws to punish all factories that manipulate the expiry date on the packaging of various food recipes. It reforms a threat to the health of citizens and food safety.

d) There must be strict laws to punish all factories that manipulate the expiry date on the packaging of various food products. It forms a threat to the health of citizens and food safety.

3 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:
"Trees are very useful. As well as giving us food, what are their other benefits?"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. | I used the right structure. | I used a topic sentence. | I wrote the conclusion. | I used the right punctuation.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The food crisis which the war in Ukraine caused showed the importance of .... to assure food supply.
a) industry b) agriculture c) exploration d) deportation

2 Our teacher mixed two different chemicals with water to prepare the wanted ....
a) transmit b) transport c) solution d) deduction

3 The government is making great efforts to encourage .... in industry.
a) destruction b) deterioration c) innovation d) frustration

4 When my brother failed the test, my mother couldn't .... her anger and started yelling at him.
a) consist b) promote c) include d) contain

5 Most chemical factories are polluting and destroying the environment. The synonym of the word "destroy" is "......................".
a) damage b) inspect c) create d) establish

6 Farouk El-Baz is one of the greatest experts .... geology, especially in the field of remote sensing.
a) about b) for c) in d) with

7 A: Why are you switching on the TV? B: I .... a football match.
a) will watch b) watch
c) am watching d) am going to watch

8 When I see you tomorrow, I .... you my new book.
a) will show b) will be showing c) am showing d) show

9 I can't go shopping on Monday morning because I ....
a) will work b) may work
c) will be working d) will be worked

10 The population of the world .... to around ten billion by the year 2100.
a) will increase b) will be increasing
c) may be increasing d) increases

11 Ali .... a good job when he finishes his education.
a) may be getting b) will probably be getting
c) gets d) will probably get

12 Nader is going on holiday. This time tomorrow, he .... in the sea.

a) should swim b) will be swimming c) will swim d) may swim

13 I'm sorry, but you need to stay in the office until you .... your work.

a) have finished b) will finish c) are finishing d) had finished

14 When you .... off the train, I .... for you by the ticket machine.

a) get/will wait b) get/will be waiting
c) have got/will wait d) get/am going to wait

15 I .... you know as soon as the telegram ....

a) will let/arrives b) would let/arrives c) will let/arrived d) let/had arrived

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The weather forecast predicts what the temperature and air conditions will be like in the near future. There is a wide variety of types of weather. The weather can be sunny or stormy. It can be warm or cool. It can also be rainy, cloudy or windy. Sometimes, the weather is severe.

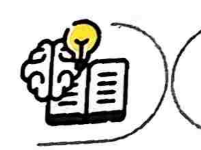
A blizzard[1], a thunderstorm or a hurricane may happen quickly. When we get information ahead of time, we can prepare for it. Being prepared helps us stay safe.

A meteorologist[2] is a person whose job is to forecast the weather. There are many tools available to help the meteorologist do his job. A common tool for getting an accurate measurement of the temperature is a thermometer. A high temperature probably means plenty of sunshine for everyone.

In the rainy weather, a meteorologist uses a rain gauge[3]. A rain gauge gives numerical data about how much rain is falling outdoors. After it rains, you may be able to see a rainbow. A rainbow appears when the sun comes out and there is still rain in the air.

The wind brings us the weather. It blows clouds from one place to another. It is helpful to know in which direction the wind is blowing. A wind vane[4] provides this information. Knowing the wind direction helps a meteorologist know what weather is coming.

Weather forecasts are not always right. As our knowledge about the weather gets better, the forecasts become more accurate.



(1) عاصفة ثلجية (2) عالم أرصاد الجوية (3) مقياس (4) دليل اتجاه الريح

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16 When we are prepared for the forthcoming blizzard, we will be ....

a) happy
b) safe
c) in danger
d) strong

17 The person whose job is to forecast the weather is called a ....

a) psychologist
b) philologist
c) monologist
d) meteorologist

18 When the sun comes out and there is still rain in the air, we can see a ....

a) rainbow
b) blizzard
c) thunderstorm
d) hurricane

19 The other meaning of "comes out" is "......................" .

a) hides
b) disappears
c) appears
d) eclipses

20 The weather forecast is ....

a) seeing the rainbow in the sky
b) having a lot of rain in a day
c) predicting the conditions of the weather
d) measuring the speed of the wind

21 If meteorologists don't have the gauge, ...

a) they won't predict the condition of the weather
b) they won't be able to measure the quantity of rain
c) they will work more effectively
d) the direction of the wind will be unknown

22 What is the relation between the wind and the weather?

a) The wind moves the sea waves.
b) The wind blows the clouds.
c) The wind raises the temperature.
d) The wind carries sand grains.

23 The writer's opinion about the weather forecast is that it ....

a) is not always right although it uses magic
b) is always right and accurate
c) is not always right and we need better knowledge about it
d) is not accurate at all and it is a waste of time

24 Choose the correct English translation:

- لقد فشلت كل محاولات هدم المجتمع المصرى بسبب الوحدة الوطنية التى تمثل عقبة كبيرة فى وجه كل من يحاول العبث باستقرار الشعب المصرى.

a) All attempts to demolish the Egyptian society have failed because of the national unit, which represents a major step in the face of anyone trying to tamper with the stability of the Egyptian people.

b) All attempts to demolish Egyptian society have failed because of the national unity, which presents a minor obstacle in the face of anyone trying to tamper with the stability of the Egyptian people.

c) All attempts to demolish Egyptian society have failed because of the national unity, which represents a major obstacle in the face of anyone trying to tamper with the stability of the Egyptian people.

d) All attempts to demolish Egyptian society have failed because of the national unity, which presents a major obstacle in the face of anyone trying to tamper with the steadiness of the Egyptian people.

25 Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Our society needs more individuals that possess good moral values in order to grow and develop the right way. Morals are really the good signs of a civilised society.

a) يحتاج مجتمعنا إلى المزيد من الأفراد الذين يبنون قيمًا أخلاقية جيدة من أجل النمو والتطور بالطريقة الصحيحة فالأخلاق هى حقًا علامات جيدة لمجتمع مثقف.

b) يحتاج مجتمعنا إلى المزيد من الأفراد الذين يمتلكون قيمًا أخلاقية جيدة من أجل النمو والتطور بالطريقة الصحيحة فالأخلاق هى حقًا علامات جيدة لمجتمع متحضر.

c) يحتاج مجتمعنا إلى القليل من الأفراد الذين يمتلكون قيمًا أخلاقية جيدة من أجل النمو والتطور بالطريقة الصحيحة فالأخلاق هى حقًا شارات جيدة لمجتمع متحضر.

d) يحتاج مجتمعنا إلى المزيد من الأفراد الذين يمتلكون قيمًا أخلاقية جيدة من أجل النمو والتطور بالطريقة العادية فالأخلاق هى حقًا علامات جيدة لمجتمع مثقف.

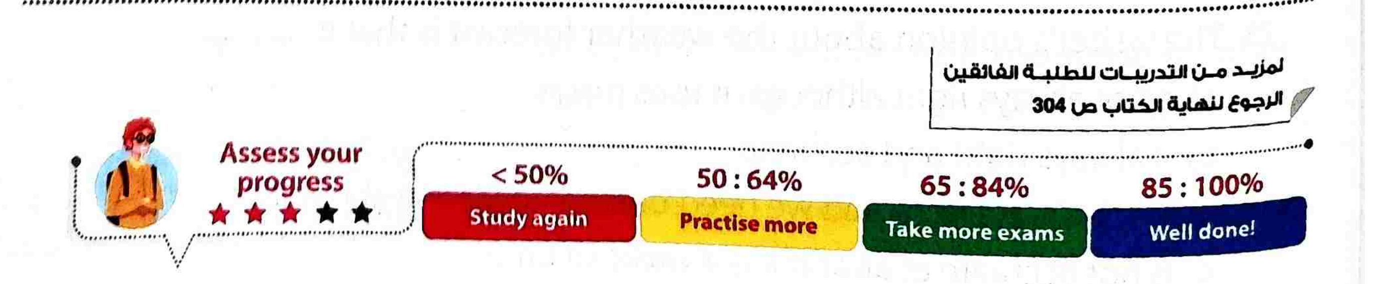
26 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"There have been several scientific inventions from time to time and these have made life more comfortable for human beings. Choose one or two of these inventions to talk about."

....

....

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين
الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 304



Changing English

Unit 4

Objectives

امسح الكود



استفد بمحتوى الوحدة الرقمى



Reading : An article about the effect of messaging on English today; Text messages; A text about Shakespeare and language; A blog post

Writing : A blog post about mobile phone use and its effects

Listening : A speaker talking about messaging tips on how to write a successful blog post

Speaking : A debate

Language : Reported speech: could/should have + past participle; reporting orders, requests and advice; abbreviations

Life Skills : Communication

Study  Watch a video

Part (1)
Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

abbreviation (n)	اختصار	linguist (n)	عالم لغويات
emoji (n)	رمز تعبيري	misunderstand (v)	يسيء الفهم
formal (adj)	رسمي	necessarily (adv)	بالضرورة
frown (v) (ed)	يكشر/يعبس	tone (n)	نبرة صوت
innovator (n)	مبدع		

Always speak in a friendly tone to your children.







لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك

Vocabulary on Reading & Listening Texts

acronym (n)	اختصار (أوائل حروف الكلمات)	conversation (n)	محادثة
actually (adv)	بالفعل	correctly (adv)	بشكل صحيح
admit (v) (ted)	يعترف	deal (v)	يتناول/يتعامل
adults (n)	كبار/بالغون	disadvantage (n)	عيب
advantage (n)	ميزة	everyday (adj)	يومي
app (n)	تطبيق	expression (n)	تعبير
appear (v) (ed)	يظهر	face-to-face (adj)	وجهًا لوجه
apply (v) (y ied)	يتقدم بطلب	facial (adj)	وجهي (بالوجه)
arrangement (n)	ترتيب	immediate (adj)	فوري
author (n)	مؤلف	increase (v) (d)	يزيد
basic (adj)	أساسي	lovely (adj)	جميل
basically (adv)	أساسًا	message (v) (d)	يرسل رسالة
chat (v) (ted)	يدردش	messaging (n)	المراسلة
communication (n)	اتصال/تواصل	personal (adj)	شخصي

positive (adj)	إيجابى	suitable (adj)	مناسب
punctuation (n)	علامات الترقيم	teenager (n)	مراهق
require (v) (d)	يتطلب	text message (n)	رسالة نصية
response (n)	رد/استجابة	warn (v) (ed)	يحذر
spelling (n)	الهجاء		

Workbook Vocabulary

ability (n)	قدرة	online (adj) (adv)	على الإنترنت
blog (n)	مدونة	parcel (n)	طرد بريدى
care (v) (d)	يهتم	post (v) (ed) (n)	ينشر/منشورًا (على صفحات التواصل)
copy (n) (v) (y ied)	نسخة/ينسخ	regret (v) (ted)	يأسف/يندم
fail (v) (ed)	يفشل	reply (v) (y ied)	يرد
fantastic (adj)	رائع	request (n)	طلب
gift (n)	هدية	selfie (n)	صورة شخصية أمامية
mark (n)	درجة/علامة	voice (n)	صوت بشرى
meeting (n)	اجتماع		

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 A/An .... is someone who studies or teaches the science of languages.
a) linguist b) botanist c) astrologist d) author

2 In English, 'Dr' is written as a/an .... of 'Doctor'.
a) form b) emoji c) abbreviation d) replacement

3 You are so lucky to live here with all this .... countryside around you.
a) hateful b) lovely c) confusing d) pleased

4 My family have been a very .... influence on me and helped me succeed in life.
a) passive b) reflexive c) negative d) positive

5 A/An .... agreement between the two countries was signed to end the conflict.

a) normal b) formal c) informal d) expressive

6 Most people nowadays are aware of some of the .... rules of healthy living.

a) distant b) extra c) additional d) basic

7 Online shopping .... less time and effort than going around the shops.

a) requires b) acquires c) inquires d) protects

8 When Wael behaved badly, his mother .... and shook her head.

a) frowned b) laughed c) regretted d) chatted

9 Not speaking English is a/an .... for you on applying for the job at a foreign company.

a) advantage b) merit c) disadvantage d) expression

10 After questioning استجواب, the criminal .... the murder and was sent to prison.

a) expressed b) warned c) disbelieved d) admitted

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

get upset	ينزعج	pass an exam	يجتاز اختبارًا
have much fun	يستمتع كثيرًا	post personal information	ينشر معلومات شخصية
introduce new ideas	يقدم أفكارًا جديدة	stay in touch with	يبقى على اتصال مع
make communication quicker	يجعل الاتصالات أسرع	take a selfie	يلتقط صورة شخصية (أمامية)
advice about	نصيحة بشأن	go back	يرجع
apply for	يتقدم بطلب لـ	increase in	زيادة في
chat with	يدردش مع	talk to	يتحدث إلى
deal with	يتعامل مع	thank ... for	يشكر على

Messages Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Full Form	Meaning
1. LOL	Laugh out loud	اضحك عاليًا
2. cul8r	See you later	أراك فيما بعد
3. gr8	Great!	رائع
4. plz	Please	من فضلك
5. idk	I don't know	لا أعرف
6. 2moro	Tomorrow	غدًا
7. thx	Thank you	شكرًا
8. ASAP	As soon as possible	بأسرع ما يمكن

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
communicate	يتواصل	communication	اتصال/تواصل	communicative	اتصالى
express*	يعبر عن	expression	تعبير	expressive	معبر
fail	يفشل	failure	فشل/شخص فاشل	failing	فاشل
innovate	يبدع	innovation innovator	إبداع مبدع	innovative	إبداعى
regret	يأسف/يندم	regret	أسف/ندم	regretful regrettable	نادم يؤسف عليه
require	يتطلب	requirement	متطلب	required	مطلوب
warn	يحذر	warning	تحذير	warning	تحذيرى

- I'd like to express my gratitude to you.
- Your expression is meaningful and clear.
- Teachers' language should be expressive.



Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym	المضاد
basic	أساسى	main/primary	minor/extra	فرعى/إضافى
care	يهتم	pay attention/consider	ignore/disregard	يتجاهل/يستهين
deal	يتعامل	handle	refuse/deny	يرفض/ينكر
frown	يكشر/لا يستحسن	disapprove/pout	approve/smile	يقبل/يبتسم
misunderstand	يسىء الفهم	misjudge	understand/perceive	يفهم
regret	يأسف/يندم	repent	praise/delight	يمدح/يفرح
request	طلب	demand/seek	reply/answer	يرد
require	يتطلب	need/desire	offer/dislike	يعرض/يكره
response	رد/استجابة	reaction	request/question	طلب/تساؤل
warn	يحذر	alert	mislead/ignore	يخدع/يتجاهل

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 She lacks the most basic skills necessary for the job. The synonym for the word "basic" is "................." .
a) minor b) main c) extra d) unnecessary

2 When I was in Paris, I .... a selfie in front of the Eiffel Tower.
a) did b) left c) made d) took

3 Mona spent a long time talking .... her grandmother as she likes her much.
a) on b) in c) to d) for

4 The economic expert .... many new ideas about solving the present problems.
a) implied b) refused c) introduced d) agreed

5 Fortunately, I was able to .... in touch with most of my secondary school friends.

a) stay b) waste c) lose d) save

6 The call centre worker apologised to me and said that not all complaints are dealt .... so easily.

a) at b) with c) for d) away

7 Pets require a lot of care and attention. The verb "require" is similar in meaning to "................".

a) need b) refuse c) apply d) inspect

8 There has been a big increase .... the prices of many exported goods in the last few months.

a) with b) by c) to d) in

9 When it was first introduced, the electric car was described as one of the ten most .... products of the year.

a) innovate b) innovates c) innovative d) innovation

10 We discussed different ways of dealing with the customers' complaints. The verb "deal" is the opposite in meaning of "................".

a) reply b) handle c) deny d) inquire

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات الآتية واستخداماتها.

1

everyday (adj)	يومي (صفة يأتي بعدها اسم)	Exercise should be part of your everyday activities.
every day (adv)	كل يوم (ظرف)	My father drives us to school every day.

2

communicate	يتواصل/يتفاهم	People use more than words when they communicate with each other.
contact	يتصل بـ/يحتك بـ/اتصال	- As my friend is abroad, we contact by email. - There is very little contact between the two cities.
connect	يصل/يربط بين شيئين	The railway connects Cairo with most cities in Egypt.

3 **make** يستخدم الفعل (make) بمعنى يجعل باكثر من صيغة:	1. make + مفعول + (to) مصدر الفعل بدون - We make our children read simple stories. 2. make + مفعول + adjective - The actor's new film made him famous. 3. make + مفعول + adjective + (to) + مصدر الفعل - The internet makes it easy to communicate with our friends.

meeting اجتماع (لأشخاص غالبًا ينتمون لمكان واحد)	The staff are having a meeting next week to discuss the company's problems.
conference مؤتمر (لأشخاص غالبًا من أماكن مختلفة)	The Arab Summit Conference is held in March every year.
4 **interview** مقابلة شخصية (لوظيفة/صحافة/إذاعة)	- Mary has an interview next week for a teaching job in Paris. - A famous reporter is having an interview with the president tonight.
appointment موعد (مع شخص/طبيب)	I'd like to make an appointment to see the doctor.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Egypt successfully hosted the UN Climate Change .... in November 2022.
a) Meeting b) Conference c) Interview d) Appointment

2 These three parts of the brain are closely ....
a) connected b) contacted c) communicated d) chattered

3 The internet has become part of all young people's .... life.
a) every day b) everyday c) day d) days

4 My parents always .... my little brother do his homework before going to bed.
a) make b) advise c) blame d) ask

5 Ferial Ashraf has had many .... on TV channels since she became an Olympic champion.
a) reviews b) conferences c) interviews d) meetings

Practice



Vocabulary
General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 A/An .... is an icon used in electronic messages and on websites.
a) picture b) emoji c) number d) app

2 Our boss is very ...., he doesn't call anyone by their first name.
a) personal b) cheerful c) patient d) formal

3 Mrs Ashraf .... at her children, who were getting mud all over their clothes.
a) smiled b) rewarded c) frowned d) introduced

4 Sayed Darwish was one of the greatest .... of the 20th century music.
a) players b) editors c) explorers d) innovators

5 Our neighbour is an excellent .... who teaches French at Cairo University.
a) linguist b) astronomer c) astronaut d) biologist

6 Education must .... be about learning and developing skills.
a) correctly b) improbably c) necessarily d) excitedly

7 The headmaster kept his .... friendly with the students who came to talk to him about the school trip.
a) sound b) tone c) intention d) note

8 Many children enter kindergarten without .... skills of knowing colours, letters and numbers.
a) improper b) unimportant c) trivial d) basic

9 Television, radio and other forms of mass .... have made the world a global village.
a) punctuation b) connection c) affection d) communication

10 People whose job .... staying up late suffer a lot in life.
a) appears b) inquires c) requires d) applies

11 Some recent studies .... against drinking too much caffeine.
a) recommend b) fail c) deal d) warn

12 Being tall gave the young player a/an .... over the other players.
a) disadvantage b) care c) advantage d) experience

13 I drank coffee with my friend and .... about our experiences at work.
a) copied b) chatted c) admitted d) read

14 Choosing a new car is a matter of .... preference which differs from one to another.
a) personal b) common c) public d) general

15 The cost of the trip to Sharm El Sheikh is 1000 pounds for .... and 500 pounds for children.
a) enemies b) foreigners c) adults d) babies

16 A .... is a young person between thirteen and nineteen years old.
a) kid b) teenager c) grown up d) toddler

17 She warned us not to go too close to the fire. The verb "warn" is a synonym for the verb ".....................".
a) apply b) ignore c) deny d) alert

18 There was an .... of fear on the child's face when he/she saw the lion.
a) express b) expression c) expressive d) expressing

19 I usually use Facebook and Twitter to .... in touch with all my friends.
a) lose b) miss c) pass d) stay

20 I really .... upset when father cancelled our trip to Alexandria because he had to go to work.
a) took b) made c) got d) did

21 The police fired a number of .... shots to make the people move away.
a) warn b) warning c) warring d) warned

22 A customer service clerk must be good at dealing .... people of different ages.
a) in b) at c) with d) of

23 My daughter is in the habit of .... a selfie in each place she visits for the first time.
a) taking b) doing c) drawing d) making

24 Working hard all the year-round will help you .... all exams.
a) succeed b) pass c) fail d) degrade

25 He seemed to approve of my choice. The verb "approve" is an antonym for the verb ".....................".
a) agree b) accept c) frown d) expire

26 Nowadays, mass media helps us .... with each other easily. *(Longman)*
a) connect b) communicate c) join d) link

27 Messaging language may be fun to use with friends, but it isn't suitable for .... emails. *(Longman)*
a) formal b) informal c) foreign d) fluent

28 A .... is the change in your voice that shows what you are feeling or thinking. *(Longman)*
a) tan b) tune c) ton d) tone

29 This young man is a/an ....; he isn't afraid to try something new. He introduces changes and new ideas. *(Longman)*
a) innovator b) discoverer c) explorer d) surveyor

30 The language of text messages doesn't .... correct spelling. *(Longman)*
a) inquire b) acquire c) require d) enquire



Direct Speech الكلام المباشر

- هو الكلام الذى يأتى على لسان الشخص مباشرة كما ينطقه هو، ويوضع الكلام المباشر بين علامات اقتباس " ".

My brother said to me, "Call me when you go home".

Indirect/Reported Speech الكلام غير المباشر

- الكلام غير المباشر هو نقل كلام شخص فى وقت غير وقت الكلام وهذا يستلزم تغيير الأزمنة والضمائر والظروف الزمنية وظروف المكان.

My brother asked me to call him when I went home.

Reporting orders, requests and advice تحويل الأمر والطلب والنصيحة إلى غير المباشر

لتحويل الأمر والطلب والاقتراح والنصيحة لغير المباشر

١) يتحول فعل القول فى الجملة الأمرية إلى أحد الأفعال الآتية:

advise	ينصح	invite	يدعو
ask	يسأل	order	يأمر
encourage	يشجع	teach	يعلم
expect	يتوقع	tell	يخبر
help	يساعد	want	يريد
instruct	يوجه/يعلم	warn	يحذر

٢) تُلغى علامات الاقتباس فى الجملة الأمرية المحولة ونربطها بـ to/not to ويأتى بعدهما المصدر.

The teacher said to us, "Stop talking."

The teacher told/asked/ordered us to stop talking.

My mother said to me, "If I were you, I'd have a holiday and relax."

My mother advised me to have a holiday and relax.

My father said to me, "Don't waste time."

My father advised me not to waste time.

Ali said to his friend, "Study science at university."

Ali encouraged his friend to study science at university.



• لكى تختار بين to أو not to يجب أن ترجع بالجملة إلى أصلها قبل التحويل فهناك أفعال ممكن أن تتحير فى الربط بعدها لأن المعنى باللغة العربية يمكن أن يتماشى مع الجملة مثل:

He warned his daughter (to/not to) walk in the dark alone.

• فلربما تترجم وتقول: «هو حذر ابنته أن تمشى فى الظلام» وتختار to وهذا خطأ لأن أصل الجملة إما مثبت فنختار to أو منفى فنختار not to وأصل الجملة هنا هو «Don't walk ...» فيكون الاختيار بالطبع not to.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The flight attendant instructed us .... our safety belts before taking off.

a) not to fasten
b) fastening
c) to fasten
d) don't fasten

2 My friend advised me .... nervous before the sports match.

a) not to be
b) to be
c) be
d) that I be

3 Ola said to Reham," .... the hotel your CV to apply for the job".

a) Not to send
b) To send
c) Sending
d) Send

4 Fatma .... Huda to revise for the test.

a) said
b) advised
c) encouraged
d) both b & c

5 The teacher warned the students .... to write their names at the top of the page.

a) to forget
b) forgetting
c) not to forget
d) that they forget

could/couldn't + inf.

A) could + inf.

- **Refers to the general ability to do something in the past.**

استطاعة فعل شيء في الماضي مقدرة بوجه عام وبدون مجهود.

Our team could beat the star team last week.

للمقدرة في موقف معين نستخدم : was/were able to – managed to

Sameh and Kareem played a match yesterday. Kareem played well, but Sameh managed to beat him.

B) couldn't + inf.

1. **Unable to do something in the past.**

عدم استطاعة فعل شيء في الماضي.

I couldn't get the full mark in maths yesterday as the exam was for giants.

2. **It was forbidden/against the law.**

لم أستطع لأنه كان غير قانوني.

I couldn't park in Adly Street as parking wasn't allowed there.

could/couldn't have + P.P.

- تستخدم could have + P.P. كالآتي:

A) could have + P.P.

1. **Something was possible in the past.**

شيء كان ممكنا حدوثه في الماضي (احتمال ضعيف) تساوي might

My friend was absent yesterday. He could/might have been ill.

I didn't see Omar at the party last night. He could have left early.

2. **Someone had the ability to do something that they didn't do.**

كان في مقدور شخص أن يفعل شيئا، ولكن لم يفعل، وتستخدم للانتقاد أحيانا.

We travelled to Aswan by train. We could have travelled by plane.

You didn't pass the exam. You could have studied harder.

B) couldn't have + P.P. تستخدم couldn't have + P.P. كالآتى:



Something wasn't possible in the past.

شيء لم يكن محتملًا حدوثه فى الماضى أو مستحيلًا.

- My father's keys are on the table. He couldn't have gone to work by car.

لاحظ أن معنى couldn't have + P.P. هو نفس معنى الاستنتاج المنفى فى الماضى can't have + P.P.

- He couldn't/can't have known about the party from me. I haven't told anyone yet!



أيضا يمكن استخدام could/couldn't have + P.P. :

After wish/If only to refer to the past.

بعد wish/If only للتعبير عن أمنية لم تتحقق أو ندم فى الماضى.

- I wish I could have helped but I was so busy that I didn't have the time.
- I wish I couldn't have bought that expensive mobile.

If ⟶ past perfect ⟶ could/couldn't have + P.P.

فى جواب شرط الحالة الثالثة بعد if.

- If he had known that I was ill, he could have visited me.
- Unless he had woken up early, he couldn't have caught the train.

Language Check point 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I can't play football now, but I .... when I was younger.
a) couldn't b) could have
c) should have d) could

2 The copier isn't working. You .... the ink in a wrong way.
a) should have changed b) could change
c) couldn't have changed d) could have changed

3 If Sami had trained harder, he .... well.
a) should have played b) could have played
c) played d) couldn't have played

4 He .... at work yesterday. I looked for him in all buildings.
a) shouldn't have been b) could have been
c) couldn't have been d) could be

5 I was so sick yesterday that I .... get out of my bed.
a) can't b) couldn't c) shouldn't d) could

should/shouldn't have + P.P.

A) should have + P.P./ought to have + P.P.

- We use should have/ought to have + past participle to talk about things we regret.

تستخدم should have/ought to have + past participle للتعبير عن الندم (كان ينبغى فعل شىء لم نفعله).

He was thirsty during the trip. He should have bought more water.

I ought to have left earlier to catch the train. I will take the next one.

B) shouldn't have + P.P./oughtn't to have + P.P.

- We use shouldn't/oughtn't to have + P.P. to express feeling sorry about something that happened in the past.

تستخدم shouldn't/oughtn't to have + P.P. للندم على شىء تم/حدث فى الماضى (لم يكن واجبًا فعله).

I shouldn't have insulted him. He was angry and I'm sorry.

She oughtn't to have revealed her friend's secret. She was dishonest.

Language Check point 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 There were so many people in the house. .... his father before inviting all his friends?
a) He should have asked b) Should he have asked
c) Should he ask d) He should ask

2 He is so ill. I think they .... a doctor earlier.
a) shouldn't have consulted b) couldn't have consulted
c) should consult d) should have consulted

3 I .... Ali during his sleeping hours, but I forgot.
a) shouldn't have phoned b) couldn't have phoned
c) could have phoned d) should have phoned

4 You should have been nicer to Asmaa. She was furious. This is a kind of ....
a) suggestion b) regret c) blame d) offer

5 It is his wish that the money .... to charity.
a) should have given b) should be given
c) should give d) should have been given

Practice



Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The doctor .... me to drink plenty of water.
a) warned b) suggested c) begged d) told

2 You .... the boat if you had been here at one o'clock, but it's gone now and it's too late.
a) could have caught b) could catch
c) might catch d) shouldn't have caught

3 They .... to China 3 years ago because of COVID-19.
a) could go b) couldn't have gone
c) should have gone d) should go

4 Fatma .... phoned me before going out. It was desirable.
a) shouldn't have b) needn't have
c) should have d) must have

5 I was sitting at the back of the theatre and .... very well.
a) shouldn't hear b) can't hear
c) shouldn't have heard d) couldn't hear

6 She warned her daughter .... near the campfire because it was dangerous.
a) not to go b) to go c) that she go d) going

7 Samir was an excellent tennis player when he was younger. He .... anybody.
a) couldn't have beaten b) could beat
c) can beat d) shouldn't beat

8 He .... much harder during the term. He wasted much time.
a) should work b) shouldn't have worked
c) should have worked d) could work

9 Ahmed's father advised him .... the front door at night.
a) locking b) that he locking c) to lock d) for locking

10 My brother .... to Cambridge University, but he decided to study in Egypt.
a) shouldn't have gone b) could have gone
c) could go d) couldn't have gone

11 I .... more quickly if my suitcase hadn't been heavy.
a) could walk b) shouldn't have walked
c) walked d) could have walked

12 **The situation was bad, and it .... worse if he insisted on his ideas.**

a) could have been
b) should have been
c) shouldn't have been
d) could be

13 **I didn't want to delay Osama, so I asked him ....**

a) to wait for me if I'm late
b) not to wait for me if I was late
c) to wait for me if I was late
d) not to wait for me if I'm late

14 **You .... yourself yesterday. It was the right thing to do, but you didn't do it.**

a) could behave
b) shouldn't behave
c) ought to have behaved
d) shouldn't have behaved

15 **The tour guide warned the tourists .... into the desert on their own.**

a) going
b) to go
c) that they go
d) not to go

16 **If I had known about the traffic problems, I .... a different route.**

a) might have taken
b) could take
c) might take
d) couldn't have taken

17 **I wasted the time doing nothing at the airport. I .... a book to read.**

a) shouldn't have brought
b) should have brought
c) could bring
d) should bring

18 **Galal was lucky. He .... hurt himself when he fell, but he was OK.**

a) could
b) should have
c) couldn't have
d) could have

19 **What made the police suspicious مرتاب was that I .... the number of my own car.**

a) shouldn't have remembered
b) should remember
c) couldn't remember
d) could have remembered

20 **You .... bought a new camera; it wasn't necessary. I could have lent you mine.**

a) should have
b) could have
c) must have
d) shouldn't have

21 **I missed the first lecture; I .... up late last night.**

a) shouldn't have stayed
b) could have stayed
c) should have stayed
d) needn't stay

22 **My mother always advises us .... avoid making friends with bad people.**

a) not to
b) don't
c) to
d) to not

23 **I travelled by train. I .... by car, but I felt too tired to drive.**

a) had to travel
b) could have travelled
c) might have travelled
d) have to travel

24 **The teacher told us to do the exercise. This shows ....**

a) order
b) persuasion
c) punishment
d) negative advice

25 **We .... meat when we went to the market; it was possible, but we preferred to buy fish.**

a) shouldn't have bought
b) could have bought
c) needn't buy
d) couldn't have bought

26 **It wasn't good of you to leave me in that critical situation. You .... me.**

a) could phone
b) should have phoned
c) should phone
d) shouldn't have phoned

27 **The fire spread through the building very quickly, but fortunately everybody .... escape.**

a) managed to
b) should
c) must
d) could

28 **Ola was going to the shop, so I .... her to get me some flour and sugar.**

a) warned
b) suggested
c) advised
d) asked

29 **The building was empty when the firemen entered. The workers .... through the exit doors.**

a) couldn't have escaped
b) shouldn't have escaped
c) were able to escape
d) can't have escaped

30 **He .... his son not to make friends with bad people.**

a) spoke
b) warned
c) suggested
d) recommended

31 **My son applied for a job as an accountant, but he .... his own business.**

a) could have set up
b) could set up
c) must have set up
d) had to set up

32 **"Could" is used at present to function as a .... and suggestion.**

a) necessity
b) blame
c) prohibition
d) request

33 **The opposing team were struggling all the time to win, but we .... beat them at the end.**

a) might
b) managed to
c) can
d) should have

34 **You .... punished her. She didn't deserve it.**

a) needn't have
b) couldn't have
c) oughtn't to have
d) mustn't have

35 **Choose the grammatically correct answer:**

a) I warned my daughter to avoid walking in dark streets alone.
b) I warned my daughter to walk in dark streets alone.
c) I warned my daughter not to avoid walking in dark streets alone.
d) I warned my daughter not to walking in dark streets alone.

Test yourself



Part (1)
(Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 He said that his first reaction was shock. The word "reaction" is similar in meaning to the noun ....
a) response b) activity c) ability d) relaxation

2 My mother .... upset when I told her that I lost my mobile at school.
a) made b) turned c) got d) grew

3 My father believes that religion has a .... influence on our society as it helps implanting morals.
a) unknown b) passive c) positive d) negative

4 Some distant villages in Africa lack .... services such as water and electricity.
a) minor b) unimportant c) trivial d) basic

5 Mohamed .... angrily when he read the letter that the office sent him.
a) smiled b) rewarded c) frowned d) introduced

6 It took the company a week to reply to my letter. The verb "reply" can be the opposite to the verb ....
a) accept b) request c) offer d) answer

7 We all .... about our children and hate to see them hurt in any way.
a) care b) ignore c) devise d) behave

8 The young couple gave each other some .... at Christmas.
a) prizes b) gifts c) emojis d) marks

9 Many people don't buy newspapers anymore as they read them ....
a) everyday b) inline c) offline d) online

10 The postman brought a/an .... and some letters for you.
a) icon b) sale c) parcel d) invention

11 I .... selling my car. It was the worst decision I've ever made.
a) regret b) admit c) recommend d) wish

12 It is said that dolphins use sound to .... with each other.
a) contact b) connect c) communicate d) link

13 All staff members are expected to attend the next important .... about the company's future.
a) conference b) interview c) meeting d) appointment

14 You should .... for the job of a receptionist in person as there will be a primary interview.
a) deal b) apply c) comply d) imply

15 The customer complained that he .... the store six weeks ago and didn't receive his order yet.
a) messaged b) warned c) chatted d) regretted

Language

16 **Sara's mother warned her .... the oven because it was hot.**
a) not to touch b) to touch c) touching d) don't touch

17 **I .... my car in a "No parking area". I had to pay a fine.**
a) shouldn't have parked b) couldn't have parked
c) couldn't park d) shouldn't park

18 **He has got 80% only. He .... 90% if he had studied more.**
a) could get b) should have got
c) must have got d) could have got

19 **The policeman instructed the people .... so fast.**
a) not to drive b) to drive c) that drive d) driving

20 **I got up late this morning; I .... up late last night.**
a) should have stayed b) could have stayed
c) shouldn't have stayed d) needn't stay

21 **I phoned the plumber because I .... smell gas in the kitchen.**
a) can b) could c) managed to d) couldn't

22 **Habiba .... the book, but she borrowed it from the library instead.**
a) could buy b) shouldn't have bought
c) could have bought d) was able to

23 **The teacher warned the students .... to write their name at the top of the page.**
a) to forget b) forgetting
c) not to forget d) that they forget

24 **Our neighbours .... down the tree in their garden. It was a really beautiful tree.**
a) shouldn't have cut b) mustn't have cut
c) could have cut d) could cut

25 **A: I had to walk home yesterday. I had no money for my fare.**
B: Why didn't you tell me! I .... you the money!
a) shouldn't have lent b) couldn't have lent
c) could have lent d) could lend

26 **................. you speak French when you went to the university in Paris or did you learn later?**
a) Can b) Could c) Couldn't d) Should

27 **I .... to .... by a doctor.**
a) was advised/see b) was advised/be seen
c) advised/be seen d) advised/see

28 **My cousin .... read and write when he was five.**
a) can b) must c) may d) could

29 **His health condition got worse and worse. He .... a doctor earlier.**
a) shouldn't have seen b) ought to have seen
c) could see d) shouldn't see

30 **The boys .... left school before the end of the day. They were punished.**
a) shouldn't have b) must be
c) should have d) could have been

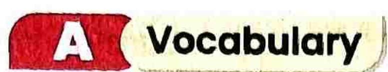
Study



Watch a video

Part (2)

Lessons 3 & 4



A Vocabulary





لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك

Vocabulary on Reading and Listening Texts

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
anymore (adv)	لم يعد	modern (adj)	حديث/عصرى
blog post (n)	منشور على مدونة	partner (n)	شريك/رفيق
check (v) (ed)	يراجع/يفحص	prefix (n)	بادئة (مقطع يُضاف لأول الكلمة)
cite (v) (d)	ينوه/يذكر	procedure (n)	إجراء
conclusion (n)	خاتمة/خلاصة	proper (adj)	مناسب/صحيح
debate (n)	مناظرة	receive (v) (d)	يتسلم/يتلقى
disagree (v) (d)	يعترض/يخالف	section (n)	قسم
findings (n)	اكتشافات	society (n)*	مجتمع
frequently (adv)	بشكل متكرر	sub-heading (n)	عنوان فرعى
grandparents (n)	أجداد	suffix (n)	لاحقة (مقطع يُضاف لآخر الكلمة)
headline (n)	عنوان	thesaurus (n)	موسوعة مفردات
image (n)	صورة	tips (n)	نصائح
key (adj)	رئيسى	uncomfortable (adj)	غير مريح

We should follow the customs of our **society** or at least respect them.

Workbook Vocabulary

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
age (n)	عمر/عصر	hobby (n)	هواية
aim (n)	هدف	interest (n) (v) (ed)	اهتمام/يثير اهتمامًا
Angles (n)	قبائل الأنجلو الإنجليزية	Latin (n) (adj)	اللغة اللاتينية/لاتينى
comment (n) (v) (ed)	تعليق/يعلق	member (n)	عضو/فرد
compare (v) (d)	يقارن	powerful (adj)	قوى/ذو نفوذ
Greek (adj)	يونانى	recognisable (adj)	يمكن تمييزه/مميز
helicopter (n)	طائرة مروحية هليكوبتر	record (n) (v) (ed)	سجل/يسجل

remain (v) (ed)	يبقى/يظل	site (n)	موقع
report (n) (v) (ed)	تقرير/يبلغ عن تقرير	social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
result (n)	نتيجة	summarise (v) (d)	يلخص
reuse (v) (d)	يعيد استخدام	survey (n)	دراسة/تقييم
Romans (n)	الرومان	title (n)	عنوان
Russian (n) (adj)	روسى	Vikings (n)	غزاة الشمال (الفايكنج)
Saxons (n)	قبائل الساكسون الإنجليزية		

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The head teacher has .... several calls from angry parents about the condition of the school bus.
a) received b) disagreed c) sent d) designed

2 A number of well-known film directors have expressed .... in turning the novel into a film.
a) debate b) interest c) invention d) discovery

3 The government aims at delivering .... care and treatment to people in the countryside.
a) probable b) recognisable c) proper d) careless

4 Facebook and Twitter are the most famous social .... websites.
a) competition b) service c) course d) media

5 All the staff and students need to be trained about safety .... during earthquakes.
a) products b) production c) procedures d) records

6 I just had time to scan the newspaper .... before leaving for work.
a) captions b) headlines c) articles d) analysis

7 Mohamed Salah played a/an .... role in Liverpool's winning seasons.
a) key b) minor c) unimportant d) aimless

8 There is no reason to doubt the information in the articles .... above.
a) searched b) removed c) recorded d) cited

9 The chef said that you must stir the sauce .... to avoid burning.
a) annually b) rarely c) frequently d) politely

10 The assistant told us that the frozen-foods .... is in the back of the shop.
a) section b) carriage c) aisle d) route

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

at that time	في ذلك الوقت	give an opinion	يعطي رأيًا
do the same	يفعل نفس الشيء	in general	بشكل عام
ever since	منذ ذلك الحين	keep in touch with	يبقى على اتصال مع
feel special	يشعر أنه مميز	make different sounds	يصدر أصواتًا مختلفة
give advice	يعطي نصيحة	take notes	يدون ملاحظات
add to/into	يضيف إلى	take ... away	يأخذ بعيدا عن
disagree with	لا يتفق مع	talk about	يتحدث عن
suitable for	مناسب لـ		

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
compare	يقارن	comparison	مقارنة	comparative	مقارن
disagree	يخالف/يعترض	disagreement	عدم اتفاق	disagreeable	غير مستحب
find	يجد	finding	اكتشاف	found	مكتشف
interest	يثير الاهتمام	interest	اهتمام	interesting interested	شيق مهتم
recognise	يتعرف على/يميز	recognition	تمييز	recognisable	مميز (يمكن تمييزه)
record	يسجل	record	سجل	recorded recordable	مسجل قابل للتسجيل

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
compare	يقارن	contrast/analyse	discard/neglect	يستبعد/يهمل
debate	مناظرة	argument/controversy	agreement/harmony	اتفاق/انسجام
interest	اهتمام	concern/passion	indifference/boredom	لا مبالاة/ملل
modern	حديث/عصري	contemporary/modernised	old/ancient	قديم

procedure	إجراء	method/proceeding	inaction/inactivity	عدم إجراء/عدم نشاط
proper	مناسب/صحيح	convenient/suitable	improper/inappropriate	غير مناسب
recognisable	مميز	definite/obvious	ambiguous/indefinite	غامض/غير محدد
report	يبلغ	inform/record	hide/conceal	يخفى
survey	دراسة/تقييم	analysis/inquiry	negligence	إهمال

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I didn't recognise you in your uniform. The noun of the verb "recognise" is ....
a) recognised b) recognisable c) recognisably d) recognition

2 I am worried about my car as the engine is .... different and strange sounds.
a) making b) doing c) taking d) replying

3 A special expert .... the young graduates advice about finding a suitable job.
a) made b) gave c) devised d) took

4 I chose the quiet resort because it is particularly suitable .... families.
a) in b) on c) for d) at

5 In ...., Japanese cars are very reliable and breakdowns are rare.
a) advance b) public c) private d) general

6 The students continually .... notes during the lecture of the foreign professor as it was valuable.
a) inspected b) gave c) took d) received

7 Some people disagree with this argument. The noun from the verb "disagree" is "..................".
a) disagrees b) disagreement c) disagreed d) disagreeable

8 There was a wider debate on the issue of violence. The antonym of the word "debate" is "..................".
a) agreement b) controversy c) argument d) denial

9 It's right and proper that his family should be present at graduation. The synonym of the adjective "proper" is "..................".
a) improper b) doubtful c) suitable d) inappropriate

10 A recent survey has recorded over 116 species of plants. The noun "survey" is similar in meaning to the noun ....
a) satisfaction b) distention c) neglect d) analysis

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات الآتية واستخداماتها.

Notes on Vocabulary

1

prefix

البادئة هي جزء من كلمة تضاف قبل الكلمة لتعطى معنى جديدًا ومنها (mis – re – un)، واستخدام كل منها كما هو موضح بالجدول:

Prefix	Meaning	Examples	
mis	تعطى معنى يسىء	misunderstand يسىء الفهم	misuse يسىء الاستخدام
re	تعطى معنى مرة ثانية	reread يعيد قراءة	rewrite يعيد كتابة
un	تعطى العكس	undo يلغى العمل	unrecognisable لا يمكن تمييزه

suffix

اللاحقة هي مقاطع تضاف إلى آخر الكلمة لتكوين كلمة جديدة لإعطاء معنى جديد أو لتحديد نوع الكلمة، ومنها (able - er - less)، واستخدام كل منها كما هو موضح بالجدول:

Suffix	Meaning	Examples	
able	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	understandable يمكن فهمه	recognisable يمكن تمييزه
er	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	carer مهتم/مراعٍ	writer كاتب
less	تعطى العكس	careless غير حريص	useless بلا فائدة

2

title

١- عنوان (كتاب/مقال/مسرحية)
٢- لقب
٣- مسمى وظيفى

- The title of the play we study this year is *"King Lear"*.
- The title "Mrs" is used with a married woman.
- My father's official title is the editor of the newspaper.

address

١- عنوان (مكان)
٢- عنوان موقع إنترنت أو بريد إلكترونى
٣- خطاب/يخاطب

- I wrote my address in detail in the application form.
- You shouldn't post your website address on unknown pages.
- The manager addressed the clerks in his first speech.

3

debate
مناظرة (جدال) غالبًا أطراف الجدال مختلفون

The two politicians السياسيان will have a debate about their different economic ideas.

discussion
مناقشة (إعطاء آراء عن شىء مهم)

Our English teacher sometimes starts his lesson with a short discussion about the new topic.

society المجتمـع (عموم الناس الذين يربطهم قانون واحد وتنظيمات واحدة)	The Egyptian society has been shocked by the violent murder.
community المجتمع/الجالية/جماعة (الناس الذين يعيشون فى منطقة أو مدينة واحدة)	The president met representatives of the Egyptian community in New York.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The young poet's poems were published under the .... of *"Love and Romance"*.

a) address b) title
c) rank d) award

2 The government built a new hospital to serve the rural .... near the Siwa Oasis.

a) society b) government
c) community d) business

3 Nuclear power has always been a topic of considerable .... whether for or against it.

a) discussions b) debates
c) fights d) battles

4 The young man was accused of giving a false .... of his office to the police.

a) award b) title
c) headline d) address

5 There are several projects under .... and the board must give a decision about them soon.

a) debate b) fight
c) discussion d) battle

Practice  Practise more

Vocabulary
General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 All over the world, there is a great .... whether we should use animals in scientific research or not.
a) agreement b) debate c) search d) finding

2 The house where my .... lived is being demolished because it was old.
a) grandchildren b) sons c) grandparents d) visitors

3 Guardiola, the 'Manchester City' manager, is an excellent coach who knows how to get great ....
a) reasons b) purposes c) conclusions d) results

4 All office workers must make regular progress .... to their managers.
a) conclusions b) reports c) conferences d) procedures

5 The website warned all participants that any rude or bullying .... will be deleted.
a) comment b) interest c) product d) record

6 The manager hopes he will become a .... in our company.
a) part b) surgeon c) servant d) partner

7 The Giza .... of the motorway is closed for repairs until the end of the month.
a) site b) centre c) section d) aim

8 The referees .... the times of all competitors to decide the winner.
a) resulted b) explored c) received d) recorded

9 The doctor advised her to .... in bed for a week after the surgery.
a) remain b) remind c) last d) check

10 I asked my friend to help me get a new passport as I don't know the ....
a) report b) procedure c) article d) aim

11 Scientists .... the results of both scientific experiments carefully.
a) divided b) compared c) cited d) remained

12 Stamp collecting has been a .... of mine since I was a child.
a) result b) challenge c) tip d) hobby

13 Many negative .... of women are found in the media.
a) photos b) images c) procedures d) portraits

14 To be successful, the .... of a sports team must cooperate with each other.
a) organs b) callers c) members d) helpers

15 I recommend that you buy a more .... computer to get the project ready soon.
a) powerful b) helpless c) ordinary d) ancient

16 The author's name is usually printed below the .... of his or her novel.
a) text b) address c) speech d) title

17 We contrasted the two characters of the story. The word "contrast" is similar in meaning to the word ....
a) compare b) sum up c) record d) find

18 My hometown is hardly .... to me as I last visited it in 2001.
a) recognise b) recognition c) recognisable d) forgettable

19 I don't have any clothes which are suitable .... the party.
a) for b) about c) on d) over

20 The two boys had a major .... over who should clean their father's car.
a) disagree b) disagreement c) disagreed d) disagreeable

21 Girls like to .... special, so they often buy new clothes and accessories.
a) feel b) make c) work d) help

22 Do you want to add your name .... the waiting list for the tickets?
a) with b) for c) in d) to

23 The journalists who attended the conference .... notes of the most important points.
a) filled b) drew c) gave d) took

24 In modern times, advances in technology have made the world smaller. The antonym of the adjective "modern" is "......................".
a) updated b) ancient c) fashionable d) helpful

25 My younger sister always asks me to .... her my opinion of her clothes.
a) take b) give c) receive d) deliver

26 A/An................ is added at the beginning of a word to change its meaning. *(Longman)*
a) acronym b) abbreviation c) suffix d) prefix

27 This man standing next to your uncle in that photo isn't ....; I don't remember him. *(Longman)*
a) recognisable b) valuable c) arguable d) tolerable

28 The doctor .... the results of the two blood analyses to see how much the patient had improved. *(Longman)*
a) cured b) completed c) compared d) mixed

29 A/An .... is a discussion on a particular topic that frequently lasts for a long time and in which several points of view are expressed. *(Longman)*
a) post b) debate c) quarrel d) interview

30 A/An .... is a web page containing information or opinions from a particular person or about a particular subject, to which new information is regularly added. *(Longman)*
a) email b) post c) blog d) title

B Language



Important Notes



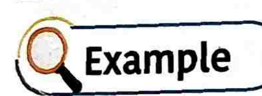
1 could/could have for other usages

Rule	Usage
could be (inf.) might be (inf.) may be (inf.)	When we are uncertain about something at present. عندما نكون غير متأكدين من شىء فى المضارع.



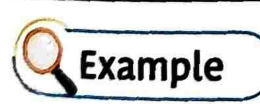
A: Where is dad? **B:** I don't know. He could be at the swimming pool or in the park.

Rule	Usage
can't have + P.P. couldn't have + P.P.	I'm certain that something didn't happen. (past deduction). شىء لا يمكن أن يكون حدث فى الماضى (استنتاج قوى فى الماضى).



She can't have left the house yet because her car is still outside.

Rule	Usage
could have + P.P. may have + P.P. might have + P.P.	The speaker is not sure whether something happened or not. المتحدث غير متأكد مما إذا كان شىء ما قد حدث أم لا.

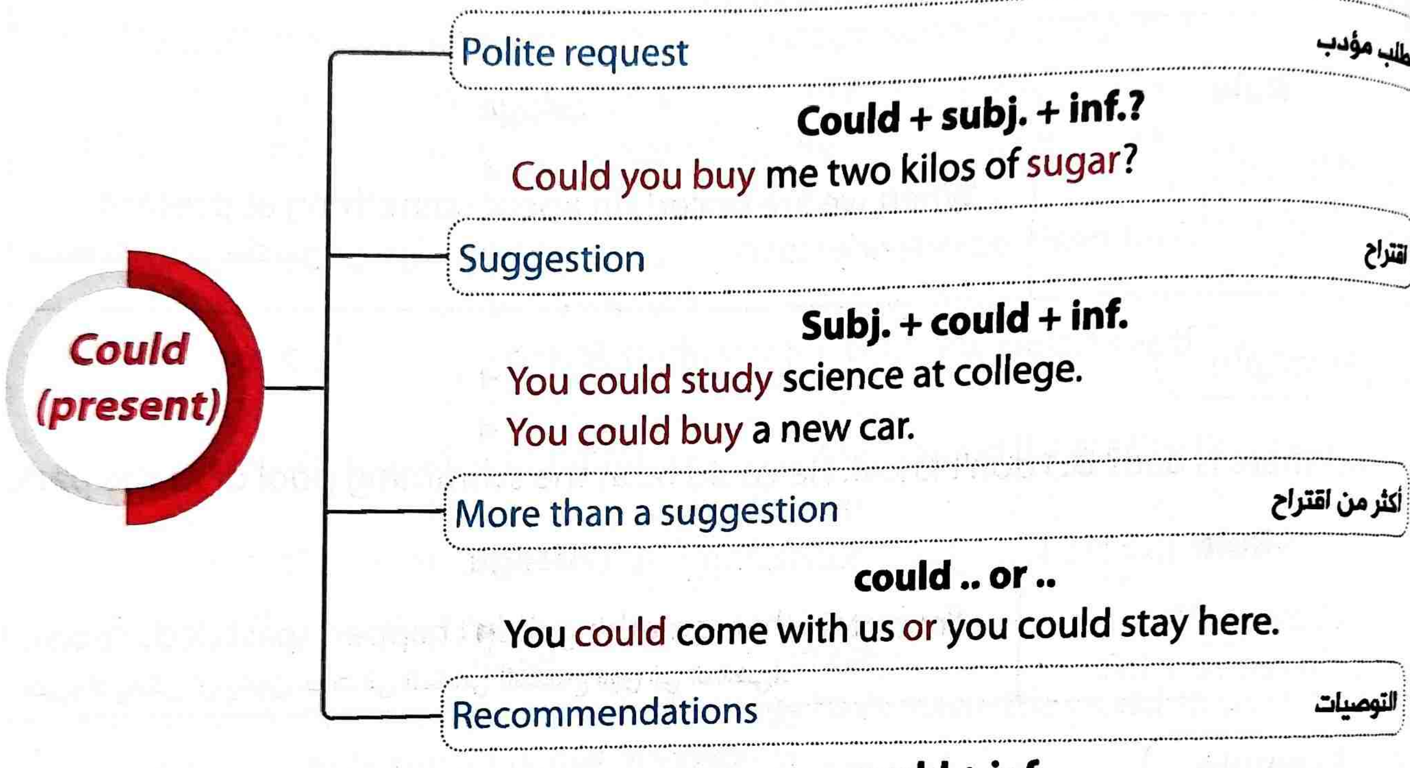


The copier isn't working. It might have run out of paper.
She could have gone to the shops. I'm not sure.

Rule	Usage
could + inf.	After wish/If only to refer to the present and the future If ⟶ past simple ⟶ could + inf. بعد wish/if only للتعبير عن أمنية فى المستقبل أو المضارع، وجواب شرط الحالة الثانية بعد If.



- I wish/If only I could play the piano.
- I wish I could help, but I am so busy that I don't have the time.
- He could go with us if he weren't ill.



You could visit the Citadel. It's interesting.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 They .... at school. I'm not sure.
a) could still be b) are still c) have still been d) must still be

2 Ali .... to Alexandria this morning. He is ill in bed!
a) can travel b) can't have travelled
c) must travel d) should have travelled

3 Why didn't Salah come to our party? He .... have forgotten or travelled.
a) should b) might c) must d) mustn't

4 During coronavirus pandemic, we .... enter the train without a face mask. It was against the law.
a) mustn't b) can't c) couldn't d) shouldn't

5 If Yasser got up late, he .... the train on time.
a) can't have taken b) couldn't take
c) couldn't have taken d) may take

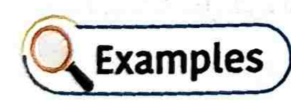
2 should for advice/should have for regret/blame

Advice	Regret/Blame
should/ought to/had better + inf.	**should/ought to/have + P.P.**
• They should (ought to) help the poor.	• You should (ought to) have gone to bed earlier last night (blame).
• We shouldn't waste our time.	• I shouldn't (oughtn't to) have wasted my time (regret).
• They ought to study hard.	
• He had better not use the phone a lot.	

Should + inf. for prediction

should + inf. ought to + inf.	to make a prediction للتنبؤ توقع حدوث شيء بحلول وقت معين فى المستقبل (من المفترض/لازم).

- Osama should arrive soon. He left office at 6.



-عند استخدام modal verbs فى المبنى للمجهول إذا كان بعدها المصدر نستخدم be + P.P. وإذا كان بعدها have نستخدم been + P.P. بعد have.

Examples

- The Pyramids could be visited tomorrow. We aren't sure.
- The bills should have been paid two weeks ago.

Summary

Direct & indirect orders, advice and requests

Direct	Indirect
• The teacher said to us, "Do the quiz".	• The teacher told/asked/ordered us to do the quiz.
• My father said to me, "Don't run on the stairs."	• My father advised/warned/told me not to run on the stairs.

Modal verbs (could / should)

Could + inf.

- I could ride a bike when I was 10. — المقدرة فى الماضى
- Could you lend me some money? — طلب مؤدب فى المضارع
- We could watch the final match on TV. — للاقتراح فى المضارع
- You could buy the book at the fair. It's cheaper. — للتوصيات

Couldn't + inf.

- I couldn't ride a bike when I was 10. — عدم استطاعة فعل شىء فى الماضى.
- I couldn't travel without a ticket. It's forbidden. — عدم الاستطاعة لأنه كان غير قانونى.

Could have + P.P.

- My friend was absent yesterday. He could have been ill.
  - شىء كان ممكنًا حدوثه فى الماضى (احتمال ضعيف)
- He didn't succeed. He could have studied harder.
  - كان فى مقدور شخص ان يفعل شيئًا، ولكن لم يفعل، وتستخدم للانتقاد أحيانًا.

Couldn't have + P.P.

- He was late for the party. He couldn't have taken the right road.
  - شىء لم يكن محتملًا حدوثه فى الماضى او مستحيلًا.

Practice



Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I .... have booked the tickets last week. I feel sorry for not booking the ticket.
   a) can't b) should c) couldn't d) shouldn't
2. When you go to Paris next month, you .... with my cousin.
   a) should have stayed b) shouldn't have stayed
   c) could have stayed d) could stay
3. Hossam wasn't at the scene of the crime, so he .... have been guilty.
   a) couldn't b) shouldn't c) could d) should
4. You .... have seen Hady in the park this morning. We were in Cairo together.
   a) should b) must c) mustn't d) couldn't
5. He .... have asked me before he took my bike. I'm annoyed.
   a) oughtn't b) should c) needn't d) must
6. He .... have been a great doctor. He had the ability but he didn't want to work hard.
   a) can't b) must c) could d) might
7. Ali .... have forgotten about the meeting. I told him this morning.
   a) can't b) must c) might d) should
8. **A:** I can't decide what to make for dinner tonight.
   B: You .... meat or chicken with some soup.
   a) couldn't make b) could make
   c) could have made d) should have made
9. You .... have been rude to him. He did nothing wrong.
   a) shouldn't b) couldn't c) can't d) should
10. We .... have donated some money to the poor. It was the right thing to do, but we didn't do it.
    a) ought to b) shouldn't c) must d) might
11. He .... a lawyer, but he didn't and lost the case.
    a) might have consulted b) must have consulted
    c) consulted d) could have consulted
12. She's late. She .... have taken the wrong road.
    a) might not b) may c) can't d) should

13 I .... have eaten so much chocolate! I feel sick!

a) couldn't b) could c) should d) shouldn't

14 They .... smoke there. They aren't allowed.

a) can't b) must c) couldn't d) might

15 He .... have been more tolerant. Everyone was angry with him.

a) must b) ought to c) shouldn't d) might

16 We were totally free. We .... what we wanted.

a) couldn't have done b) should do
c) couldn't do d) could do

17 **A:** How did the robbers get in?
B: We don't know yet. The old woman .... have forgotten to lock the door.

a) must b) might c) can't d) should

18 You .... have taken this job. I can see you're not enjoying it.

a) couldn't b) should c) shouldn't d) could

19 .... you possibly give me a lift to the next village?

a) Didn't b) Shouldn't c) Should d) Could

20 He .... been working in the garage when we arrived. That might be why he didn't hear the bell.

a) could have b) has
c) can't have d) shouldn't have

21 I'm so sorry; I .... have visited you, but I .... too busy.

a) shouldn't / am b) ought to / wasn't c) should / was d) ought / was

22 I .... my paragraph well; it was full of mistakes.

a) should have checked b) shouldn't check
c) should check d) shouldn't have checked

23 Kamal .... abroad; he is still in Cairo.

a) had to travel b) must have travelled
c) can't have travelled d) shouldn't have travelled

24 We .... the weekend in Alexandria, but we preferred to be with our old friends in the village.

a) had to spend b) could have spent
c) shouldn't have spent d) must have spent

25 Don't ring the doorbell when you get there. Ola's baby .... sleeping.

a) can't be b) may not be
c) may be d) should be

26 **Salah should have saved much money to buy a new car. This means that he .... it.**

a) didn't buy
b) regrets buying
c) saved but didn't buy
d) was wrong to buy

27 **I called her, but there was no answer. She .... for Alexandria.**

a) has probably left
b) should have left
c) can't have left
d) might have left

28 **Fady .... his exam as he seems happy.**

a) could have passed
b) shouldn't have passed
c) could pass
d) can't have passed

29 **He .... his exams. I'm not sure.**

a) must have finished
b) can't have finished
c) shouldn't have finished
d) might have finished

30 **Which of the following doesn't show regret?** *(Longman)*

a) I should have followed my father's advice.
b) I ought not to have ignored my father's advice.
c) I regret not following my father's advice.
d) I shouldn't ignore my father's advice.

31 **These flowers should be watered twice a week, but I always forget to water them. This means it's ....**

a) must
b) advisable
c) unnecessary
d) necessity

32 **I .... speak English fluently until I was 20 when I travelled to England and met native speakers.**

a) wasn't able to
b) was able to
c) didn't succeed in
d) wasn't capable of

33 **I shouldn't have wasted my time playing and having fun. This can be a/an ....**

a) suggestion
b) regret
c) request
d) offer

34 **A: You bought the tickets, didn't you?**
B: No, I ...., but I didn't have enough money.

a) couldn't
b) ought to have been
c) must have
d) should have

35 **"Doctors are supposed to help sick people" means ....**

a) they can't help sick people
b) they must be helping sick people
c) they might have helped sick people
d) they ought to help sick people

Test yourself



Part (2)
(Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 The Cairo Tower can be recognisable from a long distance away. The adjective "recognisable" can be the opposite to the adjective ....
a) definite b) reachable c) clear d) ambiguous

2 Shakespeare's old English could be understood .... that time.
a) in b) by c) at d) for

3 We bought this house in 1986 and have lived here .... since.
a) never b) ever c) for d) before

4 It is important for any business owner to .... in touch with the latest technology.
a) keep b) play c) make d) leave

5 The experienced architect has worked on various building .... so the company chose him for an important project.
a) scenes b) views c) sights d) sites

6 Science is an important part of contemporary culture. The word "contemporary" is a synonym for the word ".....................".
a) ancient b) civilised c) modern d) behaved

7 You should .... the phone away from the child as he has been using it for a long time.
a) take b) give c) break d) repair

8 I asked my friend about the .... of this week's writing as I was absent.
a) address b) title c) site d) location

9 To ensure high quality, all products of the food factory go through strict testing ....
a) procedures b) findings c) results d) records

10 Experts advise all people to eat .... meals instead of fast-food takeaways.
a) probable b) interested c) comfortable d) proper

11 Some sociologists carried out research into the roles of men and women in today's ....
a) organisation b) society c) association d) interview

12 The .... of your essay should be clear and brief so that readers finally understand your view.
a) introduction b) tip c) conclusion d) start

13 Social .... have really changed the way people communicate, work, and shop.
a) service b) media c) status d) work

14 The interview with the new minister was .... on the front page of the newspaper.
a) summarised b) commented c) reduced d) increased

15 The hospital conducted a/an .... asking patients to suggest ways in which the service could be improved.
a) inspection b) search c) survey d) estimation

Language

16 I wish I .... go to the stadium tomorrow.
a) can b) could c) will d) may

17 You .... me that the meeting has been cancelled.
a) should inform b) should have informed
c) shouldn't inform d) shouldn't have informed

18 Mum warned me .... play with matches.
a) not to b) don't c) to not d) to

19 Hossam was working with me all day, so you .... seen him at the park.
a) should have b) couldn't have c) could have d) shouldn't have

20 I went for a ten-mile run last Saturday. It nearly killed me! I .... move on Sunday.
a) can b) could c) managed to d) couldn't

21 I .... downloaded that program. Now, I have a virus on my laptop.
a) can't have b) could have c) shouldn't have d) will have

22 I'm really cold! I .... have brought my coat.
a) can't b) shouldn't c) should d) might

23 If I had gone with my friends to the Red Sea, I .... scuba diving lessons.
a) must have taken b) can't have taken
c) could take d) could have taken

24 Really, I can't remember you, but I .... you before.
a) should have met b) shouldn't have met
c) might have met d) must met

25 Ahmed waited for you outside for a long time and was angry. You .... to have met him.
a) oughtn't b) should c) ought d) must

26 A: I threw your old books into the recycling bin.
B: Oh, no! You .... have done that. I need some of them for school.
a) mustn't b) shouldn't c) can't d) couldn't

27 I wonder why Ali hasn't come to my party. I suppose he .... have received the invitation.
a) must b) might not c) might d) shouldn't

28 You .... believe everything you read in the newspapers.
a) need b) must c) aren't d) shouldn't

29 Tamer walked into a wall. He .... have been looking where he was going.
a) couldn't b) must c) might d) could

30 .... the washing-up while I am doing the cooking?"
a) Could you have done b) Did you do
c) Could you do d) Should you have done




Watch a video

Part (3)

Lessons 5 & 6

Act II, Scenes i-ii

Vocabulary

arrest (v) (ed)	يقبض على	inherit (v) (ed)	يرث
back (n)	ظهر	injured (adj)	مصاب/ مجروح
beggar (n)	متسول/ شحاذ	persuade (v) (d)	يقنع
blood (n)	دم	plot (v) (ted)	يتآمر
call out (v) (ed)	يصرخ	port (n)	ميناء
disbelief (n)	جحود/عدم ثقة	pretend (v) (ed)	يتظاهر
duty (n)	واجب	profit (v) (ed)	يربح/يستفيد
faithful (adj)	مخلص	reward (v) (ed)	يكافئ
follow (v) (ed)	يتبع	stab (n)	طعنة
get (to) (v)	يصل	stocks (n)	عمود خشبى فى التعذيب
guard (n) (v) (ed)	حارس/يحرس	warn (v) (ed)	يحذر

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

a stab in the back	طعنة فى الخلف (الظهر)	change one's mind	يغير رأيه
(be) in a fight	يكون فى قتال	feel angry	يشعر بالغضب
faithful to	مخلص لـ	pick up	يلتقط
go back	يرجع/يعد	plot against	يتآمر ضد

Practice  Practise more

King Lear Exercises
Act II, Scenes i-ii

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The young man has been .... on suspicion of using a stolen credit card.
a) arrested b) rewarded c) offered d) demanded

2 A .... is someone who is very poor and lives by asking people for money or food.
a) teller b) beggar c) blogger d) follower

3 The first reports about the plane crash were met with .... and people refused them.
a) rejoice b) belief c) disbelief d) cheer

4 My mother has always remained .... to the good values she learned as a child.
a) hateful b) lawful c) legal d) faithful

5 The stadium was protected by armed police .... during the match for security measures.
a) gangs b) enemies c) guards d) workers

6 My eldest son has .... his mother's patience.
a) bought b) inherited c) harmed d) tricked

7 Nobody could .... her to change her mind to leave the job.
a) persuade b) make c) defy d) deny

8 The spies were accused of.................... against the country.
a) potting b) putting c) plotting d) parting

9 The little girl closed her eyes and .... to be asleep.
a) prohibited b) inhibited c) attended d) pretended

10 There was a rise in the company's .... this year. They made good money.
a) profits b) losses c) publicities d) publishers

11 Parents often give their children .... for passing exams.
a) awards b) rewards c) punishments d) medals

12 The old man was killed with a .... to the heart by a fierce criminal.
a) pull b) stick c) slab d) stab

13 The ferry عبارة was about to leave the .... when the machine broke down.
a) platform b) port c) pavement d) road

14 If new employees are unable to carry out their ...., they may be fired.
a) meals b) rights c) duties d) offices



للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
برجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

Blog post writing

Write a blog post on the topic of mobile phone use and its effects today.

Tips for writing the essay:



Consider the following points:

- What is a healthy amount of time to spend using your phone?
- What are the effects of spending too much time on your phone?
- What solutions or advice can you offer your readers on how to use their mobile phone in the most positive way?



Mobile phone! Take care!

Yesterday, I phoned my friend Nahla to ask her about the title of our English assignment this week. Her phone was busy. I continued to try to get her on the phone, but it was busy for 6 hours. Imagine! She had been talking with a friend all that time. Although there is no exact amount of time set for using your phone, experts warn us not to use a mobile that long.

Spending too much time on your phone has dangerous effects on your health as well as your social life. People who use their phones for long suffer health problems such as sleep trouble and obesity. In addition, it can take you away from your family and friends.

There are some things you can do to use your mobile phone positively. You can use it to communicate with your friends, but don't forget to get together with them. You can use it to play games, but don't neglect physical exercises. In short, you should make your mobile phone a means to be controlled, not a device to be controlled by.

Practice



Practise more

Skills Exercises

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Albert Einstein found school very difficult. His teacher would tap her pointer against the blackboard impatiently while she waited for him to answer her questions. But Albert always had to think about many things before he could answer. After all, he would say to himself, there are many different things to think about before you can say anything is absolutely certain. When his teacher wasn't asking Albert a question, Albert would think of a question to ask her. And often when he did, she would get red in the face and angry at Albert for thinking up questions she couldn't answer. The more Albert learned, the more ideas he found to think about. The more he thought, the more questions he asked.

He knew that the Earth, other planets, the moon, and the sun are just a part of what we call the universe. He knew that the universe is also made up of all the stars we can see with our eyes and millions and millions more than we can see only with the largest telescopes. He thought there must be some rules to explain why everything in the universe acts as it does. Finally, he believed he had some of the answers. And then people started asking him questions because he had answers for many things that scientists had been trying to figure out for many, many years.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The phrase "would tap her pointer against the blackboard impatiently" means ....
- a) she was very happy
- b) she was very angry
- c) she was very ill
- d) she was bored with teaching

2 When he was young, Albert Einstein ....
- a) didn't care about learning
- b) was very stupid
- c) always made his teacher cry
- d) was clever enough to think about everything

3 If Albert Einstein's teacher hadn't raised questions, ...
- a) Albert would have asked her difficult questions
- b) Albert would have left the class happily
- c) Albert would have been angry
- d) Albert wouldn't have answered them

4 The best title for the passage is ".....................".
- a) Albert Einstein's stupidity
- b) Albert Einstein and his teacher
- c) Albert Einstein and his deep-thinking
- d) Albert Einstein's early childhood

5 **Albert Einstein concluded that ....**

a) there is something called the Earth
b) the Earth is oval
c) we live in a massive universe
d) asking questions is useful

6 **Albert took time to answer questions at school because ....**

a) he was busy
b) he was stupid
c) the questions were difficult
d) he thought a lot

7 **Albert's teacher's face got red when he asked her because ....**

a) she didn't know the answer
b) the questions were embarrassing
c) the questions were off point
d) he was making fun of her

8 **People always asked Albert about a lot of things as ....**

a) he claimed prophecy
b) he was a physician
c) he knew many things
d) he was a clever student

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 **Although using abbreviations and emojis is not acceptable in any formal learning or writing, most young people use them in their everyday chats with their friends.**

a) على الرغم من أن اسـتخدام الاختصارات والرموز الفنية غير مقبول فى أى تعليم رسـمى أو فى الكتابة الرسمية، فإن معظم الشباب يستخدمونها فى محادثاتهم اليومية مع أصدقائهم.
b) على الرغم من أن اسـتخدام الاختصارات والرموز التعبيرية غير مقبول فى أى تعليم غير رسـمى أو فى الكتابة الرسـمية، فإن معظم الشباب يستخدمونها فى محادثاتهم اليومية مع أصدقائهم.
c) على الرغم من أن استخدام الاختصارات والرموز التعبيرية غير مقبول فى أى تعليم رسمى أو فى الكتابة الرسمية، فإن معظم الشباب يستخدمونها فى محادثاتهم اليومية مع أصدقائهم.
d) على الرغم من أن اسـتخدام الاختصارات والرموز الفنية غير مقبول فى أى تعليم رسـمى أو فى الكتابة الرسـمية، فإن كل الشـباب يستخدمونها فى محادثاتهم اليومية مع أصدقائهم.

2 **Competition in our modern life affects everybody in society and sometimes leads to evil deeds. Greed for money and power is the root of many crimes.**

a) تؤثر المنافسـة فى حياتنا الحديثة على كل فرد فى المجتمع وتؤدى أحيانًا إلى الأفعال الشـريرة فالجشع من أجل المال والسلطة هو أصل العديد من الجرائم.
b) تؤثر المنافسـة فى حياتنا الحديثة على كل فرد فى المجتمع وتؤدى أحيانًا إلى الأفعال الخيرة فالجشـع من أجل المال والسـلطة هو أصل العديد من الجرائم.
c) تؤثر المنافسـة فى حياتنا الحديثة على كل فرد فى المجتمع وتؤدى أحيانًا إلى الأفعال الشـريرة فالجشـع من أجل المال والطاقة هو أصل العديد من الجرائم.
d) تؤثر المنافسـة فى حياتنا الحديثة على كل فرد فى المجتمع وتنتج أحيانًا من الأفعال الشـريرة فالجشـع من أجل المال والسلطة هو أصل العديد من الجرائم.

3 **We use messaging daily to communicate with friends and family, and its convenience has made us want to use it to communicate with businesses too.**

a) نحن نسـتخدم الرسـائل يوميًا للتواصل مع الأصدقاء والعائلة، وقد جعلتنا الصعوبة التى توفرها نرغب فى استخدامها للتواصل مع الشركات أيضًا.
b) نحن نسـتخدم الرسـائل يوميًا للتواصـل مع الأصدقاء والعائلة، وقد جعلنـا التلازم الذى توفره نرغب فى اسـتخدامها للتواصل مع الشركات أيضًا.
c) نحن نسـتخدم الرسـائل يوميًا للتواصل مع الأصدقاء والعائلة، وقد جعلتنا الراحة التى توفرها نرغب فى اسـتخدامها للشـكوى إلى الشركات أيضًا.
d) نحن نسـتخدم الرسـائل يوميًا للتواصل مع الأصدقاء والعائلة، وقد جعلتنا الراحة التى توفرها نرغب فى اسـتخدامها للتواصل مع الشركات أيضًا.

4 Corruption and indiscipline are the main factors that lead to the deterioration of our economy. That's why the government is trying hard to fight them.

a) يُعد الفساد و الانضباط من العوامل الرئيسية التى أدت إلى تدهور اقتصادنا. لهذا السبب تحاول الحكومة جاهدة محاربتهم.
b) يُعد الفساد وعدم الانضباط من العوامل الرئيسية التى أدت إلى تدهور اقتصادنا. لهذا السبب تحاول الحكومة جاهدة محاربتهم.
c) يُعد الفساد وعدم الانضباط من العوامل الثانوية التى أدت إلى تدهور اقتصادنا. لهذا السبب تحاول الحكومة جاهدة محاربتهم.
d) يُعد الفساد وعدم الانضباط من العوامل الرئيسية التى أدت إلى تقدم اقتصادنا. لهذا السبب تحاول الحكومة جاهدة محاربتهم.

5 Cooperation and teamwork are two necessary qualities for the success and progress of any society. They must be taught at an early age.

a) التعاون والعمل الجماعى كميتان ضروريتان لنجاح وتقدم أى مجتمع ويجب أن يتم تعلمهما فى سن مبكرة.
b) التعاون والعمل الجماعى صفتان ضروريتان لنجاح وتقدم أى مجتمع ويجب أن يتم تعلمهما فى سن مبكرة.
c) التعاون والعمل الجماعى مقداران ضروريان لنجاح وتقدم أى مجتمع ويجب أن يتم تعلمهما فى سن مبكرة.
d) التعاون والعمل الجماعى صفتان ضروريتان لنجاح وتقدم أى مجتمع ويجب أن يتم تعلمهما فى سن باكرة.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

6 أصبـح تعلـم اللغـة الإنجليزية جزءًا هامًا من التعليم فى كثير من الدول، وذلك لأنها لغة دولية تسـاعد فى كثير من الأغراض العلمية والترفيهية.

a) Learning English has become an important part of education in many countries, because it is a national language that helps in many scientific and entertaining purposes.
b) Learning English has become an important part of education in many countries, because it is an international language that helps in many scientific and propaganda purposes.
c) Learning English has become an important place of education in many countries, because it is an international language that helps in many scientific and entertaining purposes.
d) Learning English has become an important part of education in many countries, because it is an international language that helps in many scientific and entertaining purposes.

7 أثبتت أزمة كوفيد- ١٩ والحرب الروسية الأوكرانية أهمية أن نحاول تحقيق الاكتفاء الذاتى من إنتاج الغذاء وأن نقلل استيراده

a) The Covid-19 crisis and the Russian-Ukrainian war have proven the importance of trying to achieve self-sufficiency in food production and to reduce its export.
b) The Covid-19 crisis and the Russian-Ukrainian war have denied the importance of trying to achieve self-sufficiency in food production and to reduce its import.
c) The Covid-19 crisis and the Russian-Ukrainian war have proven the importance of trying to achieve self-sufficiency in food production and to reduce its import.
d) The Covid-19 crisis and the Russian-Ukrainian war have proven the importance of trying to achieve self-dependency in food production and to reduce its import.

8 يحصـل الأبطال المصريون فى الألعـاب الفردية على الميداليات والكئوس، ومع ذلك لا يلقون الاهتمام والدعم مثل الألعاب الجماعية التى لم تحقق الكثير من الإنجازات الكبيرة.

a) The Egyptian champions in individual games get medals and cups, yet they do not receive the same attention and support as the team games that did not achieve many great achievements.
b) The Egyptian champions in member games get medals and cups, yet they do not receive the same attention and support as the team games that did not achieve many great achievements.

c) The Egyptian champions in individual games get medals and cups, yet they do not receive the same attention and report as the team games that did not achieve many great achievements.

d) The Egyptian champions in individual games get medals and cups, yet they do not receive the same intention and support as the team games that did not achieve many great achievements.

9 يحذر الخبراء من استخدام الأطفال المفرط للإنترنت؛ لأن ذلك يؤدى إلى آثار سيئة على صحتهم؛ لذا يجب تعليمهم ترشيد هذا الاستخدام.

a) Experts warn against children's repulsive use of the Internet; because this leads to bad effects on their health. Therefore, they must be taught to rationalise this use.

b) Experts warn against children's excessive use of the Internet; because this leads to bad effects on their health. Therefore, they must be taught to reinvent this use.

c) Experts warn against children's excessive use of the Internet; because this leads to bad effects on their health. Therefore, they must be taught to rationalise this use.

d) Experts warn against children's excessive use of the Internet; because this results in bad effects on their health. Therefore, they must be taught to rationalise this use.

10 للأصدقاء تأثير كبير فى حياة المراهقين؛ لذلك يجب على الآباء تشجيعهم على الصحبة الجيدة، فالصديق الجيد يساعد الشخص على النجاح فى الحياة.

a) Friends have a great impact on teens' lives. Therefore, parents should encourage them to have good partnership. A good friend helps a person succeed in life.

b) Friends have a great impact on teens' lives. Therefore, parents should encourage them to have good company. A good friend helps a person succeed in life.

c) Friends have a tiny impact on teens' lives. Therefore, parents should encourage them to have good company. A good friend helps a person succeed in life.

d) Friends have a great impact on teens' lives. Nevertheless, parents should encourage them to have good company. A good friend helps a person succeed in life.

3 Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Your friend wants to improve his/her English and asks your advice the best ways to do so. Give his/her your advice."
Your friend's name is Manal and her email address is: manal10@gmail.com.
Your name is Leila and your email address is: leila10@yahoo.com

....

....

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. .... | I used the right structure. .... | I used a topic sentence. .... | I wrote the conclusion. .... | I used the right punctuation. ....



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 We didn't have the proper tools to do the job right. The synonym of the adjective "proper" is "......................".
a) updated b) suitable c) fashionable d) helpless

2 As a linguistic innovator, Shakespeare could add many words and phrases .... the English language.
a) at b) for c) with d) to

3 The movie has a comic .... throughout although it has some adventure scenes.
a) scenery b) sound c) tone d) voice

4 Children must be taught the .... rules of hygiene and sanitation at school.
a) basic b) extra c) additional d) fictional

5 The teacher .... angrily at the lazy student who said that he didn't bring his book to school.
a) smiled b) rewarded c) frowned d) introduced

6 Some new scientific theories take a very long time to .... in our real life.
a) apply b) reply c) imply d) intensify

7 As soon as I walked into the room, I .... gas.
a) could have smelt
b) must have smelt
c) can't have smelt
d) could smell

8 Many people are demanding that something .... about pollution.
a) should have done
b) should do
c) should be done
d) shouldn't be done

9 Reham .... have got my message. Otherwise, she would have replied.
a) mustn't b) couldn't c) shouldn't d) could

10 "Don't wait for me, Ahmed," said Hany.
Hany told Ahmed ....
a) to wait for him
b) not to wait for him
c) didn't wait for him
d) don't wait for him

11 The teacher .... us to keep quiet.
a) suggests b) wants c) warns d) says

12 Why did you stay at a hotel when you were in Paris? You .... have stayed with Tamer.
a) shouldn't b) might c) must d) could

13 We didn't know where Mohamed was, but we .... find him in the end.

a) can b) were able to c) should d) might

14 You could have left your phone at work. This means ....

a) it's impossible that you left it there

b) it's necessary that you left it there

c) it's advisable that you left it there

d) it's possible that you left it there

15 What .... yesterday to avoid making that bad mistake? I feel sorry now!

a) did I have to do b) should I have done

c) should I do d) must I have done

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Glass is a pure compound of sand melted at a very high temperature with the help of catalysts. Silicate, the main component of sand, is heated till it is red-hot. When it has been sufficiently heated, it is wound around a blowing pipe. Specially trained men, who have learnt to control their intake and output of air, will then blow cups, bowls, vases, and bottles from the heated silicate. These men never make a mistake while blowing glass, for any deviation from their methods could burst their lungs or seriously harm their internal organs. Glass makers work for years before achieving the status of master craftsmen. They join the glass works from a young age, working for minimal pay as apprentices.

They soon learn the trade and become ordinary craftsmen. With the benefit of practice and experience, they will one day become master craftsmen. If a particular cup or vase requires a special rim or design, the master craftsman will handle it himself. Otherwise, mass-produced glasses may be moulded in die casts.

Great patience is needed to make a glass, for after it is shaped and left aside to cool, it has to be given along interval to 'contract'. If it is not 'aged' sufficiently, it will crack and disjoint.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16 The main component of glass is ....

a) sand b) bottles c) silicate d) cups

17 Glass makers become craftsmen ....

a) at a very early age b) after three-year experience

c) when they join glass works d) after a lot of practice and experience

18 **Someone who works for an employer for a fixed period of time in order to learn a particular skill or job is called a/an ....**

a) apprentice b) craftsman c) patient d) professional

19 **One of the following isn't mentioned in the passage:**

a) making glass needs a lot of patience
b) making glass needs a lot of money
c) making glass needs a lot of experience
d) making glass needs a lot of heat

20 **The silicate is heated to produce ....**

a) sand b) glass c) moulds d) apprentices

21 **Mistakes in this industry is unacceptable as craftsmen may ....**

a) lose money b) harm their lungs c) lose their voice d) be disabled

22 **The master craftsmen are asked to ....**

a) handle special rim
b) take courses
c) sell their products
d) teach older craftsmen

23 **The best title for the passage is "......................".**

a) The History of Glass
b) The importance of Sand
c) Glass Industry
d) Trade

24 **Choose the correct English translation:**

- أن تكون غير أنانى ومتواضعًا وذكيًا وصبورًا فى ساعة المعاناة وقويًا فى وقت المشاكل وشخصًا مخلصًا ومحبًا، فأنت إذًا إنسان ناجح حقًا، وتتحلى بكثير من الصفات الحميدة.

a) If you are unselfish, humble, intelligent, patient in times of suffering, strong in times of trouble, loyal and lovely, then you are a truly successful person, with many good qualities.
b) Unless you are unselfish, humble, intelligent, patient in times of suffering, strong in times of trouble, loyal and loving, then you are a truly successful person, with many good qualities.
c) Although you are unselfish, humble, intelligent, patient in times of suffering, strong in times of trouble, loyal and loving, then you are a truly successful person, with many good quantities.
d) While you are unselfish, humble, intelligent, patient in times of suffering, strong in times of trouble, loyal and loving, then you are a truly successive person, with many good qualities.

25 Choose the correct Arabic translation:

The champions who won medals in the last Olympics proved that the Egyptians are able to do wonders despite their present hardships. They only need facilities and encouragement.

a) أثبت الأبطال الذين فازوا بميداليات فى الأولمبياد الماضية أن المصريين قادرون على صنع المعجزات على الرغم من الصعوبات الحالية. إنهم يحتاجون فقط إلى الإمكانيات والتشجيع.

b) أثبت الأبطال الذين فازوا بميداليات فى الأولمبياد الماضية أن المصريين غير قادرون على صنع المعجزات بسبب الصعوبات الحالية. إنهم يحتاجون فقط إلى الماليات والتشجيع.

c) أثبت الأبطال الذين فازوا بميداليات فى الأولمبياد الماضية أن المصريين قادرون على صنع القدرات على الرغم من الصعوبات الحالية. إنهم يحتاجون فقط إلى الماليات والتشجيع.

d) أثبت الأبطال الذين فازوا بميداليات فى الأولمبياد الماضية أن المصريين غير قادرين على صنع المعجزات على الرغم من الصعوبات المستمرة. إنهم يحتاجون فقط إلى الإمكانيات والتشجيع.

26 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Having free time is something you should value and spend in useful things."

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين
الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 304

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Egypt is hoping to achieve .... economic growth which will improve people's lives.
a) movable b) sustainable c) perfectible d) detestable

2 Hard work, patience and determination are the essential .... for success.
a) chemicals b) paints c) ingredients d) components

3 The first thing I noticed about the little girl was her blue eyes. The antonym of the verb "notice" is ".....................".
a) intend b) protect c) regard d) ignore

4 We use the .... "cm" for "centimetres", without any full stop after it.
a) indication b) domination c) declaration d) abbreviation

5 The story of the new car make was reported on the business .... of the newspaper.
a) title b) college c) section d) degree

6 It isn't a good idea to .... your personal information on websites that you can't trust.
a) derive b) post c) revise d) analyse

7 Riham is going on holiday soon. This time next week, she .... in the Mediterranean.
a) will sail b) 'll be sailing c) sails d) sailed

8 **A:** We haven't got any sugar. **B:** I know. I .... some this afternoon.
a) won't buy b) will have bought
c) will be bought d) am going to buy

9 My little grandchild .... three next Friday.
a) is going to be b) will have been
c) will be d) would be

10 In two years' time, Imad .... English at university.
a) will be studying b) will study c) will be studied d) studies

11 I expect him .... to dinner.
a) coming b) come c) to come d) should come

12 Our son promised to clean his room, but it is still messy. He .... it.

a) cannot clean
b) couldn't have cleaned
c) can't clean
d) shouldn't have cleaned

13 You missed a great party last night. You .... have come. Why didn't you?

a) might
b) must
c) should
d) can't

14 He .... have committed this crime. He wasn't even in the city that night.

a) might
b) must
c) shouldn't
d) couldn't

15 ".................... on the grass as it is wet." said the gardener.

a) Don't walk
b) Walk
c) To walk
d) Not to walk

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

You may have seen pictures of astronauts. They float around in space. They fly in a space shuttle. Have you ever wondered why they float? Your feet stay firmly on the ground. Why don't theirs? When you drop something, why does it fall? The answer to these questions is something called gravity. It affects everything we do. Gravity is essential for life on earth. Many years ago, a man named Sir Isaac Newton wondered about gravity, too. He watched and tested the way things move and fall on Earth. He wrote his ideas down. Scientists today use a lot of his ideas. Those ideas are now considered laws of science. Gravity is a force that makes all objects attracted to each other. The bigger the object is, the more it attracts things. Since nothing on Earth is bigger than planet Earth itself, all the things and people on Earth are attracted by Earth. Everything is pulled toward the centre of the planet. That is why things fall to the ground. It is also why people and things stay on the ground instead of floating around in space. Earth is even large enough to attract our moon. That's why we can see it in our sky!

Gravity keeps our muscles and bones, up and working. Gravity allows earth to retain its atmosphere. Gravity, being able to store its energy as "potential energy", allows us to harness it.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16 Why do your feet stay on the ground instead of floating?

a) Because they are heavy.
b) Because there isn't enough air.
c) Because of gravity.
d) Because the earth is very small.

17 **Why are things and people attracted to Earth?**
a) Because the Earth is attractive.
b) Because the Earth is bigger than other objects.
c) Because there is magnetism in things and people.
d) Because people like the Earth.

18 **What can we see in the sky because of gravity?**
a) The planets.
b) The stars.
c) The sun.
d) The moon.

19 **The synonym of the word "essential" is "..................".**
a) secondary
b) unnecessary
c) vital
d) option

20 **Which best described Newton's Law of Universal Gravitation?**
a) Gravity pulling depends on the length of its orbit.
b) The smaller the object, the greater the force.
c) The largest object exerts a force pulling every other object to it.
d) All objects exert a gravitational force on all other objects.

21 **Which has a stronger force of gravity, the Earth or the moon?**
a) The Earth.
b) The moon.
c) They are the same.
d) The moon has no gravity.

22 **Which has the strongest gravitational pull?**
a) The Earth.
b) The moon.
c) The Sun.
d) The North Star.

23 **Because of gravity, everything is pulled to the .... of the planet.**
a) margin
b) centre
c) left
d) ground

24 **Choose the correct Arabic translation:**
- **Some people believe that text messaging is a literary disease that will lead to the downfall of the language. However, young people believe that it is a way of innovation.**

a) يعتقد بعض الناس أن الرسائل النصية مرض لغوى سيؤدى إلى سقوط اللغة. ومع ذلك، يعتقد الشباب أنها طريقة للابتكار.

b) يعتقد بعض الناس أن الرسائل النصية تطور أدبى سيؤدى إلى سقوط اللغة. ومع ذلك، يعتقد الشباب أنها طريقة للاتصال.

c) يعتقد بعض الناس أن الرسائل النصية مرض أدبى سيؤدى إلى سقوط اللغة. ومع ذلك، يعتقد الشباب أنها طريقة للابتكار.

d) يعتقد بعض الناس أن الرسائل النصية إبداع أدبى سيؤدى إلى نماء اللغة. ومع ذلك، يعتقد الشباب أنها طريقة للتواصل.

25 Choose the correct English translation:

في حين أن زيادة الوزن أصبحت إحدى مشكلات الدول المتقدمة، لا يزال الناس في بعض الدول النامية يعانون من سوء التغذية، بل يصابون بالمرض بسبب الغذاء غير الآمن.

a) While being overweight has become a problem for developing countries, people in some developed countries still suffer from malnutrition and even get sick from unsafe food.

b) While being overweight has become a problem for developed countries, people in some developing countries still suffer from malnutrition and even get sick from unsafe food.

c) While being overweight has become a problem for developed countries, people in some developing countries still suffer at prosperity and even get sick from unsafe food.

d) While being overweight has become a problem for developing countries, people in some developed countries still suffer of malnutrition and even get sick from unsafe food.

26 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"The mobile phone and social media affected our social relations badly. Do you agree? Why? Why not?"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Being smart online

Unit 5

Objectives

امسح الكود



استفد بمحتوى الوحدة الرقمي

Reading : An article about an online video channel; An Article about how to use the internet for research

Writing : An email and an essay on how to use social media sensibly

Listening : Two boys discussing how to use social media; Five teenagers talking about the effects of the internet on young people

Speaking : A presentation

Language : seems to, (be) meant to, (be) supposed to

Life Skills : Critical thinking; Resilience



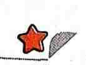
Part (1)
Lessons 1 & 2

A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

banner adverts (n)	إعلانات البانر (اللافتة)	subscribe (v) (d)	يشترك فى موقع
consult (v) (ed)	يستشير	take down (v)	يزيل ملفات سبق رفعها للإنترنت
cookies (n)	ملفات تعريف الارتباط	targeted advertising (n)	الدعاية الموجهة
download (v) (ed)	يقوم بتنزيل ملفات	update (v) (d)	يحدث
follower (n)	متابع	upgrade (v) (d) (n)	يرقى/ترقية
reliable (adj)	موثوق فيه	upload (v) (ed)	يحمل ملفات إلى الإنترنت
search result (n)	نتيجة البحث	up-to-date (adj)	حديث
sponsored adverts (n)	الإعلانات الممولة	views (n)	مشاهدات

I always get my information from reliable sources.





لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك

Vocabulary on Reading texts

advertiser (n)	معلن	junk food (n)	الطعام السريع
avoid (v) (ed)	يتجنب	keywords (n)	كلمات رئيسية
confused (adj)	مرتبك	knowledge (n)	معرفة
effectively (adv)	بفاعلية	mega meal (n)	وجبة كبيرة (بمطعم)
experience (n)	خبرة/تجربة	research (v) (ed)	يقوم ببحث
extra (adj)	إضافى	resource (n)	منبع/مورد
honest (adj)	مخلص/أمين	save (v) (d)	يحفظ
information (n)	معلومات	scan (v) (ned)	يتصفح (يقرأ) للبحث عن شىء محدد

skim (v) (med)	يتصفح (يقرأ) بسرعة	task (n)	مهمة
smartphone (n)	هاتف ذكى	URL Uniform Resource Locator	عنوان URL (على الإنترنت)
source (n)	مصدر		

Workbook Vocabulary

access (n)	مدخل/إمكانية الوصول	musician (n)	موسيقار
adapt (v) (ed)	يتأقلم	obvious (adj)	واضح
app (n)	تطبيق	perfect (adj)	كامل/تام
browser (n)	متصفح	print (v) (ed)	يطبع
button (n)	زر	professional (n) (adj)	محترف/احترافى
character (n)	شخصية/حرف أو رمز بالكمبيوتر	provide (v) (d)	يوفر/يزود
collect (v) (ed)	يجمع	publish (v) (ed)	ينشر (كتبًا/مجلات)
common (adj)	شائع	series (n)	سلسلة
excuse (n)	عذر	sociology (n)	علم الاجتماع
fake (adj)	مزيف	software (n)	برامج الكمبيوتر
identity (n)	شخصية/هوية	spread (v)	ينشر
influence (n) (v) (d)	تأثير/يؤثر على	stamp (n) (v) (ed)	وسم/يوسم/يختم
install (v) (ed)	يركب جهازًا/يثبت برنامجًا	steal (v)	يسرق
instant (adj)	فورى/عاجل	suppose (v) (d)	يفترض/يظن
Irish (adj)	إيرلندى	trust (n) (v) (ed)	ثقة/يثق فى
journalist (n)	صحفى	version (n)	إصدار/نسخة (من برنامج)
moral (n) (adj)	مغزى/أخلاقى/درس أخلاقى		

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It is a well-known fact that animals can .... to different and extreme weather.
   a) adapt b) adopt c) exchange d) update
2. Most famous actors use social media such as Facebook to attract more ....
   a) beginners b) followers c) bullies d) enemies
3. You can .... a free version of the game from the websites for free.
   a) collect b) detach c) upload d) download
4. Before starting the journey, make sure you have a .... map of the area.
   a) doubtful b) distant c) reliable d) disorganised
5. My advice is to .... a lawyer about the matter immediately.
   a) consult b) support c) encourage d) check
6. According to the rules, all shops in the mall have to .... a smoke alarm.
   a) break b) instill c) attach d) install
7. Leonardo DiCaprio, the American actor, played the lead .... in *Titanic*.
   a) person b) character c) director d) servant
8. Advertising experts depend on .... to target their customers' needs.
   a) viruses b) hackers c) cookies d) shares
9. Most job interviews focus on the candidate's ability to communicate ....
   a) affectingly b) effectively c) horribly d) excitedly
10. Car factories use robots to do most of the hard .... in the process of car making.
   a) rights b) plays c) sections d) tasks

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

at the same time	في نفس الوقت	go online	يستخدم الإنترنت
at the touch of a button	بلمسة زر	have access to	يمتلك (يحصل على) وسيلة للوصول إلى
do research	يقوم ببحث علمي	have experience in	لديه خبرة بـ
do things	يقوم بأشياء	keep ... safe	يحافظ على ... آمنًا
adapt to	يتأقلم مع	knowledge of	معرفة بـ
careful about	حريص بشأن	information about	معلومات عن
find out	يكتشف	read on	يستمر بالقراءة
full of	ممتلئ بـ	worry about	يقلق بشأن

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
adapt	يتأقلم	adaptation	تأقلم	adaptable	متأقلم
advertise	يعلن عن	advertiser advertisement	معلن إعلان	-------------------------	
apply	يطبق/يتقدم لوظيفة	application (app) applicant	تطبيق/طلب وظيفة متقدم لوظيفة	applicable	يمكن تطبيقه
collect	يجمع	collection	مجموعة	collective	جماعى
consult	يستشير	consultation	استشارة	consultative	استشارى
influence	يؤثر	influence influencer	تأثير شخص موثر فى تفكير الآخرين	influential	مؤثر/ذو نفوذ
rely	يعتمد	reliance	اعتماد	reliable	موثوق فيه
suppose	يفترض/يظن	supposition	افتراض	supposed	من المفترض

- I prefer to consult old people to young people.
- Farmers always hold consultations about the agricultural techniques.
- There is a consultative group to ask about your inquiries.

Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
adapt	يتأقلم	adjust/modify	reject/abandon	يرفض/ينبذ/يهجر
fake	مزيف	forged/false	genuine/real/original	أصلى/حقيقى
honest	مخلص/أمين	sincere/truthful	deceitful/dishonest	مخادع/غير حقيقى
instant	فورى/عاجل	immediate/urgent	delayed/slow	مؤجل/بطىء
obvious	واضح	apparent/evident	ambiguous	غامض/مشكوك فيه
professional	محترف	expert/experienced	amateur/incompetent	هاوٍ/غير كفء
reliable	موثوق فيه	trustworthy/respectable	dishonest/unreliable	غير أمين/غير موثوق
speed	سرعة	quickness/acceleration	slowness/delay	بطء/تأخير
task	مهمة	duty	irresponsibility	اللامسئولية
upgrade	يرقى	promote/improve	reduce/decrease	يقلل/يخفض

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 We should find instant solutions to water pollution. The synonym of the word "instant" is "..................".
a) original b) slow c) easy d) immediate

2 He had to buy a lot of different numbers of magazines to .... his research.
a) make b) play c) do d) carry

3 You must make sure you .... your important documents safe.
a) stay b) keep c) reply d) deploy

4 My friend .... no previous experience of managing a farm, but he started his own project.
a) had b) made c) grew d) turned

5 It's a good idea to collect rainwater for use in the garden. The noun from the verb "collect" is "..................".
a) collects b) collected c) collection d) collective

6 With the internet, you can get all the information you look for .... the touch of a button.
a) out b) for c) in d) at

7 We sprayed fake snow over the trees to make it look like winter. The antonym of the adjective "fake" is "..................".
a) false b) genuine c) fabricated d) duplicated

8 This is a better and more reliable car than my last one. The word "reliable" is similar in meaning to "..................".
a) trustworthy b) doubtful c) dishonest d) vague

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات الآتية واستخداماتها.

1

load يحمل (بضائع/برامج)/حمولة/عبئًا	- The farmers were loading some vegetables into the cars. - Newcomers couldn't afford the load of the work.
unload يفرغ حمولة	The driver unloaded some boxes from the back of the truck.
overload يفرط فى التحميل (الاستخدام)	Be careful not to overload the washing machine.
download يحمل ملفات من الإنترنت	There are some games that can be downloaded free from the internet.
upload يرفع إلى الإنترنت	It might take 10 minutes to upload this video to the website.

Word	Example
effective مؤثر/فعّال (له تأثير)	The new vaccine is highly effective against the disease.
impressive مؤثر (يترك/ترك انطباعًا جيدًا)/رائع	Mohammad Salah has an impressive career which makes him a legend.
affecting مؤثر (يوحي بالشجن)	The film about the poor girl was so affecting that it made my mother cry.
experience ١- خبرة (اسم غير معدود) ٢- تجربة حياة (اسم معدود)	- He had no previous experience for the job he applied for. - The two children in this story have suffered a lot from difficult experiences in their life.
experiment تجربة (علمية/معملية)	Scientists usually do experiments on animals for new medicines.
publish ينشر (عملًا فنيًا/جريدة/تقريرًا)	The novel was published last year.
spread ١- ينتشر/يمتد/يفرد ٢- ينشر (خبرًا/إشاعة/مرضًا)	- Fire quickly spread through the building. - The disease spread rapidly amongst the village. - Mum spreads sandwiches with cheese like a chef. - How dare you spread such evil lies!

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Astronauts performed some scientific .... during their expedition in the space station.

a) conditions b) experiments c) experiences d) licences

2 COVID-19 is primarily .... from person to person through coughing and sneezing.

a) spread b) published c) extracted d) sprayed

3 It might take a while for this video to .... to your blog as it is long.

a) load b) overload c) upload d) download

4 The recent research about the virus was .... in the Science Journal.

a) spread b) published c) sprayed d) defined

5 The most .... solution to traffic jams is to build more roads.

a) effective b) impressive c) affecting d) pleasant

Practice  Practise more

Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Nahdet Misr is a famous organisation which .... different kinds of books.
a) spreads b) hides c) publishes d) believes

2 Many YouTubers resort to legal and illegal ways to make people .... to their channels.
a) subscribe b) adopt c) activate d) take part

3 The company's name is .... across the top of the letters they send.
a) carved b) published c) printed d) spread

4 Samy found it hard to .... to life in the countryside when his father had to move there.
a) adapt b) adopt c) exchange d) update

5 It might take some minutes to .... these high-definition photos to the website.
a) load b) download c) upload d) overload

6 Most websites use .... that enable them to show adverts which makes them a lot of money.
a) comments b) posts c) cookies d) shares

7 The website doesn't seem to be ....; there are lots of grammar mistakes.
a) available b) expectable c) avoidable d) reliable

8 .... advertising is those advertisements that appear to people out of their interest and activity on the internet.
a) Banner b) Planner c) Amateur d) Targeted

9 Users have to pay to be able to .... the trial antivirus to the full version.
a) diffuse b) upload c) upgrade d) secure

10 Celebrities' posts on Twitter usually receive millions of .... of their fans.
a) sights b) views c) refuses d) excuses

11 .... will pay higher rates to be able to use the prime-time الأعلى مشاهدة entertainment shows.
a) Customers b) Consumers c) Advertisers d) Rivals

12 You can find the site by typing the .... "forest bird" on the search page.
a) keys b) keywords c) images d) results

13 Unfortunately, most young people get all their .... about politics only from social media.
a) fancy b) concept c) election d) knowledge

14 China is a country which has few energy .... such as oil of its own.
a) stations b) reactors c) resources d) wells

15 I .... the waiting list quickly for my name.
a) scanned b) researched c) applied d) replied

16 Email password should be at least 8 .... long and not more than 15 ones.
a) personalities b) characters c) personnel d) photos

17 The actor was wearing a/an .... moustache and beard for the role of an old warrior.
a) fake b) figured c) updated d) covered

18 The text message was ambiguous as it was written in a secret code. The adjective "ambiguous" can be the opposite of the adjective "....................".
a) smart b) updated c) vague d) obvious

19 We must watch for our children who .... online a lot so as to be careful that they aren't misled.
a) come b) go c) travel d) view

20 My young brother can play video games and talk on the phone .... the same time.
a) at b) in c) for d) by

21 As a young actor, you have to be careful .... the roles you accept.
a) at b) on c) in d) about

22 You can run this .... on a computer and a mobile phone if you like.
a) apply b) application c) applied d) applicable

23 Nowadays, almost every young man or woman .... access to the internet through their mobile phones.
a) do b) make c) have d) win

24 This essay can be considered a .... document for everyone who uses social media.
a) consult b) consulted c) consultative d) consultant

25 Please, accept our sincere thanks. The adjective "sincere" is a synonym of the adjective "....................".
a) obvious b) fake c) honest d) clear

26 Nowadays, we have good .... to most websites. *(Longman)*
a) stress b) accent c) across d) access

27 I must .... my doctor; I have a chest pain. *(Longman)*
a) result b) insist c) consult d) insult

28 I need to .... my antivirus software to make my personal computer fully protected. *(Longman)*
a) date b) update c) deactivate d) vibrate

29 Is it easy to .... videos to YouTube? *(Longman)*
a) upload b) download c) load d) overload

30 .... are small pieces of information which tell websites where we've been online and what we were looking at. *(Longman)*
a) Cookies b) Antiviruses c) Downloads d) Hackers



seem to/(be) meant to/(be) supposed to

1 seem/seems/seemed

We use "seem to" to talk about how something or someone appears to be.

للحديث عن كيف يبدو شيء ما أو شخص ما وخاصة عندما لا نكون متأكدين تمامًا.

seem/seems/seemed يبدو

Rule	Usage
seem / seems + adj.	He seems angry. You seem ill. He seemed pleased with his new job.
seem to be + adj. seem to be + n seem to be + v.ing seem to + inf.	للتعبير عن المضارع يأتي بعد to be صفة أو اسم أو فعل مستمر بـ ing . He seems to be clever. It seems to be true. He seems to be a driver. He seems to be playing a game. ويمكن أن يأتي بعد to أي فعل في المصدر. Belal seems to like his new laptop. They seem to work hard.
seem to have + P.P.	للتعبير عن الماضي. You seem to have made a lot of money. I seem to have lost my car keys.
seem to have been + P.P.	للتعبير عن المجهول في الماضي. The car seems to have been repaired by a clever mechanic.
seem like/as if يبدو كما لو	Ola seems like a nice girl. The last few days seemed like a dream. It seemed as if the end of the world had come.
It seems that + جملة	It seems that you have lost weight. It seems that our team will lose the next match. It seemed that someone had left the building unlocked.
There seem to be	There seem to be a lot of people outside.

Negative

Rule	Negative	Examples
seem	don't seem	They don't seem to be playing well.
seems	doesn't seem	Farah doesn't seem to be happy at her new school.
seemed	didn't seem	Lack of money didn't seem to be the main problem.



- لا تستخدم seem فى المجهول ولا فى الاستمرار بعد v. to be

He is seeming happy. ✗
He seems happy. ✓
The vase is seemed to be broken. ✗
The vase seems to be broken. ✓

2 mean/means/meant

	Rule	Usage
mean/means/meant	mean	تأتى mean بمعنى "يقصد/يعنى". The red light means 'Stop'.
	mean (that)	I mean (that) we'll have to leave early – that's all.
	(be) meant to + inf.	من المفترض أن: للحديث عن الغرض أو الحقيقة من شىء ما. School is meant to be educational.
		للحديث عن شىء متوقع. They were meant to arrive by now.
		للحديث عن شىء مقصود. It was meant to be a chocolate cake, but I dropped it.

لاحـظ أن be meant to مجهـول ولذلـك دائمـًا قبلها المفعول أما إذا كانت الجملة للمعلوم فلا تسـبق ب v. to be ويكون الفاعل عاديًا ويكون معناها أن فلانا قصد شيئا من كذا مثل:

Alexander the Great meant Alexandria to be the capital of Egypt.

وعند تحويلها للمجهول تصبح

Alexandria was meant to be the capital of Egypt.

Negative

Rule	Negative	Examples
mean	don't mean never mean	You don't really mean that, do you? I never mean to hurt or harm anyone.
means	doesn't mean never means	He doesn't mean to insult you. He never means to insult you.
meant	didn't mean never meant	I didn't mean to learn magic. I never meant to learn magic.
be meant	am not/isn't/ aren't meant	You can go, Ahmed, you aren't meant to be helping me.

3 be supposed to + inf.

Rule	Usage
(be) .... supposed to .... من المفترض أن	to talk about obligation للحديث عن الالتزام والاضطرارية. - I'm supposed to cook dinner tonight.
	to talk about what something or someone is likely or expected to do or be للحديث عن شيء ما أو شخص ما يحتمل أو يتوقع أن يفعل أو يكون. - It is supposed to rain this afternoon.
	to talk about arrangements للحديث عن الترتيبات - I'm supposed to meet my colleagues on Monday evening.
	to talk about our beliefs about something للحديث عن معتقداتنا عن شيء ما. - Samsung is supposed to be the best phone that you can buy.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I can't join you for lunch. I'm .... attend a meeting in ten minutes.
a) supposing to
b) supposing
c) supposed
d) supposed to

2 He .... to have been studying for the test all night.
a) is supposing
b) supposed
c) seems
d) meant

3 The hospital .... to help the local people, but everyone came to it.
a) supposed
b) was meant
c) is seemed
d) was meaning

4 I hope that you have read the report and understand what it ....
a) seems
b) is supposed
c) means
d) is meaning

5 I am supposed .... for the job advertised in the local newspaper before next week.
a) applying
b) will apply
c) apply
d) to apply



Practice



Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The Eiffel Tower .... to attract people to one of the exhibitions, but it has become one of the monuments.
a) was meaning b) seems c) was meant d) is supposed

2 There were some problems at first, but they .... to have been solved.
a) meant b) seem
c) supposed d) will be supposed

3 I shouldn't eat too much. I .... to be on a diet.
a) 'm supposed b) 'm not supposed c) seem d) was meant

4 It .... to be an apology, but it made her angry.
a) is seemed b) is meant c) supposed d) was meant

5 The wedding .... to be a secret, so how did you find out about it? Did Leila tell you?
a) meant b) is seemed c) was supposed d) was supposing

6 Ali always reaches his office before the appointed time. He .... to be enjoying his job.
a) is meant b) seems c) supposed d) is seemed

7 The food .... to feed the poor, but everyone had a share of it.
a) was meant b) was seemed c) was supposing d) is supposed

8 Collecting money .... to make us happy, but to some people, it has become an aim.
a) means b) is meant c) is seeming d) supposed

9 Yasser's phone never stops ringing. He .... to know a lot of people.
a) seems b) was meant c) was supposed d) is seeming

10 The garbage .... today. Please take it out.
a) didn't suppose to collect b) is supposed to collect
c) is supposed to be collected d) was meant to collect

11 What are you doing at work? You .... to be on holiday.
a) seem b) mean c) are meaning d) 're supposed

12 They stay at home all the time. They never .... to go anywhere.
a) supposed b) seem c) are supposed d) are meant

13 The boss is asking for a technician. The photocopier doesn't .... to be working.

a) mean b) suppose c) seem d) need

14 That piece of cloth .... to be a shirt, but the tailor made it a pair of trousers.

a) seemed b) was meant c) supposed d) was supposing

15 My teacher is pleased with me nowadays. My English .... to be getting better.

a) was supposed b) is seemed c) seems d) means

16 The open space .... to be a playground for youth, but it has turned into a market.

a) seems b) meant c) supposed d) was meant

17 I'd better hurry. I .... to be meeting Ahmed in ten minutes.

a) seem b) 'm supposed c) was meant d) was supposed

18 The burglars must have come in through the window as the lock .... to be forced.

a) seems b) is meant c) is supposed d) needs

19 Mohamed is much better after his illness, but he's still .... to do any heavy work.

a) meant b) not supposed to c) seemed d) supposed

20 All my friends .... to congratulate me when I got married, but only a few of them phoned me.

a) were supposed b) seemed
c) meant d) are supposed

21 Car drivers are .... to wear seat belts. (Longman)

a) seemed b) supposing c) supposed d) meaning

22 Rami's homework .... to be full of mistakes; the teacher is angry with him. (Longman)

a) means b) supposes c) seems d) sees

23 A: Did he mean .... her late at night? B: No, it was a mistake. (Longman)

a) to call b) to be called c) call d) to calling

24 She .... to have a hard time in that factory. She wants to look for another job. (Longman)

a) supposed b) seems c) is seemed d) is meant

25 They are supposed to arrive tomorrow. This sentence shows .... (Longman)

a) ability b) impossibility c) prohibition d) expectation

26 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct.

a) Our guests were supposing to come at 7:30, but they were late.

b) Our guests were seemed to come at 7:30, but they were late.

c) Our guests were supposed to come at 7:30, but they were late.

d) Our guests were seeming to come at 7:30, but they were late.

27 "We are supposed to wear a uniform at work." This means ....

a) it's necessary to do so
b) we aren't allowed to do so
c) it's impossible to do so
d) it's kind of us to do so

28 One answer to the following sentence is grammatically incorrect: "You are supposed to obey your parents." This means that ....

a) it's necessary to do so
b) it's your duty to do so
c) it's forbidden to do so
d) it's advisable to do so

29 "My friends .... to wait for 2 hours, but they left after an hour."

a) were supposed
b) were meaning
c) seem
d) mean

30 One of the following sentences is grammatically correct.

a) He was meant to be a doctor, but he preferred to be a squash player.

b) He was meaning to be a doctor, but he preferred to be a squash player.

c) He seemed to be a doctor, but he preferred to be a squash player.

d) He was supposing to be a doctor, but he preferred to be a squash player.

31 Let's go to the party. It .... interesting.

a) is meant
b) is supposing to be
c) supposes
d) seems to be

32 You .... problems with your washing machine.

a) seem to be having
b) are supposed to have
c) are seemed to have
d) are meant to have

33 The new method .... improve agriculture, but it was incorrectly used.

a) was supposing
b) seems to
c) was meant to
d) seemed

34 Maher .... to be good at interpreting, ... he?

a) didn't seem/doesn't
b) seemed/did
c) doesn't seem/does
d) seems/does

35 My little brother .... English fast.

a) seems learn
b) seems to have learnt
c) seems learning
d) is meaning to learn

Test yourself



Take a test

Part (1)
(Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 It wasn't easy for me to .... to the new regulations in our company's system.
a) adapt b) adopt c) admire d) admit

2 I was astonished at the slowness of my new bike. The noun "slowness" is an antonym to the noun"..................".
a) greed b) speed c) habit d) custom

3 How long will it take to .... this sand onto the lorry?
a) load b) overload c) download d) upload

4 The police are trying to discover the .... of the criminals who broke into the bank.
a) respect b) description c) identity d) prosperity

5 To apply for the babysitter job, you must have some .... working with kids.
a) experiment b) research c) inspection d) experience

6 You've really got no need to worry .... your weight. You look smart.
a) in b) about c) for d) at

7 Many young people are fond of having a great number of .... on social networking sites.
a) bloggers b) loaders c) followers d) advisors

8 My uncle works for a company that .... reference books.
a) spreads b) rehearses c) deploys d) publishes

9 Where did you get your wedding invitations ....? They have a creative design.
a) carved b) published c) printed d) spread

10 To hear the full interview, ... to the free National Geographic News podcast.
a) subscribe b) describe c) inscribe d) prescribe

11 My little cousin doesn't .... anyone about his career, so he gets in trouble.
a) invent b) summon c) expertise d) consult

12 Customers gain .... to up-to-date information through a computer database.
a) recess b) exit c) access d) entry

13 I always use Google Chrome as my default internet ....
a) image b) hardware c) media d) browser

14 The .... of the film was that crime does not pay.
a) aspect b) moral c) role d) start

15 The latest Windows automatically .... your antivirus settings.
a) deteriorates b) outdates c) reverses d) updates

Language

16 The match .... to start at 8:30, but it was cancelled.
a) seemed b) is meant c) was supposed d) wanted

17 Schools .... to follow rules of safety.
a) supposed b) are meant c) are seemed d) must

18 The car engine is meant ....
a) to check b) to have checked c) to be checking d) to be checked

19 Cookies are .... to make it easier for us to use the internet.
a) meant b) seems c) suppose d) meaning

20 Students .... to do their best to succeed.
a) suppose b) are supposed c) supposed d) are supposing

21 Ali .... to study hard to get high marks.
a) suggested b) is meaning c) is supposed d) is seemed

22 What .... to do to improve your memory?
a) you are supposed b) did you suppose
c) you are meant d) are you supposed

23 The Great Wall of China was .... to be a barrier between two cities, but it has turned into a tourist attraction.
a) meant b) seemed c) supposing d) meaning

24 We .... to go to the party, but we got an important meeting.
a) seemed b) are supposed c) are meant d) were supposed

25 Clothes .... be getting more and more expensive all the time.
a) seem to b) are supposed c) are meant d) want to

26 There .... to be so many choices and we've only got a limited amount of money.
a) is supposed b) meant c) seem d) is meant

27 I .... to buy groceries this Friday as my wife is ill.
a) suppose b) 'm supposed c) have supposed d) 'm supposing

28 **A:** What is the problem with her? **B:** I don't know, but she .... to have a high temperature.
a) seems b) is meant c) meant d) supposed

29 If something "makes sense", it .... reasonable.
a) meant b) is meant c) seems d) is supposed

30 I'm sorry I didn't .... to hurt you.
a) meant b) supposed c) seem d) mean




Part (2)

Lessons 3 & 4

A Vocabulary

Vocabulary on Listening texts

addicted (adj)	مدمن	order (n)	ترتيب
anyway (adv)	على كل حال	platform (n)	منصة
behaviour (n)	سلوك	pleased (adj)	مسرور
birth (n)	ميلاد	presentation (n)	عرض تقديمى
brainstorm (n)	عصف ذهنى	privacy (n)	خصوصية
connect (v) (ed)	يتصل/يوصل/يربط	profile (n)	الملف الشخصى/التعريفى
cons (n)	عيوب	programmer (n)	مبرمج
criticise (v) (d)	ينتقد	programming (n)	برمجة
cute (adj)	لطيف	pros (n)	مميزات
develop (v) (ed)	يطور	rank (n) (v) (ed)	رتبة/يضع فى رتبة (ترتيب)
each (pron)	كل	safely (adv)	بأمان
employee (n)	موظف	sensible (adj)	عاقل
entertain (v) (ed)	يسلى/يستضيف	similar (adj)	مشابه
exciting (adj)	مثير/رائع	solve (v) (d)	يحل
fire (v) (d)	يفصل من العمل	support (n) (v) (ed)	دعم/مساندة/يدعم
forever (adv)	للأبد	symbol (n)	رمز
forum (n)	منتدى	take care (v)	يهتم
game (v) (d)	يمارس ألعاب الفيديو	teen (n)	مراهق
guide (n) (v) (d)	مرشد (كتاب إرشادى)/يرشد	unsuitable (adj)	غير مناسب
imagine (v) (d)	يتخيل	useful (adj)	مفيد/نافع
join (v) (ed)	يلتحق بـ	victim (n)	ضحية
mention (v) (ed)	يذكر		


لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك


Workbook Vocabulary

represent (v) (ed)	يمثل/ينوب عن	explain (v) (ed)	يفسر
feelings (n)	مشاعر	highlight (v) (ed) (n)	يسلط الضوء/عمل بارز
register (v) (ed)	يسجل	example (n)	مثال
purpose (n)	غرض	linking word (n)	أداة ربط
viewpoint (n)	وجهة نظر		

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Unfortunately, most kids are now .... to surfing the internet and games.
a) addicted b) depicted c) avoidable d) available

2 Mandela became a/an .... of the struggle for human rights in Africa and the whole world.
a) status b) image c) symbol d) story

3 At the family party, my uncle, a former sailor, ... us with exciting stories of his adventures at sea.
a) implanted b) entertained c) annoyed d) departed

4 The World Economic .... is held in Davos at the end of January every year.
a) Club b) Championship c) Race d) Forum

5 It's the parents' job to train children in acceptable standards of ....
a) behaviour b) lecture c) culture d) rapture

6 The Ministry of Education has set up a special .... for online learning and communication between the teacher and the student.
a) pavement b) building c) platform d) facility

7 The actress complained that the photographs taken without her approval were an invasion انتهاك of her ....
a) fame b) privacy c) wealth d) health

8 The oil company is known for paying the .... pretty well.
a) crews b) employers c) employees d) robbers

9 The secretary asked the head teacher how many students have .... for English summer classes.
a) treated b) retired c) resigned d) registered

10 Five Egyptian female players are now .... in the top ten squash players in the world.
a) graded b) retired c) ranked d) divided

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

after all	على أية حال	in person	شخصيًا
as a result of	كنتيجة لـ	in short	باختصار
do a blog post	يعد لمنشور على مدونة	keep in contact with	يُبقى على اتصال مع
for ages	لعصور (لفترة طويلة)	keep ... entertained	يسلى/يجعلهم مسرورين
have a problem	لديه مشكلة	make rules	يعد القواعد
have an effect on	له تأثير على	on your own	بمفردك
in a few years' time	فى خلال سنوات قليلة	pay attention to	يهتم بـ
divided into	مقسم إلى	set of	مجموعة من
loads of	كثير من	share with	يشارك مع

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
addict	يدمن	addiction	إدمان	addictive addicted	مسبب للإدمان مدمن
connect	يتصل	connection	اتصال	connected	متصل
criticise	ينتقد	criticism	نقد/انتقاد	criticised	منتقد
employ	يوظف	employment employee employer	توظيف موظف صاحب العمل	employed employable	موظف قابل للتوظيف
entertain	يسلى	entertainment	تسلية/ترفيه	entertaining	مسلٍّ
imagine	يتخيل	imagination	خيال	imaginative imaginary	خيالى (مبدع) خيالى (بعيد عن الواقع)
register	يسجل	registration	تسجيل	registered	مسجل (رسميًا)
represent ★	يمثل	representation representative	تمثيل/إنابة عن مندوب/ ممثل	representative	نموذجى/تمثيلى (نيابيا)

- The President was represented at the conference by the Minister.
- The lawyer was very efficient at the representation of the man in trial.
- My brother works as a sales representative for a famous company.
- These paintings are representative of the modern painting trend.



Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
criticise	ينتقد	condemn/blame	approve/praise	يستحسن/يمتدح
cute	لطيف	attractive/charming	hateful/ugly	كريه/قبيح
entertain	يسلى/يستضيف	amuse/satisfy	annoy/displease	يضايق
fire	يفصل من العمل	dismiss/sack	employ/hire	يوظف/يستأجر
privacy	خصوصية	secrecy	publicity	دعاية
register	يسجل	enroll/record	erase	يمحو/يزيل
represent	يمثل	serve/speak for	differ/oppose	يختلف/يعارض
similar	مشابه	alike	different/opposite	مختلف/مقابل
support	دعم	assistance/backing	discouragement/hindrance	عدم تشجيع/إعاقة

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 She got fired from her first job for being late. The antonym of the verb "fire" is "..................".

a) sack b) dismiss c) employ d) apply

2 I'm sorry, I didn't .... attention to what the presenter said about the weather.

a) pay b) push c) cost d) buy

3 The book is divided .... six sections, each one is about 20 pages.

a) for b) into c) on d) at

4 All rules are .... to ensure that all games are fair for everyone.

a) called b) broken c) done d) made

5 .... short, the report says that more money should be spent on reforming the road system.

a) At b) In c) On d) Out

6 I am keen to keep in close .... with you on this subject. Keep in contact with me.

a) rehearse b) connection c) communication d) contact

7 The two houses are similar in size, but different in style. The synonym of the adjective "similar" is "..................".

a) far b) puzzled c) representative d) alike

8 She has been sharply criticised for her comments. The noun from the verb "criticise" is "..................".

a) criticised b) criticises c) criticism d) critical

9 She entertained the children with stories, songs and drama. The verb "entertain" is the opposite of "..................".

a) annoy b) satisfy c) reply d) amuse

10 The lawyer represented the criminal at court. The verb "represent" is similar in meaning to "..................".

a) differ b) act c) introduce d) speak for

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات الآتية واستخداماتها.

1

each
نستخدم (each) عندما نفكر فى الأشخاص أو الأشياء بشكل منفصل، واحد فى كلّ مرة.

- He was holding a pen in each hand.
- The teacher will ask each student to hand his essay in person.

every
نستخدم (every) عندما نفكر فى الأشخاص أو الأشياء معًا، فى مجموعة تعنى (كل شىء) أو (الجميع) أو (الكل).

Omar has seen a lot of films this month. He enjoyed every one of them.

2

platform
١- رصيف القطار
٢- منصة (يقف عليها المتحدث)
٣- منصة إلكترونية (مثل موقع تواصل اجتماعى)

- The Aswan train leaves from platform six.
- He stepped up onto the platform and looked out into the audience.
- Due to COVID-19, many educational platforms emerged to help students study online.

pavement
رصيف الشارع

He stopped the car just off the pavement.

3

represent
يمثل/ينوب عن (منظمة/مجموعة)

He represented his company at the meeting.

act
١- يتصرف
٢- يمثل (يقوم بدور) فى عمل فنى

- My parents are always telling me how I should act and what I should say.
- As a child, she began acting in television commercials.

sensible عاقل/ حكيم/ عملى	- The young manager is sensible and can take good decisions. - It's sensible to keep a note of your passport number.
4 **sensitive** حساس (لفهم مشاعر الناس/ سريع التأثر)	- Our teacher is very sensitive to other people's feelings. - Coral reefs are very sensitive to changes in seawater temperature.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Our geography teacher explained that each colour on the map .... a different area.
a) represents b) acts
c) attaches d) connects

2 There was a small raised .... at one end of the meeting room for the speaker to stand on.
a) pavement b) side
c) platform d) stop

3 There were cars parking along .... side of the street.
a) both b) all
c) every d) each

4 .... person should have a role in the progress of their country.
a) Neither b) Every
c) Either d) Both

5 It would be .... to consult a parent or a teacher if you faced a problem on the internet.
a) sensible b) sensitive
c) insane d) powerless

Practice 

Vocabulary General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 You shouldn't add a lot of personal data on your Facebook .... so as not to be misused by any hackers.
a) profile b) drawer c) desk d) book

2 The doctor should have .... the risks of the treatment to the patient before starting it.
a) waved b) told c) promised d) explained

3 Some people prefer to .... lines when they read so that they can memorise the information.
a) cut b) enlighten c) highlight d) darken

4 The songs of some new folk singers are .... as they contain slang language.
a) punished b) criticised c) rewarded d) praised

5 Grandmother .... her grandchildren with her funny stories and exciting songs.
a) entertained b) delayed c) inspected d) trained

6 Some experts believe that children need to .... things for themselves in order to learn from them.
a) reward b) experience c) award d) cure

7 The club provides a .... for people who share an interest in history.
a) home b) view c) seminar d) forum

8 The old man said that he couldn't .... his life without his wife.
a) imagine b) stop c) retire d) demand

9 Facebook has become the most important social media .... all over the world.
a) pavement b) platform c) view d) canal

10 The man says he's unable to give up smoking as he's completely .... to it.
a) addicted b) attained c) attacked d) applied

11 The police officer behaved in a .... way and didn't lose his self-control.
a) sensible b) sensitive c) senseless d) sensory

12 There was an accident on the highway yesterday, fortunately, there were no ....
a) researchers b) victims c) survivors d) inventors

13 The .... should be informed about the new instructions and rules in the company.
a) employers b) sections c) employees d) officers

14 The company director will be making short .... in the meeting.
a) complaints b) products c) interviews d) presentations

15 The university is .... number one in the country for engineering.
a) degreed b) ranked c) divided d) shared

16 You can .... for the new course online or in person.
a) register b) study c) rehearse d) reverse

17 The theme of the novel is based on the .... of the writer and doesn't relate to real life.
a) imagine b) imaginative c) imaginary d) imagination

18 He can only walk with the assistance of a stick. The word "assistance" is the synonym of the word "..................".
a) report b) rapport c) support d) export

19 The students who were on the trip were divided .... three groups according to their age.
a) at b) into c) with d) about

20 Although the mobile helps young people to .... in contact with their friends, it can waste their time.
a) keep b) leave c) depart d) pay

21 Strict rules should be .... to limit the increase in air pollution.
a) ignored b) done c) made d) finished

22 The teacher ordered the class to stop talking and .... attention to what she said.
a) spend b) buy c) cost d) pay

23 My little sister loves to share her toys .... other children.
a) with b) into c) at d) about

24 There is a .... between pollution and the death of trees.
a) connect b) connection c) connected d) connective

25 He entertained us for hours with his stories and jokes. The verb "entertain" is an antonym of the verb "..................".
a) annoy b) amuse c) assist d) delay

26 Unfortunately, my friend has become technology ....; he spends too much time using the internet for unnecessary things. (Longman)
a) suggested b) protested c) protected d) addicted

27 .... is the state of being free from public attention. (Longman)
a) Publicity b) Piracy c) Privacy d) Accuracy

28 Mr Awany is going to .... our company at the upcoming conference. He will speak on behalf of the entire staff. (Longman)
a) reproduce b) represent c) introduce d) produce

29 The little girl is so cute. "Cute" is opposite in meaning to "..................". (Longman)
a) poor b) rich c) ugly d) attractive

30 There were .... of people standing around a TV set watching the final match in the club. (Longman)
a) loads b) loans c) leads d) loons



Other uses

seem to/(be) meant to/(be) supposed to

1 seem/seems/seemed

seem/seems/seemed	Rule	Usage
	It seems to somebody (that)	يبدو لشخص أن ... It seems to me that you don't have much choice.
	seem (state verb)	فعل غير حركى (حالة) يسمى linking verb يربط الفاعل بالاسم أو الصفة ولا يأتى بعده الحال مثل الأفعال الحركية (dynamic/action) The boys seem satisfied with the teacher's explanation.
	doesn't seem himself	لوصف العاطفة. He doesn't seem to himself these days. لا يبدو فى حالته هذه الأيام.
	seeming (adj)	ظاهرى (صفة قبل اسم فقط) We were suspicious of their seeming enthusiasm حماس ظاهرى.
	seemingly (adv)	ظاهريا (حال غالبا لوصف الصفة والجملة) She was seemingly unaware of all the activity around her. Seemingly, he borrowed the money from the bank.

2 mean/means/meant

mean/means/meant	Rule	Usage
	mean	يقصد/يعنى (تأتى آخر السؤال) وليس بعدها to. What does this word mean?
	be meant to be + v.ing	تستخدم be بعد to ثم v.ing للتعبير عن استمرار حدث فى المضارع. Come on, Osama, you're meant to be cleaning the room.
	mean + v.ing = involve	يشمل – يضم Being a doctor means working long hours.
	mean + to + inf. = intend	ينوى – يهدف الى I wasn't criticising you, I really meant it for the best. I didn't mean to upset you.
	mean that + جملة	The high cost of housing means that many young people can't afford to buy a house.
	a means – means	تعنى وسيلة وهى مفرد وبها s والجمع به s ولكن بدون a. The train is an important means of transport.
	mean something to	للدلالة على أهمية شىء بالنسبة لشخص. I know how much your work means to you. Time meant nothing to me while I was travelling.
	mean (adj.)	تستخدم كصفة بمعنى قاسٍ أو غير عطوف وبمعنى بخيل أيضًا. It was mean of him not to invite her. Don't be so mean to her! He's too mean to buy a present for his wife.

لاحظ

- لا نستخدم الفعل mean فى الاستمرار فى معظم أحوالها.

What is this word meaning? ✗	This is meaning trouble. ✗
What does this word mean?	This means trouble. ✓

3 be supposed to

	Rule	Usage
suppose/be supposed to	be + not supposed to	١- تعبر be + not supposed to عن المنع والحظر وعدم السماح وخاصة مع النفى. You're not supposed to do something= you aren't allowed You're not supposed to park your car here. It's private parking only.
	be supposed to = be said to	٢- تستخدم be supposed to بمعنى يقال/قيل. He is supposed to have twelve children. = He is said to have ....
	suppose (verb)	يفترض What makes you suppose we're going to sell the house?
	It is supposed that + جملة	إذا استخدمنا that فنستخدم جملة بعدها. It is usually supposed that girls are less aggressive than boys.
	Suppose/Supposing	تأتى فى أول الجملة بديلًا لـ if بمعنى الافتراض (شىء غير حقيقى). Suppose you lost your job tomorrow, what would you do?

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 She means to open her own shop. The word "means" here means "..................".
a) intends b) must c) needs d) indicates

2 The internet is an important means of communication. The word "means" here means a/an ....
a) intention b) way c) need d) indication

3 After being fired from the company, he .... nervous.
a) seemed b) was supposed c) was meant to d) meant

Summary

seem to + inf.

seem

seem + adj.

– She seems angry today. – He seems disappointed.

seem + adj → The story seems to be true.
seem + noun → He seems to be a doctor.
seem + v.ing → She seems to be doing her homework.

seem + to have + P.P.

للتعبير عن الماضي.

– The winner seems to have trained hard last week.

be meant to + inf.

be meant to + inf.

To talk about what the purpose or truth of something should be.
للحديث عن الغرض أو الحقيقة من شيء ما.

– The finished project is meant to be more than just a power station.
– This building was meant to be a huge museum.

للحديث عن شيء متوقع.
To talk about something that is expected.

– They were meant to arrive by now.
– He was meant to get home now.

للحديث عن شيء مقصود.
To talk about something that is intended.

– It was meant to be a chocolate cake, but I dropped it.
– Her child's present was meant to please her, but she was sad.

be supposed to + inf.

be supposed to + inf.

للحديث عن الالتزام والاضطرارية.
To talk about obligation.
– I'm supposed to get up early tomorrow to catch the train.

To talk about what something or someone is likely or expected to do or be.
للحديث عن شيء ما أو شخص ما يحتمل أو يتوقع ان يفعل او يكون.
– It is supposed to rain this afternoon.

للحديث عن الترتيبات.
To talk about arrangements.
– I'm supposed to meet my colleagues on Monday evening.

للحديث عن معتقداتنا عن شيء ما.
To talk about our beliefs about something.
– Samsung is supposed to be the best phone that you can buy.

Practice



Practise more

Language
General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My teacher .... to be happy.
a) supposed b) seemed c) meant d) are supposed

2 It's blue, but it was .... to be purple.
a) meant b) seemed c) supposing d) meaning

3 Amal .... to phone me last night, but she didn't.
a) was supposed b) is supposed c) supposed d) is supposing

4 There .... to be a mistake in these figures.
a) are supposed b) meant c) were supposed d) seems

5 I'm sorry. I didn't .... to break your vase.
a) mean b) suppose c) seem d) supposed

6 I .... to look after my younger brother while my parents are away.
a) suppose b) 'm supposed c) am supposing d) supposing

7 Do you know what the weather .... to be like tomorrow?
a) is seemed b) is supposed c) is meant d) does seem

8 I seem .... the first student to arrive at school today.
a) to be b) being c) be d) to being

9 Being a teacher means .... a lot of homework.
a) to check b) to be checked c) checking d) checked

10 The high cost of housing .... that many young people can't afford to buy a house.
a) seems b) means c) supposed d) is supposing

11 Why are you outside the factory? You .... to be working.
a) seem b) mean c) are supposed d) are seemed

12 This old computer doesn't .... to be working properly.
a) mean b) suppose c) need d) seem

13 I can't join you for lunch. I'm .... attend a meeting in ten minutes.
a) supposing to b) supposing c) supposed d) supposed to

14 I don't know how long Hany's been working on that project, but it .... like weeks.
a) seems b) supposes c) means d) supposed

15 These shoes don't .... to fit. They're a little small.

a) mean b) seem c) suppose d) want

16 Factories are .... to employ a lot of people and satisfy our needs.

a) seemed b) supposing c) meaning d) meant

17 Egyptian students .... to study day and night to get the full mark.

a) are supposed b) mean c) are seemed d) supposed

18 He .... like an honest person, but then we found out he wasn't.

a) supposed b) is meant c) seemed d) is supposed

19 Don't wait for me. I .... to visit my uncle in hospital after school.

a) seemed b) 'm supposed c) am meaning d) supposed

20 Life in Siwa will probably .... a little strange to you at first, but you'll get used to it.

a) seem b) suppose c) mean d) want

21 He .... to like the new T-shirt; it isn't fashionable. *(Longman)*

a) doesn't seem b) isn't seemed c) isn't supposing d) not supposed

22 I'm .... to tidy my room before I start studying. *(Longman)*

a) have b) seemed c) meaning d) supposed

23 He .... to be absent-minded; he didn't see the car coming towards him. *(Longman)*

a) opposed b) supposed c) meant d) seemed

24 He .... have read many books; he is really knowledgeable. *(Longman)*

a) seems to b) supposed to c) can't d) should

25 The factory .... to provide work opportunities for more than two hundred people. *(Longman)*

a) supposed b) is meant c) is meaning d) seem

26 People aren't supposed to get on the train without a ticket. This means ....

a) it isn't a good idea for people to get on the train without a ticket

b) it is against the law to get on the train without a ticket

c) it is advisable for people not to get on the train without a ticket

d) it is inadvisable for people not to get on the train without a ticket

27 One of the following sentences is grammatically incorrect:

a) He seems that he is innocent.

b) He is seeming to be innocent.

c) He seems to be innocent.

d) He seems innocent.

28 One answer is grammatically correct:

a) We seem to interrupt you while you were asleep.

b) We didn't mean to interrupt you while you were asleep.

c) We supposed to interrupt you while you were asleep.

d) We weren't supposed to interrupt you while you are asleep.

29 One answer to the following sentence is grammatically incorrect:

Amr seems .... a good day.

a) that he has
b) has
c) to have
d) to be having

30 One answer to the following sentence is incorrect:

"My uncle's new car ...."

a) seems like a luxurious one
b) seems to be a luxurious one
c) seems a luxurious one
d) is seeming to be a luxurious one

31 These tablets .... be good for the nerves and sleeplessness.

a) means to
b) seem
c) are meant
d) seem to

32 What .... to do to improve your English?

a) do you seem
b) are you meant
c) do you mean
d) you are supposed

33 A: What is Ahmed's problem? B: I don't know, but he .... angry.

a) is meant to be
b) is supposed to be
c) supposes to be
d) seems to be

34 The children have been playing for an hour now. They .... a wonderful time.

a) are meant having
b) are supposed having
c) seem to be having
d) were supposed to have

35 "You weren't supposed to do that." means: ....

a) You should do that, but you don't.

b) You should have done it, but you didn't.

c) You shouldn't have done it.

d) You shouldn't do that, but you do.

Test yourself



Part (2)
(Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 All the patients at this hospital have .... health problems; it is specialised in treating patients with bone diseases.
a) different b) similar c) sincere d) resourceful

2 The teacher .... a big problem with the slow learners in the school.
a) has b) does c) performs d) owns

3 The head teacher seems to be liked by .... single person in the school.
a) both b) all c) every d) each

4 The company where my father works has only 60 ....
a) employers b) sections c) employees d) officers

5 The famous actor is in charge of the publicity for next year's festival. The noun "publicity" can be the opposite of the noun "..................".
a) privacy b) property c) probability d) acceptability

6 I bought mother a new set .... kitchen knives as a birthday present.
a) of b) for c) in d) with

7 The lazy worker was dismissed from his job. The verb "dismiss" is similar in meaning to the verb "..................".
a) welcome b) retrieve c) defy d) fire

8 The report .... the importance of exercise to maintain a healthy body.
a) deprived b) declined c) granted d) highlighted

9 I understand your .... about the new system, but do not share it.
a) importance b) quarrel c) viewpoint d) treaty

10 The politician tried to make his speech more .... for the audience.
a) entertain b) entertainment c) entertaining d) entertained

11 This maths problem is difficult; you can't do it .... your own.
a) at b) on c) in d) about

12 The tour .... took the tourists around the Grand Egyptian Museum.
a) pioneer b) serial c) speech d) guide

13 Mohamed Salah has become a .... of the successful Egyptian young man who can serve his country.
a) signal b) claim c) symbol d) means

14 The film was .... for the violent and inappropriate scenes in it.
a) criticised b) punished c) rewarded d) praised

15 The World Health Organisation provides the best .... for the exchange of views and ideas about world pandemics.

a) firm b) corporation c) farm d) forum

Language

16 The police are looking for him. He .... to have a criminal background.

a) supposes b) seems c) means d) appears

17 They are happy; they .... be having a nice time.

a) are meaning to b) supposed to c) seem to d) won't

18 You're .... to start work at 8:30 every morning.

a) seemed b) meaning c) wanted d) supposed

19 She is determined to get a ticket for the concert even if it means .... a lot of money.

a) paying b) to pay c) to be paid d) to paying

20 The internet .... to be more important than it really is.

a) supposes b) is supposed c) means d) seeming

21 I'm going to buy this car. It .... to be very good.

a) is seemed b) was seemed c) is supposed d) suppose

22 What .... by "globalisation"?

a) are you meaning b) supposed to mean c) do you mean d) are you seeming to mean

23 Khalid's little boy is a live wire! He plays all day and never .... to get tired.

a) seems b) supposes c) means d) wants

24 That bag .... too heavy for the old woman to carry.

a) is supposed b) is meant c) is seemed d) seems

25 It .... as if there will be rain soon.

a) is supposed b) is meant c) seems d) supposed

26 This is a painting of an elephant, but it was .... to be a horse.

a) seemed b) meant c) like d) supposing

27 She .... to finish her homework, so she can't come with us.

a) is supposed b) supposes c) is seemed d) is meaning

28 He's so .... that he wouldn't give a beggar a crust of bread.

a) seemed b) supposed c) meant d) mean

29 You .... to play loud music after midnight. It disturbs the local residents.

a) are supposed b) are meant c) are not supposed d) are seemed

30 He ....that we must do our best to get the high marks.

a) means b) seemed c) seems d) is meaning

Act ii, scene iii & Act iii scene i

Vocabulary

apologise (v) (d)	يعتذر	patience (n)	صبر
bear (n)	دب	ring (n)	خاتم
blow (v)	تهب (الرياح)	room (n)	مكان/حيز
cave (n)	كهف	shelter (n) (v) (ed)	مأوى/يحمي/يقي
choice (n)	اختيار	spy (n) (v)	جاسوس/يتجسس
disagreement (n)	خلاف	wet (adj)	مبلل/مطير
double (v) (d)	يضاعف/ضعف	wind (n)	رياح
joke (n)	نكتة/فكاهة		

Expressions, Idioms & Prepositions

at the right time	في الوقت المناسب	go mad	يصاب بالجنون
lock somebody out	يحظر/يمنع من الدخول	turn someone's back on	يتجاهل/يتنكر لـ
for all time	للأبد	keep you warm	يبقيك دافئًا
set eyes on	تقع عيناه على		

Practice



Practise more

King Lear Exercises Act ii,scene iii & Act iii scene i

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 You should .... to your customers for wasting their time.
a) rejoice
b) please
c) affect
d) apologise

2 A .... is a large hole that was formed by natural processes in the side of a cliff or hill or under the ground.
a) palace
b) hut
c) cave
d) cottage

3 Money is a source of .... between many couples these days. It causes them a lot of disputes.
a) pride
b) disagreement
c) shame
d) species

4 The material I was buying for these shirts suddenly .... in price, so they are expensive.
a) doubled
b) decreased
c) divided
d) applied

5 The soldier's experiences in the war affected him so much that he .... mad.
a) came
b) went
c) fell
d) gave

6 This is a silly old .... I've heard it lots of times and didn't make me laugh.
a) research
b) view
c) joke
d) riddle

7 Wildlife photography requires a lot of .... You have to wait much for a good photo.
a) speed
b) failure
c) patience
d) atmosphere

8 When it started raining, they took .... under an old forest bridge.
a) clothing
b) vanity
c) pride
d) shelter

9 The soldier was arrested on suspicion of being an enemy ....
a) spy
b) presenter
c) prey
d) director

10 Mahmoud is a good man and would never .... his back on a friend.
a) got
b) grew
c) turn
d) face



للمزيد من الشرح والتدريبات
يرجى الرجوع لملحق المهارات.

An email to a friend

• Write an email to your friend Hesham advising him how to use social media well.



Layout of an E-mail

New message

From .... اسم كاتب الرسالة وعنوان البريد الإلكتروني

To .... اسم المُرسَل إليه وعنوان البريد الإلكتروني

Subject .... موضوع الرسالة

Hi Hesham,

I hope you are fine. This is my advice to you in order to use social media well and effectively. Social media is now a critical part of our lives so we must use it carefully. Therefore, you can depend on social media for several purposes, such as communication, study, paying money, gaining money and so on. But firstly you should decide on your goal and make a plan to achieve it. This will help to measure your results. Social media is not only for fun. Many businesses depend on it for publicity or to promote their products.

As students, we can get benefitted from it by learning language courses online, attending educational lectures, and downloading dictionaries.

I regularly read English novels and stories on some specialised websites and this helped me to improve my English.

The most important thing is that; you shouldn't share your private details and information easily on social media because this is not completely safe nowadays. Also, don't log into weird sites or pages as this will waste your time without any benefit.

Thanks for your time

Bye

Send



Practice  Practise more — Skills Exercises

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

While technology is taking control steadily[1] over individual lives, the reading habit is fast vanishing into thin air. TV and the silver screen are filling the minds of the modern youth, taking the majority[2] of their free time. We have to think seriously about how the growing generations will find time to read.

Video and television are responsible for the declining[3] interest in reading among youth. They do nothing to build up reading skills. If the children's time is devoted to reading, the population would be better educated.

Reading a story is an active partnership between a writer and a reader. Ideas are sketched and the mind of the reader creates the rest, but watching something is totally passive[4].

The problem is that many children read very slowly. It is hardly surprising that such children declare that they find reading boring and prefer to watch television.

Their difficulty is not reading the words – it is interpreting[5] them. They need to be able to read fast enough to feed the mind's hunger for a story. Only by reading daily a child will become a strong and independent reader.

Parents need to be convinced[6] of the importance of preventing their children from wasting their time. Without the television, the child is likely to turn to books for entertainment.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Reading helps people to be ....
a) well-paid b) good actors c) well-educated d) good writers

2 The underlined pronoun "They" refers to ....
a) the youth b) video and television
c) children d) reading skills

3 According to the writer's view, TV is .... means of entertainment.
a) not an effective b) an encouraging
c) an effective d) not a cheap

4 The synonym of the word "independent" is "................".
a) active b) intelligent
c) self-centred d) self-determining

5 What is the reason behind the decline in the reading habit among youth?
a) Lack of free time. b) Not going to schools.
c) Doing sports. d) TV and video.

(1) بثبات (2) الأغلبية
(3) منخفض (4) سلبي
(5) يفسر (6) مقتنع

6 There is a fruitful partnership between a writer and a reader when ....

a) a video is watched
b) a short story is read
c) an article is published
d) a book is sold

7 Children, who read slowly, ...

a) like TV
b) speak fast
c) like reading
d) are disabled

8 The best title for the passage is "..................".

a) The Importance of Reading
b) Technology Pros
c) The Benefits of Technology
d) Children's Preferences

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 Mobile addiction has become one of the psychological problems which many young people suffer from. Doctors have special courses to treat it like any psychological disease.

a) أصبح إدمان الهاتف المحمول من المشاكل العصبية التى يعانى منها الكثير من الشباب، والأطباء لديهم دورات خاصة لعلاجه مثل أى مرض نفسى.

b) أصبح إدمان الهاتف المحمول من المشاكل النفسية التى يعانى منها الكثير من الشباب، والأطباء لديهم دورات خاصة لعلاجه مثل أى مرض نفسى.

c) أصبح إدمان الهاتف المحمول من المشـاكل العصبية التى يعانى منها الكثير من الشـباب، والأطباء لديهم دور خاص لعلاجه مثل أى مرض نفسى.

d) أصبح إدمان الهاتف المحمول من المشاكل النفسية التى يعانى منها الكثير من الشباب، والأطباء لديهم دورات خاصة لمعاملته مثل أى مرض نفسى.

2 Due to technology, advertising has become a real science. Some colleges have already created new departments which are specialised in this science.

a) بسـبب التكنولوجيـا، أصبـح الإعلان "علمًا" حقيقيـًا ولقد قامت بعض الكليات بالفعل بإنشـاء أقسـام جديدة متخصصة فى هذا العلم.

b) بسـبب التكنولوجيـا، أصبح الإعـلام "علمًا" حقيقيـًا ولقد قامت بعض الكليات بالفعل بإنشـاء أقسـام جديدة متخصصة فى هذا العلم.

c) بسـبب التكنولوجيـا، أصبح الإعـلان "علمًا" حقيقيًا ولقد قامـت بعض الكليات بالفعل بإنشـاء مقررات جديدة متخصصة فى هذا العلم.

d) بسـبب التكنولوجيـا، أصبح الإعـلان "علمًا" حقيقيـًا ولقد قامت بعـض الكليات بالفعل بإنهاء أقسـام جديدة متخصصة فى هذا العلم.

3 Egyptian history is full of great women who were ready to sacrifice their lives so that Egypt could get a better future. So, we should all remember them.

a) التاريخ المصرى يزدحم بالنسـاء العظميات المسـتعدات للتضحية بأرواحهن حتى تحصل مصر على مسـتقبل أفضل. لذا، يجب أن نتذكرهن جميعًا.

b) التاريخ المصرى ملىء بالنساء العظميات المستعدات للتضحية براحتهن حتى تحصل مصر على مستقبل أفضل. لذا، يجب أن نتذكرهن جميعًا.

c) التاريـخ المصـرى ملىء بالنسـاء العظميات المسـتعدات للتضحية بأرواحهن حتى تحصل مصر على مسـتقبل مختلف. لذا، يجب أن نتذكرهن جميعًا.

d) التاريـخ المصـرى ملىء بالنسـاء العظميات المسـتعدات للتضحية بأرواحهن حتى تحصل مصر على مسـتقبل أفضل. لذا، يجب أن نتذكرهن جميعًا.

4 Charities play an important role in helping poor people and providing assistance to them. That's why we should support them with our time and money.

a) تلعب الجمعيات الخيرية قاعدة مهمة فى مساعدة الفقراء وتقديم المساعدة لهم ولهذا السبب يجب أن ندعمهم بوقتنا وأموالنا.
b) تلعب الجمعيات الخيرية دورًا مهمًا فى مساعدة الفقراء وتقديم المساعدة لهم ولهذا السبب يجب أن نحرمهم من وقتنا وأموالنا.
c) تلعب الجمعيات الخيرية دورًا مهمًا فى مساعدة الفقراء وتقديم المساعدة لهم ولهذا السبب يجب أن ندعمهم بوقتنا وأموالنا.
d) تلعب الجمعيات الخيرية دورًا مهمًا فى مساعدة الفقراء وتقديم المساعدة لهم ولذلك يجب أن ندعمهم بوقتنا وأموالنا.

5 The New Administrative Capital is a huge project which will take years to complete. However, it will provide a perfect solution to the problem of overcrowding in Cairo.

a) العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة مشروع ضخم سيستغرق سنوات حتى يكتمل ومع ذلك، فإنه سيوفر حلًا عارضًا لمشكلة الازدحام فى القاهرة.
b) العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة مشروع ضخم سيستغرق سنوات حتى يكتمل ومع ذلك، فإنه سيوفر حلًا مثاليًا لمشكلة الازدحام فى القاهرة.
c) العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة مشروع ضخم سيستغرق سنوات حتى يكتمل ولذلك، فإنه سيوفر حلًا مثاليًا لمشكلة الازدحام فى القاهرة.
d) العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة مشروع ضخم سيستغرق سنوات حتى يكتمل ومع ذلك، فإنه سيوفر حلًا مثاليًا لمشكلة السكان فى القاهرة.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

6 يجب ألا يصدق الناس أو يشاركوا كل ما يقرءون على صفحات وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى؛ فهى مليئة بالشائعات التى قد تدمر سمعة الناس واقتصاد البلاد.

a) People don't have to believe or share everything they read on social media pages. They are full of rumours that may destroy people's reputation and the country's economy.
b) People should not believe or divide everything they read on social media pages. They are full of rumours that may destroy people's reputation and the country's economy.
c) People should not believe or share everything they read on social media pages. They are full of fiction that may destroy people's reputation and the country's economy.
d) People should not believe or share everything they read on social media pages. They are full of rumours that may destroy people's reputation and the country's economy.

7 غيرت وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى، وخاصة موقع فيسبوك، أسلوب تواصل الناس وخاصة الشباب؛ لذلك أصبحت جزءًا هامًا من الحياة الحديثة ولا يمكن للشباب الاستغناء عنها.

a) Social media, especially Facebook, have changed the way people communicate, especially young people. Therefore, they have become an important part of modern life and young people cannot stand them.
b) Social media, especially Facebook, have changed the way people connect, especially young people. Therefore, they have become an important part of modern life and young people cannot do without them.
c) Social media, especially Facebook, have changed the way people communicate, especially young people. Therefore, they have become an important part of modern life and young people cannot do without them.
d) Social media, especially Facebook, have changed the way people communicate especially young people. Nevertheless, they have become an important part of modern life and young people cannot do without them.

8 **كثيراً ما تُتهم وسـائل التواصل الاجتماعى بانتهاك خصوصية المسـتخدمين رغم تأكيدها على حرصها على البيانات الشخصية لكل من يمتلك حسابًا بها.**

a) Social media are often accused of violating the privacy of users, despite their assertion that they are keen on the personal data of everyone who has an account with them.
b) Social media are often accused of expecting the privacy of users, despite their assertion that they are keen on the personal data of everyone who has an account with them.
c) Social media are often accused of obeying the privacy of users, despite their assertion that they are keen on the personal data of everyone who has an account with them.
d) Social media are often accused of violating the privacy of users, despite their deformity that they are keen on the personal data of everyone who has an account with them.

9 **كلما تقدم العلم والتكنولوجيا زادت المشـكلات النفسـية التى قد يعانى منها الناس ويتناولها الكُتاب فى قصصهم والمخرجون فى أفلامهم.**

a) The most science and technology advances, the greater the psychological problems that people may suffer from, and writers deal with them in their stories and directors in their films.
b) The more science and technology advances, the greater the psychological problems that people may suffer from, and writers deal with them in their stories and directors in their films.
c) The more science and technology advances, the greatest the psychological problems that people may suffer from, and writers deal with them in their stories and directors in their films.
d) The most science and technology advances, the greatest the psychological problems that people may suffer from, and writers deal with them in their stories and directors in their films.

10 **تحذر وسـائل الإعلام الشـباب من الهجرة غير الشـرعية إلى أوروبا لأنها قد تؤدى إلى فقدانهم حياتهم و ذلك لأنهم يسافرون عبر طرق خطيرة.**

a) Mass media admit young people against illegal immigration to Europe because they may lead of their loss of life as they travel through dangerous routes.
b) Mass media warn young people against legal immigration to Europe because they may lead in their loss of life as they travel through dangerous routes.
c) Mass media warn young people against illegal immigration to Europe because they may lead to their loss of life as they travel through dangerous routes.
d) Mass media warn young people against illegal immigrants to Europe because they may lead for their loss of life as they travel through dangerous routes.

3 **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:**

"Everyone should understand the importance of water in our life and the problems faced during scarcity of water."







Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 We need to run many .... adverts to spread our products widely.
a) sponsored b) active c) shared d) achieved

2 The story of the terrible murder was given a high .... in today's papers.
a) sight b) profile c) character d) view

3 The World Youth .... is held in Sharm El-Sheikh and is attended by young people from all over the world.
a) Scenery b) View c) Seminar d) Forum

4 The weak students of the 6th grade were offered Saturday courses to .... their skills.
a) subscribe b) outdate c) upgrade d) install

5 Text messaging enables people to keep in close .... at all times.
a) link b) connection c) contact d) contraction

6 The project has been criticised as a waste of money. The antonym of the verb "criticise" is ".................".
a) praise b) retreat c) denounce d) reverse

7 There .... to be a problem with the trains this morning.
a) is supposed b) is meant c) means d) seems

8 Finding a job means .... many interviews.
a) attending b) to attend c) to be attended d) being attended

9 It .... to snow last week.
a) seems b) didn't suppose c) wasn't supposed d) meant

10 Libraries .... to be places for reading.
a) seem b) are meant c) supposed d) were meant

11 I want to see that film. It .... to be good.
a) means b) meant c) seemed d) 's supposed

12 Planes are supposed to be the most comfortable .... of transport.
a) means b) mean c) suppose d) seem

13 There is no reason to .... she's lying.
a) suppose b) seem c) mean d) be supposed

14 They .... to be landing at Cairo airport. But if the fog gets any thicker, the plane may be diverted.

a) mean
b) are seemed
c) are supposed
d) are supposing

15 Wael .... to be happy today. – You're right, he has just had good news!

a) opposes
b) supposes
c) seems
d) is seeming

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Uncle Azmy is my favourite family member. He is above sixty years old, but he has the power to lift a bag containing thirty kilos of potatoes: he always does so to help his wife, Aunt Fateema, as a sign of admiration. He is very healthy and always eats fruits and vegetables from his own field. He loves jokes and funny stories. My dad calls this silliness, that's why they are not on the same page. Dad was born five years before Uncle Azmy's birth, so he is wiser and more thoughtful.

When we gather as a family, Uncle Azmy must play a prank on someone. Last time, he secretly put hot sauce in his wife's dish. She got hot and her face was red. Instead of helping her, he tumbled around on the floor, laughing hysterically. Nobody was surprised because that wasn't the first time to see such a situation. I got used to these deeds because I really understand him. This guy had a very strict life throughout his career as an officer. He wasn't allowed to even smile. He always gave and took commands and instructions. When he retired, he was born again as he described his feeling. The only one who is against his actions is my father. He is a seventy-year-old retired man and prefers a strict lifestyle although he hasn't joined the army before.

Uncle Azmy gives me positive vibes about life. Age is never an obstacle to doing whatever you want. Once I tried to create a Facebook account for him I was shocked when I knew that he had it a year before and had already one thousand friends. I immediately searched for him; his account was named Azmy Pranks. What an old man!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16 Although Mr Azmy is old, he is ....

a) wise
b) weak
c) strong
d) helpful

17 Mr Azmy loves his wife so he ....

a) helps her carry heavy bags
b) buys fruits for her
c) plays silly pranks on her
d) calls her darling

18 Mr Azmy is .... years old.

a) sixty
b) about fifty
c) sixty five
d) seventy five

19 Mrs Fateema's face got red ....

a) because she put much hot sauce
b) because she was embarrassed
c) because of her husband's prank
d) when she saw the red sauce

20 The writer's father doesn't like his brother's tricks because ....

a) he does better tricks
b) he is an army officer
c) he thinks they are silly
d) the tricks are dangerous

21 What happened to Mrs Fateema wasn't a surprise as ....

a) everybody likes tricks
b) everybody knows Uncle Azmy's character
c) the writer told them about the trick previously
d) Uncle Azmy did that by mistake

22 The underlined word "vibes" means ....

a) feelings
b) ideas
c) components
d) actions

23 The best title for the passage is "................".

a) The Elderly Life
b) Mr Azmy's Rebirth
c) Cooperation and Love
d) Mr Azmy's Healthy Lifestyle

24 Choose the correct English translation:

- تسهم المشروعات القومية الكبرى التى يتم تنفيذها فى كل أنحاء مصر فى حل الكثير من المشكلات الاقتصادية وتوفير فرص العمل للشباب الطامح إلى حياة أفضل.

a) The major international projects that are being implanted throughout Egypt contribute to solving many economic problems and providing job opportunities for youth aspiring to a better life.
b) The major national projects that are being implemented throughout Egypt contribute to solve many economic problems and provide job opportunities for youth aspiring to a better life.
c) The major national projects that are being implemented throughout Egypt contribute to solving many economic problems and providing job opportunities for youth aspiring to a better life.
d) The major global projects that are being implemented throughout Egypt contribute to solving many economical problems and providing job opportunities for youth aspiring to a better life.

25 Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- It is said that many bad habits such as smoking, drug addiction and violent behaviour usually start in teenage. So, teenagers should be careful not to do this at their age.

a) يقال إن العديد من العادات السيئة مثل التدخين وإدمان الأدوية والسلوك السيء تبدأ عادة في سن المراهقة. لذلك، يجب أن يحرص المراهقون على عدم القيام بذلك في سنهم.

b) يقال إن العديد من العادات السيئة مثل التدخين وإدمان المخدرات والسلوك العنيف تبدأ عادة في سن المراهقة. لذلك، يجب ألا يحرص الشباب على عدم القيام بذلك في سنهم.

c) يقال إن العديد من العادات السيئة مثل التدخين وإدمان المخدرات والسلوك العنيف تبدأ عادة في سن المراهقة. لذلك، يجب أن يحرص المراهقون على عدم القيام بذلك في عصرهم.

d) يقال إن بعض العادات السيئة مثل التدخين وإدمان المخدرات والسلوك العنيف تبدأ عادة في سن المراهقة. لذلك، يجب أن يحرص المراهقون على عدم القيام بذلك في سنهم.

26 Write an email of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Your friend will take part in a reading competition on Arab writers. He asks your advice about the sources he can use to research about them. Give him your advice."

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين
الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 304

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

Learning from our mistakes

Unit 6

Objectives





Reading : Two extracts from an abridged version of *A Christmas Carol* by Charles Dickens

Writing : Captions for a picture story

Listening : A radio programme about regrets, listening for detail

Speaking : Role-play about recognising mistakes

Language : Conditionals (zero, first, second and third)

Life Skills : Learning from our mistakes

Study



Part 1
Lessons 1 & 2



A Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

beg (v) (ged)	يرجو/يتوسل
carol (n)	ترنيمة (أغنية دينية مسيحية)
Christmas (n)	عيد الميلاد
fire (n) (v) (d)	نار/مدفأة/يطلق الرصاص/يفصل من العمل

mean (adj) (v)	بخيل/يعنى/يقصد
pile (n)	كومة
sigh (v) (ed) (n) ★	يتنهد/يتحسر/تنهيدة

When I play football, I sigh heavily because I run a lot. ★




لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك

Vocabulary on Reading texts

actually (adv)	بالفعل
alone (adj) (adv)	بمفرده
assistant (n)	مساعد/بائع
boss (n)	رئيس العمل
breath (n)	نفس/تنفس
continue (v) (d)	يستمر
disappointed (adj)	محبَط
dream (n) (v)	حلم/يحلم
employer (n)	صاحب العمل
enormous (adj)	ضخم
faraway (adj)	بعيد
foggy (adj)	ضبابى/مغيم بالضباب
friendly (adj)	لطيف/ودود
including (prep)	مشتملًا على/بما فيه
large (adj)	كبير

life (n)	حياة
mistake (n)	خطأ
nephew (n)	ابن الأخ/ابن الأخت
novel (n)	رواية
office (n)	حجرة مكتب
pay (v)	يدفع
poor (adj)	فقير/مسكين
probably (adv)	من المحتمل
race (n)	سباق
suddenly (adv)	فجأة
surprised (adj)	مندهش
tone (n)	نبرة صوت
treat (v) (ed)	يعامل/يعالج
upset (v) (adj)	يضايق/يزعج/منزعج

Workbook Vocabulary

call (v) (ed)	يتصل	logical (adj)	منطقى
donation (n)	تبرع	map (n)	خريطة
free time (n)	وقت الفراغ	museum (n)	متحف
generous (adj)	كريم	regret (v) (ted)	يأسف/يندم
health (n)	صحة	waste (v) (d)	يهدر/يسرف
international (adj)	دولى	water (v) (ed)	يروى
invite (v) (d)	يدعو		

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 While we were watching TV, Mother came in carrying a .... of ironing in her arms.
a) pile b) hay c) hole d) wreckage

2 We were shocked to see homeless children .... for food on the street.
a) ordering b) begging c) attacking d) delaying

3 The police think that the .... was started deliberately, not accidentally.
a) shot b) job c) fire d) task

4 The New Capital has a/an .... airport that can receive planes from all over the world.
a) local b) vague c) intimate d) international

5 The clerk .... sadly as he looked at the files he had to finish on his desk.
a) cheered b) sighed c) laughed d) yelled

6 You have to .... for the tickets at some cinemas in cash.
a) take b) borrow c) credit d) pay

7 My friend is determined not to repeat the .... he had made years ago.
a) mistakes b) favours c) decisions d) fights

8 By law, all .... have to offer a safe work environment for their workers.
a) employees b) customers c) employers d) clients

9 Our neighbour is so .... that he never even buys his wife a birthday present.
a) cheerful b) generous c) careless d) mean

10 My aunt has no children, that's why she considers her .... as her sons.
a) nieces b) nannies c) nephews d) sisters

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

at the beginning	فى البداية	get burnt	يحترق/يتأثر بحرارة الشمس
change his mind	يغير رأيه	get lost	يضل الطريق
do exercise	يمارس تمرينات	keep ... warm	يحافظ على الدفء
feel alone	يشعر بالوحدة	make friends	يصادق/يكوّن صداقات
feel healthy	يشعر بصحة جيدة	miss the train	يفوته القطار
ask for	يطلب	run off	يجرى بعيداً
feel about	يشعر بشأن	smile at	يبتسم بوجه
pay for	يدفع مقابل	work for	يعمل لصالح
plenty of	وفرة (كثير) من		

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
assist	يساعد	assistance assistant	مساعدة مساعد	----------------------	
continue	يستمر	continuation	استمرار	continuous	مستمر
donate	يتبرع	donation donor	تبرع متبرع	----------------------	
invite	يدعو	invitation	دعوة	inviting	داعٍ
regret	يأسف/يندم	regret	ندم	regrettable regretful	مأسوف عليه نادم
surprise	يفاجئ/يدهش	surprise	مفاجأة	surprised surprising	مندهش مفاجئ
treat	يعامل/يعالج	treatment	معاملة/علاج	treatable	يمكن علاجه
waste	يهدر/يسرف	waste	هدر/إسراف	wasteful	مبذر

- I always treat my employees well.
- My treatment of my employees affects work.
- Some people think that mental illness is not treatable.



Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
assistant	مساعد	helper/aide	opponent/enemy خصم/ عدو
beg	يرجو/يتوسل	request/urge	give/reply يعطي
disappointed	محبط	depressed/dissatisfied	cheerful/comforted مرح
donation	تبرع	charity/assistance	blockage/hindrance غلق/منع
foggy	مغيم بالضباب	cloudy/misty	clear صافٍ
generous	كريم	hospitable/charitable	mean/miserly بخيل
mistake	خطأ	error/fault	correctness/soundness صواب/سلامة
treat	يعامل	deal with/conduct	abandon/ignore يترك
waste	يسرف/يهدر	exhaust/misuse	maintain/save يحافظ على

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Sami's family are very disappointed about his bad exam results. The synonym of the word "disappointed" is "....................".
a) pleased b) depressed c) impressed d) infected

2 The young boy .... lost during hiking in the mountains and it took three days for the police to find him.
a) got b) fell c) made d) did

3 When my little brother asked me to help him with his homework, I smiled .... him and agreed.
a) in b) about c) at d) of

4 Leaving the heating on all the time wastes electricity. The antonym of the word "waste" is "....................".
a) maintain b) damage c) puzzle d) ignore

5 My brother is determined to have a new job; nothing will make him .... his mind.
a) decide b) plan c) change d) design

6 My grandfather is a very generous man who always gives us presents.
The adjective "generous" is similar in meaning to "……………….".
a) useless b) mean c) miserly d) hospitable

7 My brother and I both work ………………. the same company, but in different branches.
a) as b) for c) on d) among

8 Ahmed wasn't able to attend the meeting as he ………………. the train to Benha.
a) lost b) gained c) caught d) missed

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات الآتية واستخداماتها.

Notes on Vocabulary

	Word	Example
1	**life** الحياة بشكل عام (لا تجمع)	Poor people usually suffer much in life.
	a life طريقة العيش يسبقها أداة نكرة	Sami says that marriage has helped him live a happy life.
	the life حياة شخص أو فئة من الناس يسبقها أداة معرفة	I read an exciting book about the life of Nelson Mandela.
2	**treat** يعالج (يتخذ إجراءات العلاج)	Patients are treated with a combination of medication and exercise.
	cure يعالج/يشفى (من مرض)	- It might be several months before she's fully cured. - Many formerly fatal diseases can now be cured.
	heal تلتئم (الجروح والكسور)	- The wound took a long time to heal. - Vitamin K is needed by the body for healing cuts and bruises.
3	**let** يترك/يسمح (المصدر بدون to)	We let our children read simple stories.
	make يجعل (المصدر بدون to)	We make our children read simple stories.
	cause يسبب (المصدر + to)	He caused the little girls to cry.
	allow يسمح (المصدر + to)	Using good seeds allows farmers to get better crops.

work with يعمل/يتعامل مع	All the nurses in this hospital are qualified to work with children.
work for يعمل لدى/يعمل لصالح	- My brother works for a big company in the city. - We all should work for the improvement of our society.
work in يعمل فى	I hope to work in medical research when I'm older.
work on يعمل على (مشروع/إنجاز)	The writer said that he was working on a new novel.
work as يعمل كـ (بوظيفة)	My grandfather worked as a journalist in Al-Ahram newspaper a long time ago.

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The fault caused the whole computer system .... down.
a) shutting b) shut c) shuts d) to shut

2 My brother is working .... a software developer for one of the biggest computer companies.
a) with b) as c) for d) on

3 Some people seem to let their kids .... whatever they like just to make them happy.
a) do b) does c) doing d) to do

4 It took three months for my broken arm to .... properly.
a) spread b) cure c) treat d) heal

5 Our new boss, Mr Essam, is a cheerful man who seems to love .... very much.
a) the life b) a life c) life d) lives

Practice



Vocabulary
General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My family were .... with the low marks I got in my maths exam.
a) disappointed b) appointed c) acquainted d) satisfied

2 I'm not going to .... any more time on more plans for the project and start at once.
a) benefit b) waste c) keep d) save

3 The relationship between workers and .... should be good in order to achieve good profits.
a) customers b) buyers c) employers d) clients

4 Our old neighbour was a .... man who never gives presents to anyone.
a) main b) generous c) kind d) mean

5 The clerk complains that he can't concentrate on his work as he shares his .... with other colleagues.
a) office b) club c) court d) plane

6 It was .... of the rich man to donate a million pounds for charity.
a) mean b) miserly c) hasty d) generous

7 Teachers have been using visual aids such as .... and pictures in the classroom for a long time.
a) machines b) chalk c) maps d) laps

8 My son always says he wishes I would stop .... him like a child.
a) treating b) curing c) healing d) affecting

9 The Davis Cup is an important .... tennis championship in which all the countries take part.
a) local b) national c) limited d) international

10 I .... not wearing a thicker coat as I got wet in the rain.
a) regretted b) repeated c) pleased d) rejoiced

11 It's dangerous to leave your little children .... at home and go out.
a) lonely b) private c) alone d) particular

12 The church choir كورال is rehearsing some .... to be sung on Christmas Eve.
a) films b) carols c) games d) stations

13 The poor lady .... the doctor to see her sick child and he immediately agreed.
a) begged b) ordered c) refused d) yelled

14 The young boy .... with relief when he saw that he passed the test.
a) pleaded b) cried c) fought d) sighed

15 Several police shots were .... at the criminals, but no one was injured.
a) breathed b) designed c) fired d) warmed

16 The old house had been knocked down, and there was nothing left but .... of stones.
a) holes b) piles c) wells d) pools

17 We made too many errors, and that cost us the game. The word "error" is a synonym of the word "....................".
a) prize b) correctness c) mistake d) clearing

18 I received my friend's .... to his wedding and I was very happy for him.
a) invite b) invitation c) invited d) invention

19 Doctors advise all people to .... exercise to keep healthy and feel relaxed.
a) make b) note c) do d) neglect

20 The client said that he didn't want to pay .... the cold meal that the waiter brought.
a) at b) about c) in d) for

21 My daughter used to change her .... a lot, especially about clothes.
a) head b) mind c) brain d) matter

22 The passenger arrived ten minutes late, so he .... the six o'clock train.
a) missed b) lost c) arrived d) scored

23 I always advise my sister not to make unnecessary long calls as they are ....
a) waste b) wasted c) wasteful d) wasteless

24 The man I work .... isn't kind. He can easily dismiss any worker.
a) for b) on c) as d) at

25 He knocked out his opponent in the third round. The noun "opponent" is an antonym of the noun "....................".
a) enemy b) assistant c) competitor d) accuser

26 He's too .... to buy a toy for his little nephew despite the money he has. *(Longman)*
a) main b) mean c) generous d) sufficient

27 The children .... their father to take them to the funfair on Friday. *(Longman)*
a) agreed b) looked c) made d) begged

28 Sorrowfully, this disease can't easily be .... *(Longman)*
a) disappeared b) dealt c) healed d) cured

29 .... the beginning of the film, a mysterious man appeared to be doing strange things. *(Longman)*
a) At b) In c) Out d) Away

30 He felt sorry for all the opportunities he had missed, so he .... out in despair. *(Longman)*
a) sighed b) signed c) sent d) sighted



If Conditional Forms

حالات If الشرطية

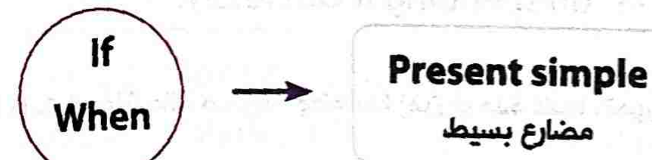
1 The Zero Conditional

الحالة الصفرية

We use the zero conditional to talk about facts and things that are always true:

نستخدم الحالة الصفرية لنتحدث عن الحقائق والظواهر الطبيعية والأشياء التى دائمًا حقيقية والعادات التى تتكرر لدى الشخص.

وتتكون من:



, **Present simple** مضارع بسيط

- If/When you heat water to 100°C, it boils.
- If/When the sun goes down, it gets dark.
- If/When I use the computer for a long time, I usually/always have a headache.
- If we go out with friends, we normally go to a restaurant.

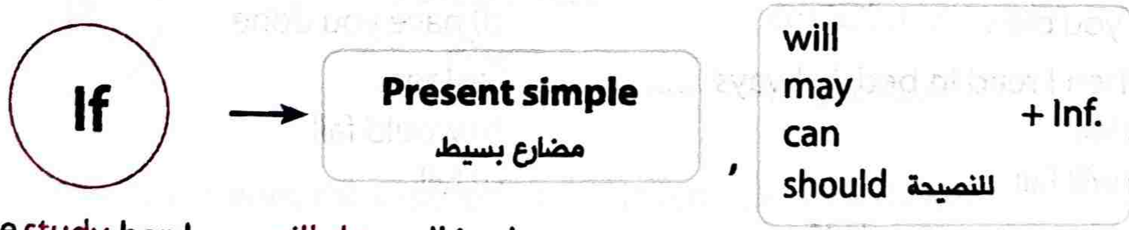
Active	If you heat ice, it melts.
Passive	If ice is heated, it melts.
Yes/No question	Does ice melt if/when you heat it?
Wh- question	What happens if/when you heat ice?

2 The First Conditional

الحالة الأولى

We use the first conditional to talk about events or situations that we think are probable or possible in the future:

- نستخدم الحالة الأولى للأحداث والمواقف التى نعتقد أنها محتملة أو ممكنة فى المستقبل.



- If we study hard, we will do well in the exam.
- If I have a lot of time tonight, I can go to the party with you.
- If he runs very fast, he may catch the bus.


نستخدم (should) فى جواب الشرط للنصيحة والاستحباب و (have to/must) للوجوب والإلزام.

- If you want to get high marks, you should study hard.
- If you lose your credit card, you have to ring the bank.


تعبر الحالة الأولى عن وعد أو أمنية أو تهديد.

- If you come first at your English test, I will give you this good camera.
- If I win the gold medal, I will be very famous.
- I won't lend you any money if you insist on spending it carelessly.


إذا كانت الجملة حالة صفرية ووضع لها زمن أو مدة فإنها تتحول إلى موقف خاص وليس حقيقة مثل:

- If you sit in the sun, you get burned.
- If you sit in the sun today, you will get burned.

4 نستخدم الفعل فى الأمر بدون will فى جواب شرط الحالة الأولى.

- If you see Ali, tell him to call me.

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 If my husband cooks, he usually .... the food.
a) would burn b) burns
c) will burn d) burnt

2 If I feel ill tonight, I .... at home.
a) would stay b) stay
c) will stay d) stayed

3 What .... if you feel unhappy?
a) do you do b) would you do
c) you did d) have you done

4 When I read in bed, I always .... asleep.
a) fell b) would fall
c) will fall d) fall

5 I .... early if you ....
a) come/want b) come/will want
c) will come/want d) will come/will want

3 The Second Conditional

الحالة الثانية

• **We use the second conditional to talk about situations that are imaginary or unlikely in the present or future. It is also used for advice.**

- نستخدم الحالة الثانية للتعبير عن المواقف الخيالية وغير الممكنة فى المضارع والمستقبل. وتستخدم أيضا فى النصيحة.



- If I had a lot of money, I would buy a new car.(I don't have much money at present.)
- If I discovered a planet, I would give it my name. (unlikely to happen)
- If I were a bird, I could fly. I'm not a bird. (untrue in the present)

*** For advice:**

تُستخدم If للنصيحة كالآتى:

If I were you, I	would / wouldn't + Inf.

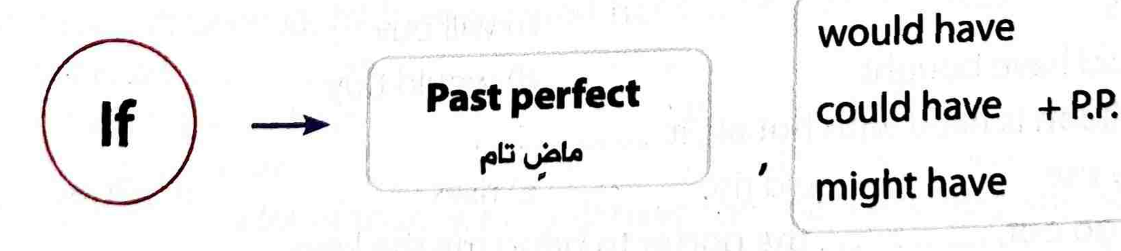
- If I were you, I'd study harder.
- If I were you, I wouldn't buy this expensive mobile.

4 The Third Conditional

الحالة الثالثة

• **We use the third conditional to talk about past situations or actions that did not happen:**

- نستخدم الحالة الثالثة للحديث عن المواقف الماضية أو الأحداث التى لم تتم.



- If he had behaved well, the teacher wouldn't have punished him. (He didn't behave well.)
- If I had locked the car, it wouldn't have been stolen. (I didn't lock it.)

Practice  Practise more

Language General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 If you need money, I .... you some.
a) lend b) can lend c) would lend d) lent

2 What will you do if you .... the exam?
a) would fail b) will fail c) fail d) had failed

3 If it snows, ... drive to the coast?
a) you will b) will you c) would you d) would you have

4 I would have come home earlier if I .... you were worried.
a) knew b) 'd know c) 'd known d) know

5 If you work harder for the next week, I'm sure you .... your exam.
a) won't pass b) pass c) 'd pass d) will pass

6 If they .... me a good salary, I would have accepted the job.
a) had offered b) offered c) offer d) hadn't offered

7 I didn't feel ill yesterday. If I had felt ill, I .... at home.
a) will stay b) would have stayed c) would stay d) stayed

8 If we had waited for another 10 minutes yesterday, we .... the minister.
a) had seen b) will see c) would have seen d) 'd see

9 If I need advice about my life, I usually .... to my mother.
a) talk b) would talk c) had talked d) will talk

10 If Magdi had enough money, he .... a new mobile phone.
a) buys b) will buy c) would have bought d) would buy

11 If a balloon is filled with hot air, it ....
a) may rise b) would rise c) rises d) will rise

12 If you go out, ... the porter to bring me the keys.
a) tell b) would tell c) will tell d) won't tell

13 If I .... ill and missed the interview, I might have got the job.
a) had fallen b) hadn't fallen c) fell d) didn't fall

14 The teacher .... happy if we learnt this lesson by heart.
a) would have been
b) will be
c) would be
d) was

15 If he had tried harder, he .... in achieving his ambition.
a) will succeed
b) wouldn't have succeeded
c) would succeed
d) would have succeeded

16 If I .... a car, I would have to give you a lift to the airport.
a) had
b) had had
c) have
d) was having

17 If I hadn't overslept, I .... on time.
a) will have been
b) would have been
c) would go
d) will be

18 Ali would act in the school play if he .... good at acting.
a) had been
b) were
c) will be
d) would be

19 If I had had my mobile phone yesterday, I .... you.
a) would contact
b) will contact
c) would have contacted
d) contacted

20 They .... on time if they hadn't missed the train.
a) will have arrived
b) would arrive
c) might have arrived
d) will arrive

21 Ice .... if it gets hot. *(Longman)*
a) is melting
b) won't melt
c) melt
d) melts

22 If Rami had listened more carefully to the instructions, he .... that mistake. *(Longman)*
a) wouldn't have made
b) would have made
c) didn't make
d) isn't making

23 If I hadn't been ill, I'd have worked harder. This means that I .... harder because I .... ill. *(Longman)*
a) hadn't worked/was
b) didn't work/was
c) didn't work/am
d) had worked/had been

24 If I .... a lot of money, I would have the chance to help the poor people in my area. *(Longman)*
a) had
b) hadn't had
c) have had
d) have

25 If our garden .... after, trees would have grown better. *(Longman)*
a) had been looked
b) had looked
c) wasn't looked
d) is being looked

26 If you .... to learn a musical instrument, you have to practise.
a) will want
b) wanted
c) want
d) had wanted

27 If the weather was nice today, we .... out for a walk.
a) would have gone
b) go
c) will go
d) would go

28 One answer of the following is grammatically correct:
a) If you want to buy a good carpet, you should go to Al-Hussein Market.
b) If you want to buy a good carpet, goes to Al-Hussein Market.
c) If you want to buy a good carpet, you would go to Al-Hussein Market.
d) If you want to buy a good carpet, will go to Al-Hussein Market.

29 One answer of the following is grammatically incorrect:
a) If we boil water to 100ºC, it evaporates.
b) If water is boiled to 100ºC, it evaporates.
c) When water boils at 100ºC, it evaporates.
d) If water boils at 100ºC, it is evaporated.

30 One answer gives the same meaning to the following sentence:
If Ahmed lived in a big city, he could find a job easily.
a) Ahmed didn't live in a big city, so he can't find a job.
b) Ahmed doesn't live in a big city, so he can't find a job.
c) Ahmed won't live in a big city, so he won't find a job.
d) Ahmed didn't live in a big city, so he found a job.

31 If they .... to stop the protest, there would have been a riot شغب.
a) had tried
b) tried
c) try
d) could try

32 If Hossam .... for the job, they .... him.
a) applies/would choose
b) applied/might choose
c) applied/will choose
d) applied/ might have chosen

33 If you finish early, ...?
a) you will help me
b) you should help me
c) helped me
d) will you help me

34 If he had enough money, he .... the car.
a) would have bought
b) will have bought
c) might buy
d) might have bought

35 If he .... this book, he .... a lot of knowledge.
a) read/can get
b) will read/can get
c) read/would be able to get
d) read/will be able to get

Test yourself



Part 1
(Lessons 1 & 2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 The government has spent a/an .... amount of money on road projects.
a) enormous b) tiny c) intense d) useless

2 Vegetables which contain vitamin C are very important to our ....
a) luck b) fortune c) wealth d) health

3 The dentist has her .... sterilise the instruments يعقم الأدوات every day.
a) patient b) assistant c) system d) foe

4 Careless students usually make more .... than careful students.
a) rights b) corrections c) mistakes d) behaviours

5 If you are a/an .... worker, you must keep doing exercises to avoid being fat.
a) office b) sports c) house d) field

6 The price of a room in this hotel is 300 pounds .... breakfast.
a) consisting b) including c) containing d) enclosing

7 The weather is clear today, so we can go on a picnic. The adjective "clear" is the opposite of the adjective ....
a) foggy b) clean c) high d) pure

8 Leila .... her friend Mariam like one of the family.
a) cures b) heals c) treats d) advises

9 The Cancer Hospital has collected 200,000 pounds through online ....
a) sales b) profits c) losses d) donations

10 Within three days the sailors exhausted their supply of food. The verb "exhaust" is the synonym for the verb ....
a) waste b) spend c) save d) try

11 It isn't .... that the poor office clerk can buy such an expensive car.
a) logical b) legal c) movable d) legislative

12 The students .... the P.E. teacher to play with them, but he knows nothing about football.
a) regretted b) begged c) managed d) regarded

13 Although he practised hard, he couldn't win the ...., but came fourth.
a) champion b) path c) race d) passage

14 My uncle feels really .... after the death of his wife and he is always sad.
a) alone b) alike c) happy d) relieved

15 Our children were very .... that we couldn't go to the zoo at the weekend.

a) delighted b) pleased c) appointed d) disappointed

Language

16 If he .... at hospital, I'd have to visit him, but he isn't.

a) were b) has been c) had been d) is

17 If I .... my car, I would have a lot of money.

a) sell b) will sell c) had sold d) sold

18 If they .... well, they would have passed the exam.

a) studied b) have studied c) had studied d) study

19 If Ahmed had read that book, he .... what happened at the end.

a) knew b) would have known c) would know d) will know

20 If her dreams .... true, she would have been happy.

a) comes b) came c) had come d) hadn't come

21 If I have a headache, I .... a cup of tea. It always makes me feel better.

a) drink b) will drink c) would drink d) drank

22 We .... you more often if you didn't live so far away.

a) saw b) will see c) had seen d) would see

23 Ehab .... fishing if he finishes all his work before the weekend.

a) had gone b) will go c) would go d) is going

24 If my brother had a lot of money, he .... it all on music and clothes.

a) would spend b) will spend c) would have spent d) spends

25 If he read the questions slowly, he .... them.

a) will understand b) would understand c) understands d) can understand

26 If Nihal watches horror movies, she .... at night.

a) will sleep b) wouldn't sleep c) does not sleep d) hadn't slept

27 When you put too much water in rice when you cook, it .... sticky as usual!

a) would get b) will get c) got d) gets

28 I think I can fix it tomorrow. If not, you .... wait till Friday.

a) will have to b) might have c) mustn't d) won't

29 If I go to bed late, I always .... dreadful in the morning.

a) would have felt b) will feel c) would feel d) feel

30 If anyone calls, ... them I'm not at home and I'll come back in an hour.

a) would have told b) would tell c) tell d) will tell




Watch a video

Part 2
Lessons 3 & 4



A Vocabulary

Key Phrases

bring back	يعيد ذكريات
fall out ★	يتوقف عن التعامل بلطف/يتعارك مع
get into	يبدأ الاستمتاع
get on with	ينسجم مع
hang out with	يقضي وقتا مع
keep in touch with	يبقى على اتصال
lose touch	يفقد الاتصال

I never **fall out** with my elder brother; we share our objects easily.




لقراءة نصوص الاستماع والقراءة قم بمسح الصورة على هاتفك

Vocabulary on Listening texts

apparently (adv)	بوضوح
caption (n)	شرح/عنوان لصورة فى جريدة أو مجلة
chat (v) (ted) (n)	يدردش/دردشة
close (adj)	قريب/مقرب
go back (v)	يرجع/يعود
guess (v) (ed)	يخمن/يظن
ignore (v) (d)	يتجاهل
improve (v) (d)	يحسن
magazine (n)	مجلة
mall (n)	مركز تسوق
memory (n)	ذاكرة/ذكرى
prompt (n)	مثير/محفز
wish (v) (ed) (n)	يتمنى/أمنية

Workbook Vocabulary

amount (n)	كمية
conversation (n)	محادثة
friendship (n)	صداقة
high school (n)	مدرسة ثانوية
leader (n)	قائد
necklace (n)	قلادة
opposite (adj)	عكس/مقابل/مواجه لـ
organise (v) (d)	ينظم
own (v) (ed)	يمتلك
pocket (n)	جيب

polite (adj)	مؤدب	rain (n) (v) (ed)	مطر/تمطر
prep school (n)	مدرسة إعدادية	relationship (n)	علاقة
pretty (adj)	جميل	reunion (n)	إعادة جمع (اتحاد)/لم الشمل
primary school (n)	مدرسة ابتدائية	unusual (adj)	غير معتاد

Vocabulary Check point 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mohamed has never .... on with his cousin and they often quarrel.
   a) went b) got c) come d) received
2. Egypt is keen on keeping a good .... with all world countries.
   a) relationship b) dispute c) race d) cure
3. I used to hang .... with my old friends when I was at college.
   a) on b) in c) out d) at
4. I .... that my father is angry with me after losing my new tablet.
   a) decline b) guess c) detest d) object
5. Egypt does its best to .... its industry to limit our imports and save hard currency.
   a) prove b) approve c) disapprove d) improve
6. On Mother's Day, I bought a gold .... for my lovely mum.
   a) machine b) necklace c) serials d) series
7. The spokesman .... the reporter's question and continued his speech.
   a) attended b) listened c) increased d) ignored
8. European countries have a tense .... with Russia due to the last war.
   a) relationship b) dispute c) race d) game
9. Seeing those pictures on TV .... back all bad memories about my accident.
   a) brought b) got c) dated d) repeated
10. Many world .... met to discuss the environmental problems in Sharm El-Sheikh Climate Conference last November.
    a) armies b) enemies c) fighters d) leaders

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

according to	طبقًا لـ	get worse	يسوء
as usual	كالمعتاد	keep attention on	يستمر في الاهتمام بـ
feel sad	يشعر بالحزن	share sad moments	يشارك اللحظات الحزينة
feel uncomfortable with	يشعر بعدم الراحة مع	take an interest in	لديه اهتمام بـ
feel sorry	يشعر بالأسى	go past	يمر بـ
argue with	يجادل مع	interested in	مهتم بـ
bad for	سيئ لـ	pick up	يلتقط

Derivatives

Verb		Noun		Adjective	
appear	يظهر	appearance	ظهور/مظهر	apparent	واضح/ظاهر
ignore	يتجاهل	ignorance	جهل	ignorant	جاهل
improve	يحسن	improvement	تحسين	improved	محسن
memorise	يحفظ	memory	ذاكرة	memorable	بارز/جدير بالذكر

- The moon **appears** in the sky.
- The **appearance** of the moon is impressive.
- The moon is very **apparent** among the clouds.



Words, Synonyms & Antonyms

Word	Meaning	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
apparently	بوضوح	obviously/clearly	vaguely/uncertain بشكل مبهم/غير مؤكد
close	قريب/مقرب	nearby/intimate	far/distant بعيد
guess	يخمن/يظن	suppose/presume	question/wonder يتساءل
memory	ذكرى	remembrance/ memorisation	forgetfulness/ignorance نسيان/تجاهل
organise	ينظم	arrange/coordinate	scatter/confuse يبعثر/يربك
prompt	مثير/محفز	hint/motive	hindrance إعاقة
relationship	علاقة	relation/connection	separation/disconnection انفصال

Vocabulary Check point 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 He began to lose his memory as he grew older. The synonym of the word "memory" is "..................".
a) remembrance b) souvenir c) memorial d) amnesia

2 The doctors fear that our grandfather's health condition will .... worse as he is very old.
a) pick b) turn c) get d) fall

3 Don't get too close to the fire. The antonym of the adjective "close" is "..................".
a) near b) nearly c) happy d) distant

4 Our neighbour left the children at home with the babysitter .... usual.
a) like b) as c) for d) in

5 We went .... all the new buildings on our way to the suburb.
a) on b) above c) past d) out

6 I guess that you'll be looking for a new job now. The verb "guess" is similar in meaning to "..................".
a) question b) wonder c) request d) suppose

7 I said hello but the teacher ignored me. The noun from the verb "ignore" is "..................".
a) ignores b) ignored c) ignorance d) ignorant

8 You should try and organise your time better. The verb "organise" is the opposite of "..................".
a) arrange b) coordinate c) collect d) confuse

Notes on Vocabulary

لاحظ الفرق بين الكلمات الآتية واستخداماتها.

1

memory ذاكرة/ذكرى (شيء معنوى غير ملموس)	- My grandfather suffers from memory loss. - He has lots of happy memories of his stay in Sharm El-Sheikh.
souvenir تذكار (شيء مادى يُذكر برحلة/حدث)	I bought a model of the Eiffel Tower as a souvenir of Paris.
anniversary ذكرى سنوية	October 2019 was the 25th anniversary of our parents' marriage.

title عنوان رئيسي في جريدة أو مجلة لمقال أو خبر/عنوان كتاب.	The titles of the main newspaper articles are usually printed in red capital letters.
subtitle ١- عنوان فرعي (تحت عنوان رئيسي)/عنوان فرعي لكتاب. ٢- ترجمة لفيلم أو فيديو تظهر مكتوبة أسفل الصورة.	- The subtitle of Taha Hussein's *Al Ayam* is "A personal autobiography". - I watched a French documentary in English subtitles about the First World War.
caption تعليق مكتوب فوق أو تحت صورة مطبوعة أو منشورة.	The photo of the accident was published with the caption "Catastrophe" under it.

2

conversation محادثة غير رسمية لتبادل معلومات (لا تكون غالبًا على التليفون أو إلكترونيًا)	I was having a conversation with a friend the other day.
chat محادثة غير رسمية لتبادل الحديث (يمكن أن تكون على التليفون أو إلكترونيًا)	I've just had a chat with my friend online.

3

Vocabulary Check point 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 A student with a poor .... may suffer much at school.
a) memory b) souvenir c) memorial d) anniversary

2 The present Prince of Qatar inherited the .... from his father, the former Prince.
a) address b) title c) speech d) talk

3 My sister spends hours on a .... with her friends on WhatsApp application.
a) chat b) murmur c) rumour d) conversation

4 The teacher showed us a group of pictures and asked us to think of a/an .... for each one of them.
a) title b) address c) caption d) rank

Practice  Practise more

Vocabulary
General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The two neighbours .... out over the place to park their cars.
a) fell b) crossed c) became d) rose

2 We .... on well enough, but we're not really close friends.
a) give b) get c) take d) go

3 They were friends in college, but then they moved to different cities and .... touch.
a) replaced b) removed c) stayed d) lost

4 The young man spent a couple of days .... out with his old friends as part of their vacation.
a) changing b) hanging c) returning d) moving

5 We were surprised when their .... happy marriage ended after only two years.
a) unlikely b) unfortunately c) untruly d) apparently

6 The .... on the picture says, "This year's contest winners."
a) caption b) title c) subtitle d) address

7 It is not advisable to .... with other people about your personal life on the internet.
a) fight b) chat c) quarrel d) reverse

8 Can you .... the number of guests who will come to the party?
a) think b) guess c) disagree d) agree

9 As a teacher, I never .... my students' questions even if they seem to be unimportant.
a) assist b) welcome c) ignore d) apply

10 One of the ways to .... your English is to practise it with your friends at school.
a) prove b) remove c) move d) improve

11 Grandfather suffers from a weak .... due to his age and illness.
a) souvenir b) anniversary c) memorial d) memory

12 The tour guide told us that the water from the natural well contains a small .... of minerals.
a) quality b) account c) amount d) adjective

13 President Sadat was a respected Egyptian .... who made great achievements.
a) officer b) leader c) diplomat d) secretary

14 Don't try to .... up your phone while talking to a friend.
a) hold b) raise c) move d) pick

15 The .... between Arab countries should always be strong because they have common enemies.
a) debate b) relationship c) argument d) quarrel

16 Mr Sameh has always dreamed of a/an .... to work and stay with his son who lives in America.
a) reunion b) separation c) migration d) invitation

17 Look at the thick clouds; it's apparently going to rain today. The opposite of the adverb "apparently" is "....................".
a) obviously b) vaguely c) clearly d) gradually

18 The photographs brought .... many pleasant memories.
a) about b) in c) back d) for

19 Social media websites help you .... your attention on your friends' affairs.
a) lose b) keep c) miss d) have

20 Despite her problems, she carried on working .... usual.
a) as b) in c) at d) on

21 She's always arguing .... her sister about sharing their clothes.
a) on b) for c) at d) with

22 The school bus goes .... many students' houses on the way to school.
a) past b) for c) inside d) into

23 The scientist had never been greatly concerned with her ....
a) appear b) appearance c) appeared d) apparent

24 A good teacher should never make his students feel ....
a) ignore b) ignorance c) ignoring d) ignored

25 The book includes helpful hints for inexperienced cooks. The word "hint" is a synonym of the word "....................".
a) forecast b) reserve c) conservation d) prompt

26 Samar .... well with her new classmates, and they all adore her. (Longman)
a) quarrels b) gets along c) falls out d) loses touch

27 He hung out with his friends. This means that he .... with them. (Longman)
a) spent time b) made trouble
c) lost contact d) stopped being friendly

28 The government .... an interest in people with special needs. (Longman)
a) does b) takes c) appears d) sits

29 A .... is an ornamental chain or string of beads or jewels worn round the neck. (Longman)
a) tie b) shoe c) ring d) necklace

30 I was surprised that he .... me completely; he pretended that he hadn't seen me. (Longman)
a) looked b) ignored c) recognised d) realised



B Language

Important Notes

Wish/If only + past perfect	Regret in the past ندم فى الماضى	▶ I wish/If only I hadn't forgotten my book. The teacher was angry. ▶ I wish I had arrived early. I didn't see my uncle.
Wish/If only + past simple	Wish about present situation أمنية فى المضارع	▶ I wish/If only I were/was taller to be able to play basketball. (I'm not tall.) ▶ I wish I had enough money to buy this dress.
Wish/If only + would/could + Inf.	To express a strong desire that we believe is unlikely or impossible. للتعبير عن رغبة قوية نعتقد أنها غير محتملة أو مستحيلة.	▶ I wish/If only they would stop talking. ▶ I wish I could speak Turkish.

- عند التعبير عن الرغبة والأمنية نرجع بالزمن درجة إلى الوراء، فلو أردنا التعبير عن المضارع نستخدم الماضى، ولو أردنا الماضى نستخدم الماضى التام، ولا نستخدم شكل المضارع بعد Wish/If only.

▶ He's ill. He wishes he weren't ill. (Present)

▶ I overslept yesterday. I wish I hadn't overslept yesterday. (Past)

I wish I could be an engineer when I grow up. (Future)

Language Check point 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I wish we .... enough money to buy a car.
a) were having b) have c) had d) will have

2 She wishes she .... to her teacher's advice. She didn't succeed.
a) listened b) had listened c) listens d) would listen

3 I wish the school holidays .... longer.
a) will be b) are c) have been d) were

4 Ahmed is angry with me. I wish I .... to his wedding last week.
a) had gone b) went c) would go d) will go

5 I regret going to the final match. I wish I .... there.
a) didn't go b) hadn't gone c) wouldn't go d) won't go

Alternatives to using "If" بدائل (If)

هناك تعبيرات يمكن أن نستخدمها محل If وتؤدى نفس المعنى:

1 Providing/Provided that/On condition that/As (So) long as + جملة

- You can borrow my pen if/provided that/on condition that/as long as you give it back.

لا تحل هذه الكلمات محل If فى الحالة الثالثة لأنها تعبر عن المضارع والمستقبل فقط.

2 Suppose/Supposing/Imagine (that) + جملة

- Supposing/Imagine (that) you found a job in Cairo, what would you do?
- Supposing it rains, will you go for a picnic with him?

3 Unless + جملة مثبتة/Without + noun or v. + ing = If ... not

Unless لو لم +	فعل الشرط (جملة مثبتة) ,	جواب الشرط (جملة مثبتة أو منفية)
Unless	he had phoned me,	I wouldn't have visited him.

We can't enter the building	if we don't wear a helmet.
	unless we wear a helmet.
	without wearing a helmet.

If they hadn't had a ticket,	they wouldn't have been able to watch the match.
Unless they had had a ticket,	
Without having a ticket,	

4 In case of/In the event of + noun = If + جملة

- Open the door in case of (if there is) an emergency.

5 In case = If

- نستخدم in case بدون of وتساوى if فى شكل الجملة وتختلف عنها فى المعنى، لأنها تعنى فعل شىء لتجنب مشكلة محتملة فى المستقبل.

فى حالة/ربما

- Take this money in case you need some.
- He took two photos in case one of them didn't come out.
- Chain the bike to the gate in case it is stolen. (not if)

6 But for + noun = Without = If ... not

- But for his advice, we would have got lost.

7 Should/Were/Had + subject + verb

- تستخدم were/had/should بدلًا من If كأفعال مساعدة بعدها فاعل ثم فعل أساسى.
- تستخدم should بدلًا من If فى الحالتين الأولى والثانية ويأتى بعدها المصدر.

▸ Should the plane leave on time, I'll arrive in Paris at noon.
▸ Should he fail to be elected, it would be a great disappointment for him.

8 Were + subject + noun/adjective Were + subject + (to + Inf.)

- تستخدم Were بدلًا من If فى الحالة الثانية فقط، ويأتى بعدها إما اسم وإما صفة أو (to + inf).

▸ Were I you, I wouldn't tell anyone about it.
▸ Were the builders to finish the work to schedule, they would be rewarded.

- تستخدم Had بدلًا من If فى الحالة الثالثة.

Had + subject + P.P.

▸ Had he advised me, I'd have passed my exams easily.

- فى النفى نضع not بعد الفاعل.

▸ Had he not advised me, I wouldn't have passed my exams easily.

9 If it weren't for/If it hadn't been for = Without

▸ If it weren't for the underground, I would reach my work late. (حالة 2)
▸ If it hadn't been for my father's help, I wouldn't have got a job easily. (حالة 3)



If/Unless + v. + ing + verb

- يجب مراعاة أن (v. + ing) يمكن أن يكون فاعلًا فيأتى بعد If أو Unless كالآتى:

▸ If studying online saves time, I'll download the lessons and study them at home.

The Mixed Conditional (للفائقين)

- يمكن دمج الحالتين الثانية والثالثة إذا كان المعنى يتعلق بالماضى والمضارع معًا.

▸ If you had planned things at the start, you wouldn't be in this mess now.

- لو خططت للأشياء من البداية (ماضٍ) لم تكن فى هذه الفوضى الآن (مضارع).

▸ If you hadn't left all these dirty dishes, the place would look a bit tidier.

- لو لم تترك كل هذه الأطباق المتسخة (ماضٍ) لكان المكان يبدو أكثر ترتيبًا الآن (مضارع)

▸ If Ali were taller, they would have chosen him in the basketball team yesterday.

- على ليس طويلًا بدرجة كافية ليتناسب مع كرة السلة وهذه حالته فعكس الواقع يوضع حالة ٢ ولكن الاختيار وقع فى زمن ماضٍ فيكون حالة ٣.

Summary

الحالة الصفرية The Zero Conditional

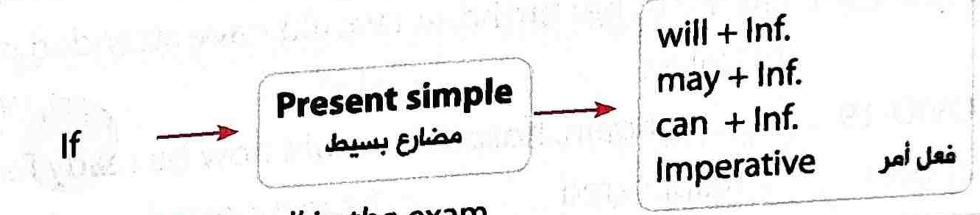
We use the zero conditional to talk about facts and things that are always true:
نستخدم الحالة الصفرية لنتحدث عن الحقائق والظواهر الطبيعية والأشياء التى دائمًا حقيقية والعادات التى تتكرر لدى الشخص. وتتكون من:



- If/When you heat water to 100°C, it boils.

الحالة الأولى The First Conditional

We use the first conditional to talk about events or situations that we think are probable or possible in the future.
نستخدم الحالة الأولى للأحداث والمواقف التى نعتقد أنها محتملة أو ممكنة فى المستقبل.



- If we study hard, we will do well in the exam.

الحالة الثانية The Second Conditional

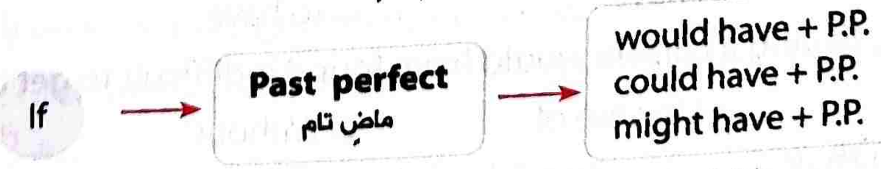
We use the second conditional to talk about situations that are imaginary or unlikely in the present or future. It is also used for advice.
نستخدم الحالة الثانية للتعبير عن المواقف الخيالية وغير الممكنة فى المضارع والمستقبل. وتستخدم أيضا فى النصيحة

If → Past simple (ماضٍ بسيط) → would + Inf. / could + Inf.

- If I had much money, I would buy a new car. (I don't have much money at present).

الحالة الثالثة The Third Conditional

We use the third conditional to talk about past situations or actions that did not happen.
- نستخدم الحالة الثالثة للحديث عن المواقف الماضية أو الأحداث التى لم تتم.



- If I had locked the car, it wouldn't have been stolen. (I didn't lock it).

Practice  Practise more

Language
General Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Visitors are welcomed .... they don't make troubles.
a) without b) unless c) as long as d) provides

2 .... an emergency landing, the pilot will inform the airport authorities.
a) Without b) Unless c) In case of d) Provided that

3 .... he been cleverer, he wouldn't have made that silly mistake.
a) Should b) Hadn't c) If d) Had

4 I won't do anything .... you agree.
a) without b) in case of c) unless d) but for

5 .... she invited me to her birthday, I would have attended it.
a) If b) Unless c) Had d) When

6 Were COVID-19 .... again, hospitals would now be ready for it.
a) to reappear b) reappeared c) be reappeared d) to reappearing

7 You can go out with your friends .... you come back before midnight.
a) without b) in case of c) unless d) as long as

8 Supposing there .... no rivers on earth, how would we get water for drinking?
a) were b) had been c) are d) have been

9 If it .... your ambitions, we wouldn't have reached that great position.
a) weren't for b) hadn't been for c) wasn't d) had been

10 We will be at work in time .... the bus comes soon.
a) unless b) provided that c) without d) in case of

11 .... his many crimes, he wouldn't have been sent to prison.
a) But for b) In case of c) unless d) Provided that

12 Should she .... more information about Hany's situation, she would help him.
a) had b) have c) to have d) had had

13 .... having a car, we would have found it difficult to get there in time.
a) If b) In case of c) Without d) Provided that

14 They wish they .... speak French.
a) could b) can c) will d) may

15 If it .... for the medical staff's great efforts, many people might die.
a) haven't been b) hadn't been c) hadn't d) weren't

16 You must take your umbrella .... it rains.
a) in case b) unless c) in case of d) without

17 .... your generosity, I would have been in big trouble.
a) But for b) If it weren't for c) Provided that d) Unless

18 I'll talk to the press .... they don't reveal my identity.
a) unless b) on condition that c) without d) in case of

19 I wish I .... more revision this year. I didn't get high marks.
a) did b) could do c) would do d) had done

20 If only I .... more time for my hobbies. I'm very busy.
a) have b) had c) had had d) would have

21 I wish I had travelled by express train. This means that I regret .... by the express train.
a) travelling
b) not travelling
c) not to travel
d) for not travelling

22 I regret dropping my cup of tea. I wish I ....
a) had been careful
b) was careful
c) wasn't careless
d) hadn't been careful

23 He feels sorry for insulting her. He wished he .... more polite.
a) has been b) had been c) wasn't d) will be

24 .... on time, he wouldn't miss the lecture.
a) Will he arrive b) Weren't he to arrive c) Were he to arrive d) Has he arrived

25 I wish I hadn't spent all this money on silly things! This shows ....
a) probability b) advice c) regret d) possibility

26 If he sold the five feddans, he would be rich and .... a new house.
a) bought b) buy c) will buy d) buys

27 One answer to the following sentence is correct:
"If I .... enough money, I .... around Europe. But, unfortunately, I am broke مفلس."
a) had/would backpack
b) had had/would backpack
c) had/would have backpacked
d) have/will backpack

28 **One of the following sentences is grammatically correct:**

a) Unless I were a doctor, I couldn't help you.

b) Unless I were a doctor, I could help you.

c) Unless I weren't a doctor, I couldn't help you.

d) Unless I weren't a doctor, I could help you.

29 **One of the following sentences is grammatically INCORRECT:**

a) I will lend you my car if you promise to return it today.

b) I will lend you my car unless you promise to return it today.

c) I won't lend you my car unless you promise to return it today.

d) I will lend you my car as long as you promise to return it today.

30 **Choose one correct answer to the following question:**

What .... if you .... enough money?

a) did you do/had

b) had you done/had had

c) would you have done/had had

d) would you do/had had

31 **The door .... unless you .... it.**

a) won't open/push

b) doesn't open/will push

c) isn't open/push

d) won't open/will push

32 **You can't take my car .... carefully.**

a) if you drive

b) unless you drive

c) provided you drive

d) in case you drive

33 **Hossam can get high marks .... he does his best.**

a) in case of

b) without

c) provided

d) unless

34 **........................ his bravery, the house would have been burnt.**

a) If

b) In case of

c) If it weren't for

d) But for

35 **........................ emergency, call the police.**

a) Were there

b) Unless there is

c) In case of

d) Had there been

Test yourself



Part 2 (Lessons 3 & 4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary

1 I guess you're mad at me for losing your sunglasses. The verb "guess" is an antonym of the verb "..................".
a) wonder b) suppose c) presume d) declare

2 Mother usually .... with our aunt for hours on the phone every day.
a) fights b) chats c) quarrels d) reverses

3 Doctors say that you will feel better if you .... your sad moments with your close friends.
a) share b) divide c) split d) argue

4 Mona and Leila have been intimate friends since childhood. The adjective "intimate" is similar in meaning to the word "..................".
a) hated b) far c) distant d) close

5 I usually buy my clothes at the .... near our house because of the variety of shops in it.
a) theatre b) pharmacy c) mall d) restaurant

6 I need new computer parts which will make its .... more powerful.
a) souvenir b) anniversary c) memorial d) memory

7 When the phone rang, my little brother .... it up immediately.
a) held b) picked c) moved d) rose

8 Staying at this hotel brought .... sweet memories of our honeymoon.
a) about b) in c) back d) for

9 The two sisters .... out over who will wear the new dress to the party.
a) fell b) crossed c) became d) rose

10 I felt embarrassed when my teacher .... my question and moved on to the next point.
a) assisted b) welcomed c) ignored d) applied

11 I advised my son to .... his study well to get high marks in exams.
a) organise b) recognise c) realise d) specialise

12 The doctor said that the old man .... died of a heart attack and it wasn't a murder.
a) unlikely b) fortunately c) luckily d) apparently

13 Mother always tells my little brother that it's not .... to talk with his mouth full.
a) hasty b) rude c) polite d) greedy

14 My sister is really interested .... reading about the news of actors and actresses.
a) at b) for c) in d) about

15 The two girls have had a long-standing .... since they were in primary school.

a) conspiracy b) teenage c) childhood d) friendship

Language

16 We wish we .... the matter seriously and phoned the doctor from the beginning.

a) took b) taken c) had taken d) have taken

17 I wish you .... throw the litter on the floor.

a) would b) wouldn't c) could d) won't

18 .... he been invited, he would have come to the party.

a) Had b) Should c) Were d) Would

19 If Mona .... someone the way to the museum, she would have known where to go.

a) asked b) would ask c) asks d) had asked

20 Were you .... too much, you would be fat.

a) eat b) to eat c) ate d) had eaten

21 .... he had enough money, he wouldn't buy his needs.

a) Without b) If c) Unless d) In case

22 .... knowing the truth, I wouldn't have called her.

a) Without b) If c) Provided that d) Unless

23 It's too bad; Hany isn't with us. If he .... here, he .... the letter for us.

a) had been/'d have translated b) is/will translate
c) were/wouldn't translate d) were/could translate

24 If you need anything from the shop, I .... it for you.

a) will get b) get c) would get d) got

25 .... the sun's disappearance, there would be no life on Earth.

a) If b) Unless c) In case of d) Without

26 .... they had much time, they would have studied better.

a) If b) Had c) Were d) Have

27 Were you .... harder, you'd get higher marks.

a) work b) to work c) had worked d) worked

28 I will call her .... she wants to join us at the cinema.

a) without b) unless c) in case d) but for

29 If I hadn't worked hard yesterday, I .... tired now.

a) wouldn't have been b) would be
c) will be d) wouldn't be

30 .... having a car of your own is troublesome, you can use public transport.

a) If b) Without c) In case of d) But for





Watch a video

Part 3
Lessons 5 & 6

Act iii, scenes ii-iv

Vocabulary

Word	Meaning	Word	Meaning
blanket (n)	بطانية	hut (n)	كوخ
burn (v)	يحرق	lightning (n)	برق
force (v) (d)	يجبر	philosopher (n)	فيلسوف
forgive (v)	يغفر/يسامح	rise (n)	ينهض
go into (v)	يدخل	stomach (n)	معدة
hard-hearted (adj)	قاسى القلب	straw (n)	قش
homeless (adj)	بلا مأوى/مشرد	torch (n)	كشاف/شعلة
horrible (adj)	رهيب	try (v) (y/ied)	يحاول

Expressions, Phrases & Prepositions

Expression	Meaning	Expression	Meaning
walk in someone's shoes	يكون فى موقف شخص ما	go around	يتجول
win the trust	يكسب الثقة	keep away	يبتعد



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 During the storm, a flash of .... lit up the sky and the children were afraid.
a) lightning b) thunder
c) wind d) tornado

2 My elder sister would never .... me for losing her ring.
a) prohibit b) forgive
c) allow d) expect

3 A .... is a small simple building with only one or two rooms.
a) palace b) resort
c) hut d) hall

4 Closing the factory was a/an .... decision as it led to the loss of jobs.
a) hearted b) easy-hearted
c) soft-hearted d) hard-hearted

5 All the animals in this small farm sleep on ....
a) sheets b) leather
c) straw d) skin

6 Our host, Mrs Adams, insisted on .... from her chair to greet us.
a) raising b) rising
c) keeping d) staying

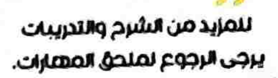
7 Despite the pain, the old woman .... herself to get out of bed.
a) forced b) delighted
c) punished d) pleased

8 The floods have killed hundreds of people and made thousands ....
a) speechless b) sightless
c) homeless d) useless

9 One of the main symbols of the Olympics is the Olympic .... which is lit all through the Games.
a) sword b) torch
c) stadium d) circle

10 Ahmed's brother lost his life in a/an .... train accident.
a) effective b) impressive
c) delightful d) horrible





Write an essay of about 180 words about something that you regret. Draw pictures with captions for your regret.

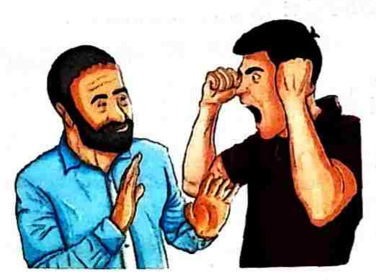
Last summer, I was going to travel to Rome for a business trip. The plane was at six o'clock a.m. I woke up very early so that I wouldn't be late for the plane. I took a taxi and I arrived at the airport at 4 o'clock an hour before the plane. I checked in and got ready for the plane. As it was still early for the plane, I decided to go to a café at the airport to have my coffee. I bought a big packet of biscuits to eat with the coffee.

The café was busy and I had to share a room with an old man. I had my handbag which I put on the table and went to bring my coffee to the counter. I returned back to the table. As I sat at the table, I saw the old man smiling at me. A packet of biscuits was on the table and I started to eat the first piece. Surprisingly, the old man took a piece, too. Each time I took a piece of biscuits, the old man took one. Soon, we ate all the pieces except for one piece left. The old man took it, cut it into two halves, took one half and gave me the other. I was very angry and I shouted at the old man very hard. However, the old man didn't say a word. He looked sad, then he left.

When I got on board the plane, I was surprised to see the old man on the same plane. I looked at him angrily and sat on my seat. I opened my handbag to take out a book I wanted to read on the plane. To my surprise, I found the packet of biscuits I bought. I forgot that I had put it in the bag before going to bring my coffee. The packet on the table belonged to the old man who didn't mind sharing it with me. Immediately, I went to the old man's seat and apologised to him. The man just smiled at me and said, "It's all right."


I am arriving at the airport.


I am sitting with the old man at the café.


I am shouting at the old man angrily.


I am finding the packet of biscuits in my handbag.

What can we learn from this embarrassing situation?

Practice  Practise more — Skills Exercises

1 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

You use energy every day. Energy is the ability to cause change. Any time you move, you are using energy. When you bounce a ball or ride a bike, you use energy from your body to make the ball or the bike move. Your parents cook food for you to eat. They use heat energy to change the food from raw to cooked. Not all energy is used as soon as you get it. Sometimes energy is stored to be used later.

Stored energy can be chemical energy stored in a battery or in your body. It can also be potential energy. Potential energy is based on the position of the object. A ball at the top of a hill has potential energy. A soccer player standing ready to kick a ball has potential energy, too.

Energy of motion is also called kinetic energy. Potential energy converts, or changes into kinetic energy when the thing or person begins to move. When the ball starts rolling downhill, kinetic energy is at work. When the soccer player kicks the ball, kinetic energy is at work there, too. Energy often changes forms.

When you switch on the light, electricity converts into light. When you eat, chemical energy from your food converts into thermal and mechanical energy that allows you to move and work. When you switch on a cell phone, chemical energy from the cell phone's battery converts into sound energy and light energy.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Energy is ....
   a) the ability to bounce a ball b) the ability to cause change
   c) the ability to ride a bike d) the ability to switch on the light
2. The other meaning of "change into" from the passage is ....
   a) bounce b) kick c) store d) convert
3. Energy that is based on an object's position is called ....
   a) potential energy b) kinetic energy
   c) thermal energy d) mechanical energy
4. The antonym of the word "raw" is "......................".
   a) uncooked b) fresh c) cooked d) natural
5. Kinetic energy is another term for the energy of ....
   a) light b) sound c) bouncing d) motion

6 When a person starts to move, ...
a) his motion energy turns into a kinetic one
b) his motion energy turns into a chemical one
c) his kinetic energy turns into a chemical one
d) his potential energy turns into a kinetic one

7 Which one is not mentioned in the passage?
a) The energy in a battery.
b) The energy in a mobile phone.
c) The energy in a basketball.
d) The energy of heat.

8 The best title for the passage is "......................".
a) Types of Power
b) What Is Energy?
c) Sports and Energy
d) Energy Consumption

2 (A) Choose the correct Arabic translation:

1 Friendship is one of the best things in life as friends can give you all the help and support to do better in your life.

a) الصداقة هى واحدة من أفضل الأشـياء فى الحياة حيث يمكن للأصدقاء أن يقدموا لك كل المسـاعدة والدعم للقيام بعمل أفضل فى حياتك.
b) الصداقة هى واحدة من أفضل الأشياء فى الحياة حيث يجب للأصدقاء أن يقدموا لك كل المسـاعدة والدعم للقيام بعمل أفضل فى حياتك.
c) الصداقـة هى واحدة من أفضل الأشـياء فى الحياة حيث يمكن للأصدقاء أن يقدموا لـك كل الماليات والدعم للقيام بعمل أفضل فى حياتك.
d) الصداقة هى واحدة من أفضل الأشياء فى الحياة حيث لا يمكن للأصدقاء أن يقدموا لك كل المساعدة والدعم للقيام بعمل أفضل فى حياتك.

2 We can solve many of our social problems if we teach our children to realise and change their bad mistakes. Parents and schools have a great role in this.

a) يمكننا حل العديد من مشاكلنا الاجتماعية إذا علمنا أطفالنا التعرف على وتغيير أخطائهم السيئة وللوالدين والمدارس دور كبير فى هذا.
b) يمكننا حل العديد من مشاكلنا الاجتماعية إذا علمنا أطفالنا إدراك وتغيير أخطائهم السيئة وللوالدين والمدارس دور كبير فى هذا.
c) يمكننا حل العديد من مشاكلنا الاجتماعية إذا علمنا أطفالنا إدراك وتغيير أخطائهم السيئة وللوالدين والمدارس قاعدة كبير فى هذا.
d) يمكننا حل العديد من مشاكلنا النفسية إذا علمنا أطفالنا إدراك وتغيير أخطائهم الجيدة وللوالدين والمدارس دور كبير فى هذا.

3 The Olympic Games are now a political question as all athletes try hard to win so as to honour their country. So, the Games may have lost their original meaning.

a) أصبحت الألعاب الأولمبية الآن سؤال سياسى حيث يحاول جميع الرياضيين جاهدين الفوز من أجل تكريم بلادهم. لذلك، ربما فقدت الألعاب معناها الأصلى.
b) أصبحت الألعاب الأولمبية الآن مسألة سياسية حيث يحاول جميع الرياضيين جاهدين الفوز من أجل تكريم بلادهم. لذلك، ربما فقدت الألعاب ربحها الأصلى.
c) أصبحت الألعاب الأولمبية الآن مسألة سياسية حيث يحاول جميع الرياضيين جاهدين الفوز من أجل تكريم بلادهم. لذلك، ربما فقدت الألعاب معناها الأصلى.
d) أصبحت الألعاب الأولمبية الآن مسألة سياسية حيث يحاول جميع الرياضيين جاهدين الفوز من أجل إراحة بلادهم. لذلك، ربما فقدت الألعاب معناها الأصلى.

4 Literature can play a vital role in solving many social problems. That's because it is one of the best means to portray these problems and look for solutions for them.

a) يمكن أن يلعب الأدب دورًا عاديًا فى حل العديد من المشـكلات الاجتماعية. هذا لأنه من أفضل الوسـائل لتصوير هذه المشكلات والبحث عن حلول لها.
b) يمكـن أن يلعـب الأدب دورًا حيويًا فى حل العديد من المشـكلات الاجتماعية. هذا لأنه مـن أفضل النتائج لتصوير هذه المشكلات والبحث عن حلول لها.
c) يمكن أن يلعب الأدب دورًا حيويًا فى حل العديد من المشـكلات الاجتماعية. هذا لأنه من أفضل الوسـائل لتصوير هذه المشكلات والبحث عن تعويض لها.
d) يمكن أن يلعب الأدب دورًا حيويًا فى حل العديد من المشـكلات الاجتماعية. هذا لأنه من أفضل الوسـائل لتصوير هذه المشكلات والبحث عن حلول لها.

5 Retirement age can be considered a time of rest for a lot of people. However, many old people want to continue working for social and financial reasons.

a) يمكن اعتبار سـن التقاعد وقت راحة لكثير من الناس. ومع ذلك، يرغب العديد من كبار السـن فى مواصلة العمل لأسباب صحية ومالية.

b) يمكن اعتبار سن التقاعد وقت باقى لكثير من الناس. ومع ذلك، يرغب العديد من كبار السن فى مواصلة العمل لأسباب اجتماعية ومالية.

c) يمكن اعتبار سـن التقاعد وقت راحة لكثير من الناس. ومع ذلك، يرغب العديد من كبار السـن فى مواصلة العمل لأسباب اجتماعية ومالية.

d) يمكن اعتبار سـن التقاعد وقت راحة لكثير من الناس. ولذلك، يرغب العديد من كبار السـن فى مواصلة العمل لأسباب اجتماعية ومالية.

(B) Choose the correct English translation:

6 ما لم تحاول تطوير مهاراتك و اكتساب مهارات جديدة فلن تستطيع الحصول على أى ترقية أو مرتب أعلى فى هذه الشركة.

a) Unless you tried to develop your skills and acquire new ones, you would not be able to get any promotion or a higher salary in this company.

b) Unless you try to develop your skills and acquire new ones, you will not be able to get any promotion or a higher salary in this company.

c) Unless you had tried to develop your skills and acquire new ones, you would not be able to get any promotion or a higher salary in this company.

d) Unless you try to develop your skills and acquire new ones, you are not be able to get any promotion or a higher salary in this company.

7 صورت قصص نجيب محفوظ المجتمع المصرى بكل قيمه ومشاكله، فى الوقت الذى عاش فيه وقد حصل على جائزة نوبل بسبب تأثيره الكبير فى الأدب العربى.

a) The stories of Naguib Mahfouz portrayed the Egyptian society with all its values and problems, at the time in which he lived. He was awarded the Nobel Prize because of his great influence on Arabic literature.

b) The stories of Naguib Mahfouz photographed the Egyptian society with all its values and problems, at the time in which he lived. He was awarded the Nobel Prize because of his great influence on Arabic literature.

c) The stories of Naguib Mahfouz portrayed the Egyptian society with all its values and problems, at the time in which he lived. He was rewarded the Nobel Prize because of his great influence on Arabic literature.

d) The stories of Naguib Mahfouz painted the Egyptian society with all its evaluations and problems, at the time in which he lived. He was awarded the Nobel Prize because of his great influence on Arabic literature.

8 يعانـى الكثيـر من الناس من غلاء المعيشـة فى العالم كله، فيجب على أفراد المجتمع العمـل على زيادة الإنتاج وتغيير عاداتهم الاستهلاكية لمواجهة الأزمات المختلفة والزيادة المستمرة فى الأسعار.

a) Many people suffer from the high rise of living all over the world, so society members must work to increase production and change their consuming habits to face various crises and the continuous increase in prices.

b) Many people suffer from the high cost of living all over the world, so society organs must work to increase production and change their consuming customs to face various crises and the continuous increase in prices.

c) Many people suffer from the high cost of living all over the world, so society members must work to increase production and change their consuming habits to stand various crises and the continuous increase in prices.

d) Many people suffer from the high cost of living all over the world, so society members must work to increase production and change their consuming habits to face various crises and the continuous increase in prices.

9 لا تؤثـر البطالـة فقـط على الأفـراد ولكن أيضـًا على نمو البلد؛ حيـث إن لها تأثيرا سلبيـًا على النمـو الاجتماعى والاقتصادى للبلاد، لذا لابد أن نضع حدًا لها.

a) Unemployment affects not only the individuals but also the growth of the country as it has a negative impact on the social and economical growth of the country, so we must put an end to it.

b) Unemployment affects not only the individuals but also the growth of the country as it has a negative impact on the social and economic growth of the country, so we must put an end to it.

c) Unemployment affects not only the individuals but also the growth of the country as it has a different impact on the social and economic growth of the country, so we must put an end to it.

d) Unemployment affects not only the individuals but also the growth of the country as it has a negative impact on the social and economic growth of the country, so we may put an end to it.

10 هنـاك الكثيـر من العيـوب للتكنولوجيا، فبسـبب ارتباط الشـباب بأدوات التواصـل الاجتماعـى التكنولوجية، مثل: الكمبيوتر والتليفون المحمول، يفقد بعضهم فن الحوار مع باقى أفراد المجتمع.

a) Technology has many advantages. Because of the youth's contact to technological social media tools, such as computers and mobile phones, some of them lose the art of dialogue with the rest of society.

b) Technology has many disadvantages. Because of the youth's attachment to technological social media tools, such as computers and mobile phones, some of them lose the portrait of dialogue with the rest of society.

c) Technology has many disadvantages. Because of the youth's attachment to technological social media tools, such as computers and mobile phones, some of them lose the art of dialogue with the rest of society.

d) Technology has many disadvantages. Because of the youth's attachment to technological social media kits, such as computers and mobile phones, some of them lose the art of dialogue with the rest of society.

3 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"Many people should be thanked due to their efforts towards us."

I used more than 4 new vocabulary. | I used the right structure. | I used a topic sentence. | I wrote the conclusion. | I used the right punctuation.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Mum always warns me not to be .... with my children so as not be hated.
a) brave b) mean c) generous d) kind

2 The new cancer hospital on 6th of October City accepts .... from all people.
a) donations b) sales c) products d) crops

3 When I was in Alexandria, I spent most of the day .... out with my friends.
a) changing b) returning c) hanging d) moving

4 I realised that time was getting .... and we would have to hurry.
a) on b) back c) into d) about

5 My cousin has .... a keen interest in music since he was a child.
a) missed b) designed c) kept d) taken

6 The computer trouble was apparently caused by a programming error.
The synonym of the adverb "apparently" is "....................".
a) successfully b) vaguely c) temporarily d) clearly

7 Hanaa would have met the new teacher if she .... at school yesterday.
a) have been b) was c) were d) had been

8 Mobile phones usually .... working if they fall in water.
a) will stop b) stop c) would stop d) stopped

9 If the internet ...., our life would be gloomy.
a) didn't exist b) existed
c) doesn't exist d) exists

10 My brother wouldn't have missed the bus if he .... so slowly.
a) walked b) had walked
c) hadn't walked d) walks

11 If I go to bed early, I usually .... early.
a) wakes b) would wake up
c) will wake up d) wake up

12 What .... if you'd been late for the exam?
a) will you do b) would you do
c) would you have done d) do you do

13 If your grades .... good in the first term, you will have to work harder in the second term.

a) weren't
b) aren't
c) hadn't been
d) had been

14 If I .... anywhere in the world, I would go to Egypt to see the Pyramids.

a) could go
b) had gone
c) go
d) was gone

15 He would have visited a lot of historic places if the holiday he had .... longer.

a) had
b) had been
c) had had
d) has had

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Did you know that electric eels have quite a misleading name? They do! That's because even though it's true they are electric, they're actually not eels! Instead, they are a kind of fish called "knife fish". The most interesting thing about electric eels is that they can produce an electric charge.

The shock can go up to 600 volts. This can knock down a full-grown horse. Electric eels use their charge to hunt and protect themselves. They also use the charge in another way. Since these eels have poor eyesight, they don't rely on their eyes to see. Instead, they give out a weak electric signal that they use like radar. This radar helps them find their way around. It also helps them locate their prey.

Electric eels live in fresh water. They are nocturnal, which means they sleep during the day and are active at night. They mostly live in rivers in South America. They like dark waters, mud and caves. Most of their time is spent underwater and will regularly come to the surface about every ten minutes to inhale air through their mouth, then they will swim back to the bottom of the water.

Electric eels are carnivores, so they love to eat meat. They are very good at attacking their prey and their teeth are really sharp. If you saw an electric eel, you might think it looks like a snake. They have long, thin bodies. They can be white, black, blue, purple, or grey. They rarely harm humans. In fact, they are afraid of people. In some cultures, people eat electric eels. They are a delicacy. Since the blood can be toxic, the eels need to be fully cooked. Would you eat one?

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

16 **Where might you find an electric eel?**

a) In the deep waters of the Pacific Ocean.

b) In the shallow coastal waters of the Mediterranean Sea.

c) In the fresh waters of the Amazon River.

d) Only in zoos because they are extinct in the wild.

17 **What does delicacy mean in "In some cultures, people eat electric eels. They are a delicacy."?**

a) A specialty food item.

b) A common snack food.

c) A symbol of good luck.

d) An unlucky omen.

18 **How are electric eels different from most fish in the way they obtain oxygen to breathe?**

a) Electric eels get oxygen through the food they eat.

b) Electric eels come up to the surface to breathe air through their mouths.

c) Electric eels have an extra set of gills on their bodies.

d) Electric eels do not need to obtain oxygen to survive like other fish.

19 **The antonym of the word "toxic" is "....................".**

a) innocent — b) poisonous

c) harmful — d) harmless

20 **The electric eels use electricity to ....**

a) hunt their children — b) feed their children

c) hunt and move — d) breathe

21 **Electric eel's name is misleading as ....**

a) it is not electric — b) it is not a fish

c) it's not a knife fish — d) it's not an eel

22 **If you eat an electric eel, you must ....**

a) have it with salad — b) cook it well

c) make it toxic — d) get it broiled

23 **The best title for the passage is "....................".**

a) The Wildlife — b) A Knife Fish

c) Electricity in the Sea — d) How to Cook an Eel

24 Choose the correct English translation:

- واجبنا تجاه أصدقائنا أن نقدم لهم النصائح المفيدة والتي اكتسبناها خلال تجاربنا وتعلمناها من أخطائنا.

a) It is our duty towards our friends to offer them useful advices that we have gained through our experiments and that we have learned from our mistakes.

b) From our duties towards our friends is to offer them useful advice that we have won through our experiments and that we have learned from our mistakes.

c) It is our duty towards our friends to request them useful advices that we have earned through our experiences and that we have learned from our mistakes.

d) It is our duty towards our friends to offer them useful advice that we have gained through our experiences and that we have learned from our mistakes.

25 Choose the correct Arabic translation:

- Some scientists believe that science has no limits. This can lead them to dangerous experiments which can create problems or even new viruses.

a) يعتقد بعض العلماء أن العلم ليس له حقوق وهذا يمكن أن يقودهم إلى تجارب خطيرة يمكن أن تخلق مشكلات أو حتى فيروسات جديدة.

b) يعتقد بعض العلماء أن العلم ليس له حدود وهذا يمكن أن يقودهم إلى تجارب خطيرة يمكن أن تخلق مشكلات أو حتى فيروسات جديدة.

c) يعتقد بعض العلماء أن العلم ليس له حدود وهذا يمكن أن يقودهم إلى تجارب خطيرة يمكن أن تحل مشكلات أو تقضي على فيروسات جديدة.

d) يعتقد بعض العلماء أن العلم ليس له حدود وهذا يمكن أن يقودهم إلى تجارب خطيرة يمكن أن تحل مشكلات أو تصنع لقاحات جديدة.

26 Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND EIGHTY (180) words on the following:

"The job you dream of and your reasons for choosing it"

....

....

....

....

....

....

لمزيد من التدريبات للطلبة الفائقين الرجوع لنهاية الكتاب ص 304



Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practise more	Take more exams	Well done!

King Lear

Play

- Introduction
- Summary
- Exercises

امسح الكود



لقراءة نص القصة
من كتاب الطالب

Introduction

(A) The Writer (William Shakespeare)

. William Shakespeare was an English poet, playwright and actor. Shakespeare is considered as the greatest writer in the English language. He wrote about 38 plays, 154 sonnets, two long narrative poems. His plays have been translated into every major living language and are performed more often than those of any other playwright.

. Shakespeare was born in Stratford-upon-Avon in 1564. His father was a merchant and his mother was a housewife. Shakespeare received little formal education, but he was clearly an excellent reader. He began writing plays in the late 1580s and his first works were performed in the early 1590s. Shakespeare's career was successful and he became a wealthy man. He married Anne Hathaway in 1582 and they had three children. In 1601 Shakespeare withdrew to Stratford-upon-Avon, where he died in 1616.

(B) The Play

. *King Lear* is a tragedy play written by William Shakespeare. It is a depiction تصوير of the slow descent into insanity جنون of the main character King Lear. This occurs after his disposal of his kingdom to two of his daughters due to their flattery نفاق. This play studies the correlation between appearances and reality as well as the result of putting too much trust in appearance than reality.

(C) Characters in the Play

KING LEAR	: The King of Britain
GONERIL	: King Lear's eldest daughter
REGAN	: King Lear's second daughter
CORDELIA	: King Lear's youngest daughter
KING OF FRANCE	: He wants to marry Cordelia.
DUKE OF BURGUNDY	: He also wants to marry Cordelia.
DUKE OF ALBANY	: Goneril's husband
DUKE OF CORNWALL	: Regan's husband
DUKE OF KENT	: A good friend of King Lear
DUKE OF GLOUCESTER	: A good friend of King Lear
EDGAR	: Gloucester's eldest son
EDMUND	: Gloucester's youngest son
FOOL	: Lear's clown
OSWALD	: A servant
OLD MAN	: A man who helps Gloucester
GENTLEMAN	: A friend of Kent
CAPTAIN	: One of Edmund's soldiers

Servants, soldiers and messengers of the King and his family

Act I, Scene i Summary

- The play begins with a talk of two noblemen, Gloucester and Kent. Gloucester introduces his son, Edmund, explaining that Edmund is the younger of his two sons, while Edgar is the older. King Lear enters with Cornwall and Albany and his three daughters, Regan, Goneril and Cordelia. Gloucester and Edmund leave. King Lear announces يعلن his plan to divide the kingdom among his three daughters. He asks his daughters to say which of them loves him the most, promising to give the greatest share to that daughter.
- Lear's older daughters, Goneril and Regan, respond to his test with flattery النفاق, telling him that they love him more than anything else. But Cordelia, Lear's youngest (and favourite) daughter, refuses to flatter her father saying that she loves him exactly as much as a daughter should love her father, and that her sisters wouldn't have husbands if they loved their father as much as they say. Lear becomes very angry, deprives يحرم Cordelia of her share of the kingdom, and divides it between her two sisters.
- The Duke of Kent is the only one who disagrees with the king's actions. Kent tells Lear it is foolish to reward the flattery of his older daughters and deprives Cordelia, who loves him more than her sisters do. Lear turns his anger on Kent, banishing ينفى him from the kingdom and telling him that he must be gone within five days.
- The King of France and Duke of Burgundy are at Lear's court, waiting for his decision as to which of them will marry Cordelia. Lear calls them in and tells them that Cordelia no longer has any title or land. Duke of Burgundy withdraws يسحب his offer of marriage, but the King of France is impressed by Cordelia's honesty and decides to make her his queen. Lear sends her away without his blessing بركة.

Practice | **Act I, Scene i Exercises**

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 King Lear wanted to .... his kingdom into three parts. *(Student's book)*
a) divide b) share c) connect d) collect

2 The old king had a large amount of .... like silver and gold. *(Student's book)*
a) beauty b) riches c) power d) strength

3 Cordelia couldn't think of a good .... for her father. *(Student's book)*
a) search b) questionnaire c) answer d) survey

4 Kent thinks that it's .... to tell Cordelia to go away. *(Student's book)*
a) honest b) political c) foolish d) financial

5 The .... of Kent was a powerful person in England. *(Workbook)*
a) King b) title c) kingdom d) Duke

6 When you have a .... to do something, you must do it. *(Workbook)*
a) scene b) disguise c) title d) duty

7 A .... is something you can use to cut things or fight people. *(Workbook)*
a) stick b) cart c) sword d) gun

8 King Lear decides to give his .... to his daughters. *(Workbook)*
a) duke b) title c) kingdom d) sword

9 King Lear intended to give a .... of his kingdom to each daughter. *(Longman)*
a) third b) three c) thirdly d) thirteen

10 What I liked most in my journey to Sinai is the natural .... of the landscape.
a) riches b) beauty c) cost d) wisdom

11 The fishermen were very .... to go out in a boat in such bad weather.
a) sensible b) wise c) foolish d) sensitive

12 The new shop gives .... a bottle of perfume to their customers as samples.
a) down b) off c) in d) away

13 I like my neighbours very much because they are good and .... people.
a) cruel b) deceitful c) honest d) foolish

14 Only world leaders and noblemen were invited to the coronation تتويج of His .... the King of Britain.
a) Minister b) Majesty c) Superior d) Officer

15 Mr Rafat, our science teacher, has been single for so long, I don't think he'll ever ....
a) marry b) depart c) believe d) divorce

- Cordelia says goodbye to her sisters before leaving England and begged them to take care of their father. Goneril and Regan get together in secrecy السرية. Although they know that they now have complete power over the kingdom, and they agree that they must act to reduce their father's remaining authority السلطة thinking that he is becoming mad in his old age.
- Edmund enters the scene – in Gloucester's house – talking out loud to himself. Edmund expresses his dissatisfaction عدم الرضا about his father's decision that his elder brother, Edgar, will get his land when he dies. He decides to do something to solve this problem. Edmund reveals يكشف عن his plan to undermine his brother's position by tricking his father with a forged مزيف letter, which he presents to Gloucester. In it, Edgar, as Edmund suggests, is trying to persuade him to get rid of يتخلص من their father. Gloucester gets very angry and asks Edmund to look for Edgar and catch him to be punished.
- Edmund also succeeds in convincing Edgar that he's looking out for his safety when he suggests that Edgar carry a sword as protection from their father's anger. Edmund convinces Edgar to hide away from his father.



Practice — Act I, Scenes i-ii Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Mr Ahmed did not buy his house. It was a/an .... from his parents. *(Workbook)*
a) invention b) robbery c) inheritance d) deceit

2 My younger brother always tells the .... He never lies. *(Workbook)*
a) truth b) trust c) anger d) infection

3 It is natural to feel .... with something, but it is important to learn to control it. *(Workbook)*
a) content b) anger c) hunger d) respect

4 We really wanted to climb the mountain, and we all felt very happy when we .... *(Workbook)*
a) inspected b) failed c) passed d) succeeded

5 The man in the market says that all his watches are new, but I don't .... him. I think they are all quite old. *(Workbook)*
a) deny b) trust c) doubt d) punish

6 My grandmother had a small .... as a cleaner, but she never had very much money. *(Workbook)*
a) wealth b) health c) income d) treasure

7 This email asking for money says it is from the bank, but I think it is trying to .... us. *(Workbook)*
a) deceive b) deserve c) award d) forgive

8 You can go into the building one way and .... through a different door. *(Workbook)*
a) stay b) break c) deceive d) exit

9 When someone .... your heart, they hurt your feelings and make you unhappy.
a) breaks b) keeps c) sends d) loves

10 .... is very important to me, so I want friends who will always stand by my side. *(Workbook)*
a) Loyalty b) Inheritance c) Riches d) Beauty

11 Edmund wants his father to believe something that isn't true, so he .... him. *(Workbook)*
a) attacks b) deserves c) deceives d) believes

12 He was admired for his loyalty to his colleagues. "Loyalty" is similar in meaning to "................". *(Longman)*
a) envy b) popularity c) faithfulness d) hatred

13 Our team was very bad. We didn't .... to win the match. *(Longman)*
a) conserve b) reverse c) observe d) deserve

14 My friend has never .... to me before, so I have no reason to doubt his word.
a) trusted b) laid c) lied d) faced

15 In a fit of anger, King Lear sent Cordelia .... because she couldn't express her love to him.
a) away b) in c) of d) out

Act I, Scenes iii-iv Summary

- In the palace of Goneril and the Duke of Albany, the scene opens with Goneril asking her servant, Oswald, if Lear hit her servant. Oswald confirms يؤكد the incident. Goneril instructs يرشد Oswald to keep Lear waiting when he needs something, and if the King is unhappy with this treatment معاملة, he should be told to move to Regan's palace. Goneril then commands تأمر her servants to treat the King's company with coldness since the soldiers are starting to behave badly.
- Kent, earlier banished منفى by Lear, reappears in disguise متنكر as a poor old man. Lear enters and begins asking Kent questions about his identity هوية and his intention. Kent asserts يؤكد his loyalty and willingness to serve the King. Kent's obvious admiration impresses Lear.
- When the King asks to see Goneril, Oswald leaves without responding رد to the request. A soldier reports that Goneril is unwell and unavailable. The soldier also tells Lear that all the members of Goneril's household أفراد الأسرة are treating the king rudely.
- Goneril enters, complaining about the King's Fool and his soldiers. Goneril demands that Lear reduce the number of soldiers in his service. In anger, the King declares يصرح that he will pack up his people and move to Regan's palace, where he is sure to receive a warmer reception استقبال حار.

Practice

Act I, Scenes iii-iv Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He rarely makes mistakes. He is very .... and careful. *(Workbook)*
   a) arrogant b) rash c) foolish d) wise
2. We all respect him because he .... politely. *(Workbook)*
   a) fights b) shouts c) behaves d) regrets
3. My father usually .... us to read different books. *(Workbook)*
   a) discourages b) encourages c) punishes d) deploys
4. Don't be ...., or you'll be punished. *(Workbook)*
   a) rude b) honest c) wise d) respectful
5. We have a very honest .... who never steals anything from the house. *(Workbook)*
   a) boss b) servant c) manager d) relative
6. The criminal tried to .... himself, so the police wouldn't recognise him. *(Workbook)*
   a) improvise b) revise c) disguise d) reinvent
7. Don't be cruel to animals; the little horse can't pull this huge .... *(Workbook)*
   a) cruiser b) lorry c) vehicle d) cart
8. If you did something bad, then you are .... of doing it. *(Workbook)*
   a) guilty b) free c) innocent d) criminal
9. King Lear thinks that Goneril will have a taste of her own .... if her child is cruel to her. *(Workbook)*
   a) riches b) loyalty c) inheritance d) medicine
10. A/An .... is someone whose job is to travel or live with an important person and help him or her.
    a) guide b) ambassador c) attendant d) driver
11. The criminal .... the old man with a broken bottle, but he was arrested.
    a) attached b) attacked c) attracted d) intended
12. We really must leave .... or we will miss the train.
    a) immediately b) later c) lately d) gradually
13. Children have to .... their parents' hand when they cross the road.
    a) detest b) hold c) leave d) tie
14. My younger brother used to .... problems at school, but he doesn't do this anymore.
    a) solve b) follow c) do d) make
15. The first thing I .... about the hotel room was the efficient air conditioner.
    a) told b) hated c) noticed d) delayed

- Lear's sadness grows when Regan refuses to host يستضيف him and his hundred soldiers. Goneril, conspiring يتآمر with her sister, proposes that Lear dismiss يطرد his soldiers. With Oswald and Goneril now present, Cornwall admits to Lear that he ordered Kent's punishment عقاب.
- The King, angered by his daughters' rejection, calls for his horse. Lear says that he would rather live outside under the stars or beg shelter in France than stay in the company of those who disrespect his proper place as father and King. Regan and Goneril tell Gloucester not to stop their father from going out in the storm. Regan and Goneril remain unmoved and unconcerned غير مهتم that the old king is going out into a severe storm.
- In a field in the countryside. The storm continues. Kent enters with a soldier. Kent learns that Lear and his Fool are out in the storm. Kent tells the soldier that there's a disagreement between the Dukes of Albany and Cornwall. They both have servants who are really spies for the King of France. They have noticed that the Dukes are both against the King. Now the King of France has sent an army, and the French have spies at some of our ports. Kent instructs the soldier to go quickly to Dover, and when he gets there, to make known the treatment that Lear has suffered. Kent gives the messenger رسول a ring for delivery to Cordelia. Kent leaves to search for Lear.

Practice

Act II, Scene iii - Act III, Scene i Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My bedroom is so small that there isn't enough .... for a desk. *(Student's book)*
a) hole b) palace c) room d) gap

2 We had a/an .... about which film to watch, but I let him watch a comedy. *(Student's book)*
a) agreement b) disagreement c) treaty d) cooperation

3 Your brother makes us laugh when he tells funny .... *(Student's book)*
a) jokes b) locks c) scripts d) research

4 He plotted against his country. He was a .... *(Student's book)*
a) noble b) patriot c) spy d) modal

5 We can .... in this shop until the rain stops. *(Student's book)*
a) shelter b) escape c) appear d) reply

6 Nurses need to have a lot of .... so they can be kind to people. *(Workbook)*
a) anger b) beauty c) patience d) power

7 I think I will .... mad if I need to do this again. *(Workbook)*
a) talk b) send c) come d) go

8 I .... to Eman because I was late meeting her at the cafe. *(Workbook)*
a) told b) apologised c) persuaded d) said

9 I lost my key, so I was locked .... of our house until my mum came home. *(Workbook)*
a) out b) under c) into d) off

10 Please, don't turn your .... on me. *(Workbook)*
a) side b) head c) front d) back

11 Honestly, I loved the little boy the moment I .... eyes on him. *(Longman)*
a) fell b) set c) hit d) sat

12 The criminal wore a .... beard and moustache to be fully disguised. *(Longman)*
a) free b) fake c) fair d) fire

13 Alarmingly, the hole in the ozone layer has .... in size recently.
a) reduced b) formed c) doubled d) deteriorated

14 A .... is a large hole in the side of a hill, cliff, or mountain, or one that is underground.
a) well b) cave c) funnel d) channel

15 The firefighter saved the girl when he reached her .... the right time.
a) at b) of c) for d) against

Act III, Scenes ii – iii – iv Summary

- In another part of the field, King Lear enters with the Fool. The storm continues. Lear's mood حالة مزاجية matches the intensity شدة of the storm as he rages against his daughters' bad treatment. The Fool tries to persuade the King to take shelter. Kent arrives and points to a nearby hut for protection, while he returns to Gloucester's castle to ask that they admit the King.
- At Gloucester's castle. Gloucester enters with Edmund. Gloucester tells his son that when he asked Regan and Cornwall to leave, so that he might help Lear, they asked him not to do this. Gloucester also tells Edmund that he has a letter telling that some of the French army has already reached Dover. The letter is locked in his bedroom. He asks Edmund not to tell anyone about that. Gloucester exits. Alone, Edmund plans to gain Cornwall's favour by revealing the plan to aid the King.
- In a field in front of a hut. King Lear enters with Kent and the Fool. Although Kent directs Lear to a hut for shelter, the King refuses to protect himself from the storm. The Fool runs from the hut, exclaiming that a madman is in the hut. The madman is really Edgar disguised as Poor Tom. Lear has a short conversation with him.
- Gloucester enters the scene, carrying a torch. He has found both warm shelter and food for the King, but Lear declines يرفض, claiming that he needs to talk more with the poor man. The disguised Edgar complains of the cold and everyone moves into the shelter.

Practice

Act III, Scenes ii – iii - iv Exercises

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 My grandmother is scared of thunder and .... She hides under the stairs. *(Workbook)*
a) lightning b) lighting c) wind d) breeze

2 In the past, people used to light a .... with fire. Today, we use batteries. *(Workbook)*
a) sword b) torch c) bow d) pot

3 Hatem's finding it hard to .... Hazem for what he said in that online post. *(Workbook)*
a) deny b) forget c) forgive d) award

4 I asked my brother, but he won't help me. He is very .... *(Workbook)*
a) well-known b) well-believed c) kind-hearted d) hard-heartened

5 Hatem could be a .... because he likes to think about important questions. *(Workbook)*
a) photographer b) journalist c) philosopher d) painter

6 My horse loves to sleep on a bed of fresh .... *(Workbook)*
a) corn b) straw c) sofa d) cucumber

7 We got lost in the mountains and spent the night in a wooden .... *(Workbook)*
a) cave b) spring c) hut d) well

8 The .... young man dealt with the little child violently. *(Longman)*
a) generous b) hard-hearted c) young d) kind-hearted

9 My parents usually .... me for the mistakes I make: They show me how to behave well instead, and I benefit from their advice. *(Longman)*
a) fire b) punish c) forgive d) forget

10 Doctors were .... to work impossibly long hours during the COVID-19 pandemic.
a) fired b) dismissed c) deprived d) forced

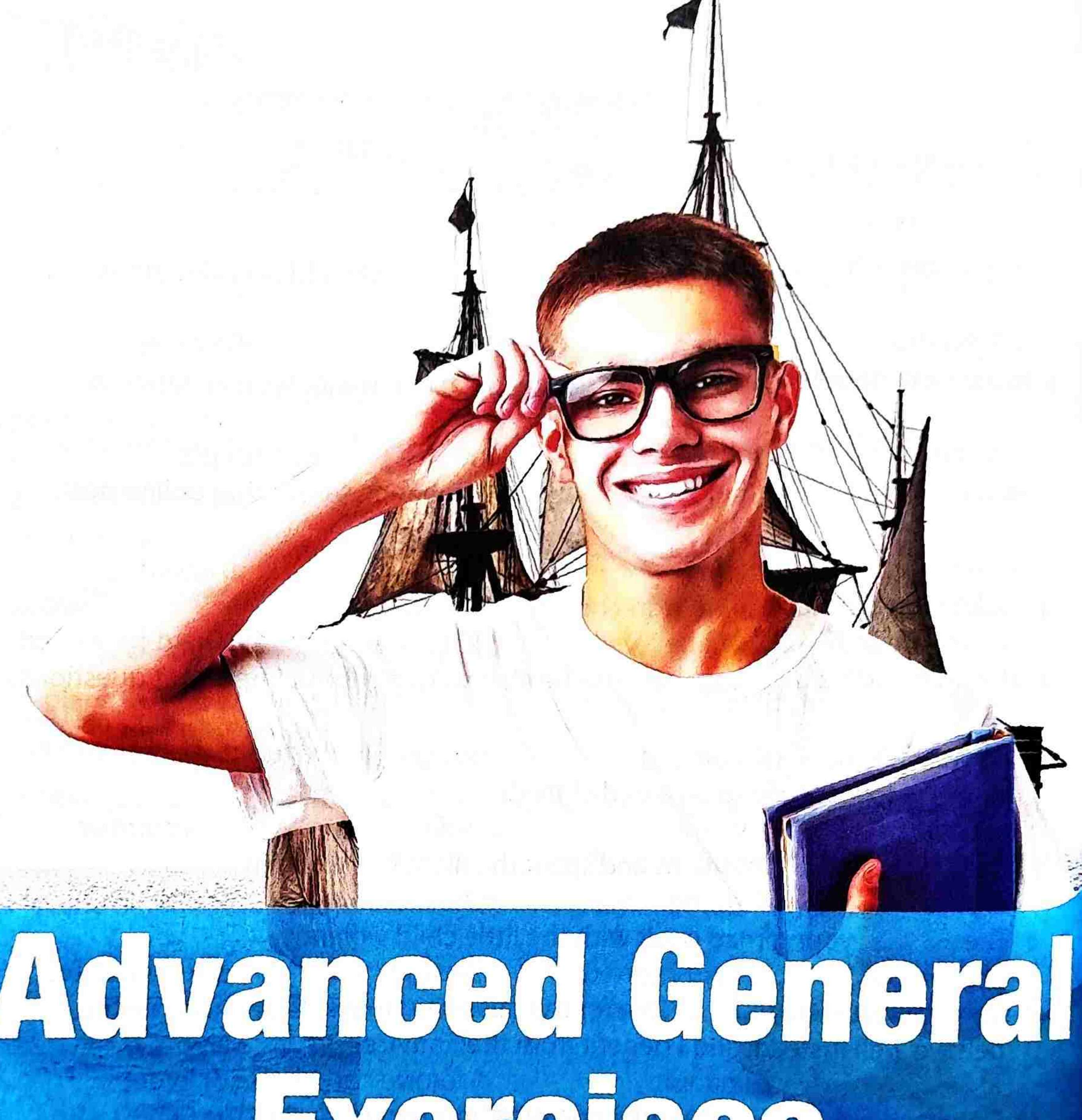
11 When we arrived, my grandmother .... from her chair to welcome us.
a) sat b) laid c) rose d) fixed

12 To understand my decision, you have to .... in my shoes.
a) live b) walk c) keep d) run

13 Many families were left .... after the earthquakes in Turkey and Syria.
a) homeless b) healthy c) wealthy d) sporty

14 I always ask my children to keep .... from the kitchen so as to avoid accidents.
a) in b) away c) of d) for

15 The clerk is working very hard in order to .... the trust of his new boss.
a) lose b) delay c) win d) earn



Advanced General Exercises

- **Advanced General Exercises**
- **Advanced General Exercises Answers**

Unit (1)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 You should wash the dress in cold water so the colours don't ....
a) match b) bleed c) raise d) add

2 If you keep on lifting those heavy weights, you'll do yourself a/an ....
a) attention b) benefit c) injury d) loss

3 The Americans established a naval .... on the Japanese island in the 1950s.
a) space b) table c) column d) base

4 El Maraei is a leading manufacturer of .... dairy products.
a) label b) origin c) source d) publicity

5 Our old neighbour .... her husband by ten years.
a) attached b) deceased c) survived d) divorced

6 Nowadays, many young people .... against traditional values.
a) refer b) reject c) react d) reform

7 Our prep school headmistress was a .... woman who rarely smiled.
a) severe b) dangerous c) creative d) collaborative

8 It will take about an hour to get there, ... for traffic delays.
a) allow b) allowing c) allowed d) allowance

9 The students learned how to calculate the .... of a triangle.
a) region b) distance c) district d) area

10 She gives the impression of being rather conventional, but under the .... she is creative.
a) roof b) well c) surface d) wall

11 We had a party last night .... spend all morning cleaning up the mess.
a) I must have b) I've been to c) I've had to d) I need

12 I have lost my keys. I ought .... them in a safe place.
a) that I put b) to have put c) to be putting d) to put

13 There was no one else in the post office. I .... in a queue.
a) didn't need to wait b) needn't wait
c) mustn't wait d) needn't have waited

14 Dina .... have been at school yesterday. The list of the absentees didn't include her name.
a) must b) can't c) needn't d) mustn't

15 I'm taking an umbrella. It .... rain.
a) should b) must c) may d) has to

16 You mustn't take photos near military places. This means that ....
a) you can't b) you are allowed c) it's unnecessary d) it isn't good

17 A: .... he finish the report before 10 p.m.?
B: No, he needn't. The boss hasn't asked for it yet.
a) Mustn't b) Need c) Does d) Needs

18 You mustn't ride a bicycle in this park. It's ....
a) necessary b) inadvisable c) not allowed d) unnecessary

19 It's a/an .... for all of us to protect the country from any danger.
a) necessary b) has to c) importance d) must

20 That's a bridge nobody .... cross. It's about to collapse.
a) must b) have to c) must not d) were to

Unit (2)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 I watched a good movie .... the life and work of Nelson Mandela.
a) writing b) devastating c) celebrating d) disrespecting

2 The police can really help you in the .... of an emergency.
a) event b) accident c) incident d) story

3 Police officers were able to .... useful information from the company's financial records.
a) exert b) tie c) extract d) deny

4 In fact, I .... it a rule never to make any friend who could not be useful to me.
a) did b) devised c) damaged d) made

5 It is believed that the tiger is .... to India.
a) kept b) native c) availed d) distracted

6 Unfortunately, internet websites are full of improper .... stories about famous people's life.
a) spicy b) sweet c) successful d) valid

7 We need to create a/an .... in which business can prosper.
a) air b) breath c) climate d) location

8 I have to say, with all due ...., that I don't think your solution will work.
a) case b) cause c) design d) respect

9 Hussein's fluency in English and German .... him well in getting the job.
a) played b) presented c) served d) rewarded

10 A parent can, on ...., help his/her son with his homework, but not all the time.
a) event b) occasion c) accident d) incident

11 Mr. Sobhi works in a .... school.
a) medical famous German b) German famous medical
c) famous German medical d) German medical famous

12 Abeer and Omar are the same height. They are .... each other.
a) as tall as b) taller than c) as tall than d) more tall than

13 For .... information about the flights, you can call the travel agency.
a) farther b) further c) farthest d) furthest

14 .... information we have is not enough to proceed.
a) Late b) Little c) A little d) The little

15 He considered his friends either geniuses or idiots, and I fell into the .... category.
a) latter b) later c) latest d) late

16 One of the following sentences isn't correctly structured:
a) What a big car he has! b) How big a car he has!
c) What a big car has he! d) How big his car is!

17 We cannot act until .... orders from our boss.
a) far b) further c) the farthest d) farther

18 They are waiting for the .... updates in this matter.
a) latter b) late c) last d) latest

19 Toyota or Mercedes: which do you like ....?
a) good b) well c) better d) best

20 The red car is .... more expensive than the black one.
a) many b) very c) pretty d) slightly

Unit (3)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Saline .... is a mixture of salt and water which has many medical uses.
a) transmit b) transport c) solution d) deduction

2 5,000 new flats are to be built, but this is just a drop in the .... for such a vast country.
a) ocean b) lake c) sea d) rain

3 If you click on this ...., it will make you able to get to your bank account.
a) connection b) contact c) link d) way

4 No doctor at the hospital was .... for comment about the accident as they were all busy.
a) replaceable b) available c) helpful d) acceptable

5 These days, poor people find it very difficult to .... their keep.
a) win b) award c) apply d) earn

6 When I read the job ...., I found it suitable for me and applied for it immediately.
a) interview b) prescription c) description d) division

7 **Competition between the two companies is .... up.**

a) warning b) cooling c) decreasing d) heating

8 **The firefighters .... the fire in the building after three hours.**

a) contained b) involved c) enclosed d) included

9 **The nursery teacher gets ready for a new .... of students every year.**

a) flock b) team c) crop d) line

10 **The news of the promotion had a/an .... effect on the employees who were waiting for us.**

a) electronic b) electric c) shocked d) exclusive

11 **I like to have the radio on while ....**

a) I study b) I'm studying
c) studying d) all are possible

12 **Always turn your television off ....**

a) before you leave home b) when you went to bed
c) as soon as you got bored d) after you have fallen asleep

13 **He'll drink coffee while he .... for the bus.**

a) is waiting b) wait c) was waiting d) has waited

14 **Now that the rain's stopped, ... to walk?**

a) can you want b) are you wanting
c) do you want d) have you wanted

15 **I promised my father .... the full marks in the next exam.**

a) will get b) would get
c) to get d) am going to get

16 **My friend is very intelligent. He .... the test easily.**

a) is going to pass b) will pass
c) is passing d) would pass

17 **Look out! A car .... towards you.**

a) is coming b) is going to come
c) will be coming d) will come

18 **"Shall I carry your bag for you?" The right situation for the sentence is ....**

a) request b) promise
c) offer d) on-the-spot decision

19 **I don't think you .... any problems when you land in France.**

a) will have b) won't have c) will have had d) will be having

20 **Once you take a nap, you .... a lot better.**

a) feel b) will feel c) will have left d) will be feeling

Unit (4)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Building the New Capital in Egypt took a great .... of time and effort.
a) part b) quality c) section d) deal

2 Our team has won six basketball .... in the local championships.
a) titles b) names c) headings d) addresses

3 My wife wasn't well enough to .... visitors, so we cancelled the party.
a) receive b) deliver c) invite d) enlist

4 Opening remarks are important since they set the .... for the rest of the job.
a) music b) tone c) sign d) report

5 My cousin, Sameh has a/an .... for making friends easily.
a) comment b) present c) gift d) image

6 The story of the murder was important enough to make the ....
a) differences b) interests c) addresses d) headlines

7 The architect drew the new shopping centre in ....
a) section b) general c) progress d) record

8 The runner won a gold medal and broke the Olympic .... by 44 records.
a) prize b) headline c) record d) medal

9 He joined the Egyptian Cancer .... to be able to help other people.
a) Community b) Society
c) District d) Area

10 The advertisements are intended to improve the company's ....
a) photo b) location c) site d) image

11 That was a question nobody .... answer.
a) could b) cannot c) can d) should

12 You .... the job. Why didn't you use a chance?
a) may take b) can take
c) had to take d) could have taken

13 It rained heavily every day during their holiday, so they .... have had a very nice time.
a) can't b) must c) should d) could

14 Two hundred years ago, not many people .... read or write.
a) couldn't b) could c) can't d) could have

15 She could have taken the underground to save time and money, but she ....
a) couldn't b) doesn't c) hasn't d) didn't

16 Nader .... have carried the desk by himself. Someone must have helped him.
a) shouldn't b) should c) could d) couldn't

17 Why did you tell your friends about the secret? You .... nothing about it.

a) should have said
b) could have said
c) shouldn't have said
d) couldn't say

18 My younger brother .... swim 4 years ago, but he .... swim very well now.

a) could/can
b) can/could
c) could/can't
d) couldn't/can

19 In a hundred years' time, we .... out of water to drink.

a) must have run
b) could have run
c) should have run
d) may have run

20 This application .... last week.

a) should be sent
b) must have sent
c) ought to have been sent
d) should have sent

Unit (5)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The young artist asked the expert to .... his drawings.

a) prepare
b) redetect
c) criticise
d) deform

2 The actress is very clever at presenting her best .... to the camera.

a) director
b) profile
c) character
d) view

3 The .... of the food in this restaurant makes it look very tasty.

a) reformation
b) updating
c) reflection
d) presentation

4 The patient's brain is regularly .... so that doctors can detect the progress of his disease.

a) scanned
b) skimmed
c) scaled
d) stated

5 I usually .... my children from their school. It's part of my daily routine.

a) connect
b) hand
c) collect
d) deliver

6 Most people object to the new factory as they want to preserve the .... of their neighbourhoods.

a) feeling
b) character
c) direction
d) assumption

7 I missed the .... flight to New York, so I spent the night at the airport.

a) connecting
b) contacting
c) communicating
d) commuting

8 When the photographer .... the film, he was astonished by what he saw.

a) manufactured
b) designed
c) spread
d) developed

9 Because of pollution, this lake is now too acid to .... fish.

a) hunt
b) support
c) catch
d) poison

10 The earthquake .... 3 on the Richter scale.

a) weighed
b) graded
c) registered
d) linked

11 The children in our street do not like that man. They say he is ....
a) seem b) suppose c) supposed d) mean

12 Hard exercises are meant .... before the match.
a) to do b) to have done c) to be done d) done

13 .... likely that they will lose the election.
a) It seem b) It seems c) He seems d) They seem

14 The plan is .... to be a secret, but everybody .... to know about it.
a) meant/ seems
b) seemed/meant
c) seemed/seems
d) supposes/means

15 Students are supposed to listen to the teacher's explanation. This is ....
a) not necessary b) predictable c) prohibited d) obligatory

16 He stayed in Europe more than his friends ....
a) supposed b) seemed c) needed d) meant

17 Galileo is supposed .... the telescope.
a) having invented
b) to invent
c) to have invented
d) have invented

18 Charles Dickens' writings seem .... by his life experiences.
a) to influence
b) influential
c) to be influenced
d) to be influencing

19 It was .... to be a chicken sandwich, but they'd been a bit .... with the chicken.
a) meant/supposed
b) supposed/means
c) meant/seem
d) supposed/mean

20 He .... to like the new T-shirt; it isn't fashionable.
a) isn't supposing
b) doesn't seem
c) isn't seemed
d) not supposed

Unit (6)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The businessman made a .... of cash on the sale of one of his companies.
a) hole b) mountain c) pile d) hill

2 The Health Minister has come under .... from all sides because of the accident in the hospital.
a) rocket b) fire c) pocket d) shot

3 I'm going to the park outside the city for a .... of fresh air.
a) breath b) push c) quantity d) quality

4 International schools in New York accept children from all .... and religions.
a) heights b) wealth c) competitions d) races

5 **The carpenter .... the wood with a waterproof sealant مادة عازلة to protect it.**

a) cured b) treated c) processed d) operated

6 **Samy shouldn't let his elder brother .... him around like that.**

a) depart b) accept c) boss d) head

7 **Sales of the products at present low prices would be a .... of the company's investment.**

a) waste b) miss c) profit d) benefit

8 **I'll tell you what happened, but I don't want to get .... all the reasons why it happened.**

a) back b) into c) on d) out

9 **I know he broke the window, but so far, he hasn't .... up.**

a) possessed b) spent c) owned d) admitted

10 **In some parts of the country, there are still .... of violence and unrest.**

a) packets b) piles c) resources d) pockets

11 **If I had heard my phone ringing, I .... it.**

a) would have had to answer b) would have to answer
c) would answer d) would have answer

12 **Would you know what to do .... a heart attack?**

a) but for b) in case c) in case of d) providing

13 **When you heat water to 100 degrees Celsius, it ....**

a) will boil b) is boiled c) is boiling d) boils

14 **If I had gone to university, I .... a lawyer now.**

a) would have been b) would be
c) will be d) am

15 **.................. studying Turkish bothers you, you can stop it.**

a) If b) Without c) In case of d) But for

16 **If I .... taller, they would have taken me in the team yesterday.**

a) wasn't b) had been c) were d) have been

17 **If I .... a car, I .... you a lift.**

a) had/would have given b) had/would have to give
c) had had/would have to give d) had had/would give

18 **You're free to do whatever you want .... you respect the rules.**

a) provide b) unless c) even if d) provided

19 **.................. he know the instructions, he wouldn't do that silly mistake.**

a) Should b) did c) Had d) If

20 **If my uncle visited us ...., we would be happy.**

a) yesterday b) that day c) today d) then

Answers Advanced General Exercises

Unit 1

1. b) bleed
- تستخدم bleed هنا بمعنى (يختلط اللون بآخر).

2. c) injury
- يستخدم التعبير do oneself an injury بمعنى (يسبب ضررًا لنفسه).

3. d) base
- تستخدم base هنا بمعنى (قاعدة عسكرية).

4. a) label
- يستخدم التعبير own label/own brand بمعنى (منتج من ماركة محددة).

5. c) survived
- يستخدم survive هنا بمعنى (يعيش أكثر من شخص آخر).

6. c) react
- يستخدم react against بمعنى (يرفض/يكره).

7. a) severe
- تستخدم severe هنا بمعنى (جاد/حازم).

8. b) allowing
- تستخدم allow for بمعنى (مع احتساب).

9. d) area
- تستخدم area هنا بمعنى (مساحة شكل هندسي).

10. c) surface
- تستخدم under the surface بمعنى (تحت السطح – شيء عكس ما هو ظاهر).

11. c) I've had to
12. b) to have put
13. a) didn't need to wait
14. a) must
15. c) may
16. a) you can't
17. b) Need
18. c) not allowed
19. d) must
20. a) must

Unit 2

1. c) celebrating
- تستخدم celebrate هنا بمعنى (يحتفي/يمجد شخصًا أو حدثًا).

2. a) event
- يستخدم التعبير in the event of بمعنى (في حالة حدوث).

3. c) extract
- تستخدم extract هنا بمعنى (يستخلص/يستنتج).

4. d) made
- يستخدم التعبير make it a rule بمعنى (يتأكد من فعل شيء دائما).

5. b) native
- تستخدم native هنا بمعنى (موجود أساسًا في مكان محدد).

6. a) spicy
- تستخدم spicy هنا بمعنى (مثير و غير لائق).

7. c) climate
- تستخدم climate هنا بمعنى (الجو المحيط أو الشعور السائد).

8. d) respect
- يستخدم التعبير with all (due) respect بمعنى (مع كل الاحترام اللازم).

9. c) served
- تستخدم serve هنا بمعنى (يقوم بدور).

10. b) occasion
- يستخدم التعبير on occasion بمعنى (أحيانًا/بشكل غير مستمر).

11. c) famous German medical
12. a) as tall as
13. b) further
14. d) The little
15. a) latter
16. c) What a big car has he!
17. b) further
18. d) latest
19. c) better
20. d) slightly

Unit 3

1. c) solution

- تستخدم solution هنا بمعنى (محلول).

2. a) ocean

- يستخدم التعبير a drop in the ocean بمعنى (قطرة في محيط/جهد قليل بالنسبة لشيء أكبر).

3. c) link

- تستخدم link هنا بمعنى (رابط لموقع أو صفحة إنترنت) .

4. b) available

- تستخدم available هنا بمعنى (موجود لأداء عمل).

5. d) earn

- يستخدم التعبير earn their keep بمعنى (يكسب قوت يومه).

6. c) description

- تستخدم job description هنا بمعنى (طبيعة الوظيفة أو مهامها).

7. d) heating

- تستخدم heat up هنا بمعنى (يزداد حدة).

8. a) contained

- تستخدم contain هنا بمعنى (يحتوي النار أو يطفئها).

9. c) crop

- تستخدم crop هنا بمعنى (جيل/دفعة لتعليمها).

10. b) electric

- تستخدم electric هنا بمعنى (مثير/مؤثر).

11. d) all are possible

12. a) before you leave home

13. a) is waiting

14. c) do you want

15. c) to get

16. b) will pass

17. a) is coming

18. c) offer

19. a) will have

20. b) will feel

Unit 4

1. d) deal

- تستخدم deal هنا بمعنى (قدر/مقدار).

2. a) titles

- تستخدم title هنا بمعنى (لقب في لعبة أو مسابقة).

3. a) receive

- تستخدم receive هنا بمعنى (يستقبل ضيوفًا).

4. b) tone

- يستخدم التعبير set the tone بمعنى (يحدد الاتجاه السائد في مقابلة أو مكان).

5. c) gift

- تستخدم gift هنا بمعنى (موهبة).

6. d) headlines

- يستخدم التعبير make the headlines بمعنى (يظهر في عناوين الأخبار).

7. a) section

- يستخدم التعبير in section بمعنى (على مقاطع/أجزاء).

8. c) record

- يستخدم التعبير break the record بمعنى (يحطم الرقم القياسي).

9. b) Society

- تستخدم Society هنا بمعنى (جمعية).

10. d) image

- تستخدم image هنا بمعنى (صورة/موقف).

11. a) could

12. d) could have taken

13. a) can't

14. b) could

15. d) didn't

16. d) couldn't

17. a) should have said

18. d) couldn't/can

19. d) may have run

20. c) ought to have been sent

Unit 5

1. c) criticise

- تستخدم criticise هنا بمعنى (يحكم على/يفحص جيدًا).

2. b) profile

- تستخدم profile هنا بمعنى (صورة فوتوغرافية بأحد جوانب الوجه).

3. d) presentation

- تستخدم presentation هنا بمعنى (طريقة عرض).

4. a) scanned

- تستخدم scan هنا بمعنى (يجرى فحصًا بالأشعة).

5. c) collect

- تستخدم collect هنا بمعنى (يحضر شخصًا من مكان).

6. b) character

- تستخدم character هنا بمعنى (الميزة المعروفة عن مكان).

7. a) connecting

- يستخدم التعبير connecting flight بمعنى (رحلة جوية مكملة (ترانزيت) إلى مكان).

8. d) developed

- يستخدم التعبير develop the film بمعنى (يقوم بطبع الصور الفوتوغرافية على أحد أفلام الكاميرا).

9. b) support

- تستخدم support هنا بمعنى (يوفر البيئة المناسبة لحياة كائن حى).

10. c) registered

- تستخدم register هنا بمعنى (يسجل رقمًا على مقياس محدد).

11. d) mean

12. c) to be done

13. b) It seems

14. a) meant/seems

15. d) obligatory

16. a) supposed

17. c) to have invented

18. c) to be influenced

19. d) supposed/mean

20. b) doesn't seem

Unit 6

1. c) pile

- يستخدم التعبير a pile of cash بمعنى (قدر كبير من المال).

2. b) fire

- يستخدم التعبير under fire بمعنى (معرض للنقد الشديد).

3. a) breath

- يستخدم التعبير a breath of air بمعنى (نسمة من الهواء).

4. d) races

- تستخدم race هنا بمعنى (عرق/جنس بشرى).

5. b) treated

- تستخدم treat هنا بمعنى (يعالج خشبًا بمادة كيميائية).

6. c) boss

- تستخدم boss هنا بمعنى (يمارس سلطة/تحكم).

7. a) waste

- تستخدم waste هنا بمعنى (إهدار لموارد).

8. b) into

- تستخدم get into هنا بمعنى (يعرض/يناقش).

9. c) owned

- تستخدم own up هنا بمعنى (يعترف).

10. d) pockets

- تستخدم pocket هنا بمعنى (جيوب/مناطق عنف/إرهاب).

11. a) would have had to answer

12. c) in case of

13. d) boils

14. b) would be

15. a) If

16. c) were

17. b) had/would have to give

18. d) provided

19. a) Should

20. c) today

Vocabulary on Translation Exercises

achievement	إنجاز	distinguished	متميز
acquire	يكتسب	economic	اقتصادى
addiction	إدمان	emerge	ينشأ
advances	التقدم	evil deeds	أفعال شريرة
aspiring	الطموح	excessive	مفرط
assistance	مساعدة	expiry date	تاريخ الصلاحية
attempts	محاولات	facilities	إمكانيات/مرافق
attention	انتباه/ اهتمام	factor	عامل
awareness	وعي	food shortage	نقص الطعام
boon	نعمة	formal	رسمى
challenges	تحديات	form	يشكل
characterised	يتميز	generations	أجيال
charitable	خيرية	good qualities	صفات حميدة
civilised	متحضر	Greed	الجشع
coexistence	التعايش السلمى	humanity	البشرية
contribute	يساهم	humble	متواضع
convenience	راحة	illegal immigration	الهجرة غير الشرعية
cooperation	تعاون	impact	تأثير
crisis	أزمة	indiscipline	عدم الانضباط
customs	عادات	individual games	الألعاب الفردية
data	بيانات	institutions	مؤسسات
demolish	يهدم	integral	متكامل

limits	حدود
Literature	الأدب
mass media	وسائل الإعلام
methods	طرق
misdistribution	إساءة توزيع
moral values	القيم الأخلاقية
national unity	الوحدة الوطنية
obstacle	عائق/ عقبة
oppose	يعارض
perfect	كامل/ تام / ممتاز
perseverance	المثابرة
political question	مسألة سياسية
portray	يصور
poverty	الفقر
privacy	الخصوصية
productive	منتج
progress	التقدم
psychological	نفسى
public opinion	الرأى العام
rationalise	يرشد الاستهلاك

relieve	يخفف
reputation	سمعة
restore	يستعيد
retirement	تقاعد
rumours	إشاعات
sacrifice	يضحى بـ
self-sufficiency	اكتفاء ذاتى
severe	شديد
stability	استقرار
strict	صارم/ حازم
suitable	مناسب
talents	مواهب
tamper	يتلاعب بـ
teamwork	العمل الجماعى
tolerance	التسامح
tools	أدوات
trade	التجارة
unemployment	البطالة
vaccine	لقاح
violate	ينتهك